

An English
GRAMMAR:

OR,
A plain Exposition
OF
LILIE'S GRAMMAR
In English, with easie and profitable
Rules for parsing and making
Latine :

Very usefull for all young Scholars,
and others, that would in a short time
learn the Latine tongue.

Which may serve as a Comment for them
that learn LILIE's Grammar.

By
R.R. Master in Arts.



L O N D O N,
Printed by *Felix Kyngston* for *Mathew
Walbank* and *Laurence Chapman*.

1641.



An
ADVERTISEMENT
To the
READER.



Orasmuch as the time is long, and the labour great, both of Master and Scholar, which is bestowed in Construing and reconstruing the Grammar: for the redeeming both of the one and the other, and the more speedy and easie acquainting of Youth, with all the most necessary knowledge of Grammar; that so, their precious time and travell may the sooner be yeilded to other necessarie Studies; I have attempted the Translation thereof. The Rules which commonly are not committed to memory, are marked with this note, • The other, which are commonly learned without the Book, are printed in the English Character; excepting onely the Examples and Latine words, which are in the Roman Character. Such as are marked, as before, would notwithstanding be diligently and continually read: because the knowledge of them is also very necessary, and that even from your very first entrance. But concerning those which are to be committed to memory, you may if you will, omit the Examples and Latine words of them, or at the least their Englishes; and trouble your self onely with the bare Rules. Howbeit, by often Construing and Parsing the words and Examples, you must grow thoroughly acquainted with them; that so you may

An Advertisement to the Reader.

rightly and soundly understand the Rules. And untill you be come to this perfection, they may serve in the stead of Lectures: for which cause, I have omitted no Examples. Having attained to this readinesse in these things, it will not be amisse, before any other Book be taken in hand, to go through *Lily* his Latine Verses, by Construing and Parsing. No Rule or part would passe without diligent examination. Wherein, the Scholars if they be many, may appose one another; or if there be but one, he may appose himself; but alwaies in the hearing, and by the direction of the Teacher, and that from the very beginning. In the Parsing of any part of Speech, let the Rules concerning that part, both minister every question, and also answer it, and that in such order as the Rules themselves do lye; omitting none, untill the Scholar be very perfect. At what time, though you do take a shorter course, yet be sure to Parse every day one part of Speech, at the least, at length. As soon as the Concordes be learned, let your Scholar be accustomed to turn every day some two easie Englishes at the least, into Latine, giving him the Latine words. And before he attempt the doing of it, let him in your hearing, and by your direction, examine himself, for the finding out of the Concordes and Cases of his English: and this being done according to the direction in the Concordes, then to proceed to the Latine making. In his Lectures, besides the Parsing, let him even at the first also, by examination of himself, search out all the Epithets, Adjuncts, Synonymas, Contraries, Grammaticall and Rhetoricall Figures, and Phrases, with the varying of them; and then note them in a Book for his use afterwards. Thus, even without the help of this Translation, I have

An Advertisement to the Reader.

have known divers, being not held to it scarce half the day, to have been within a twelve month and an half, though of mean capacity, brought even from *In speech*, to learn perfectly the whole Grammar to *Prosaic*; and to be of themselves able, both to appose and answer in Rules or Lectures, to gather out the Phrases and the rest, as before; and to make true Latine, the words being given them, and that prettily well: so that they were very fit to be put to speaking Latine, and to other higher Scholar-like exercises. How much sooner then, or at the least more easily, by the help of this Translation, may these things be attained within the foresaid space, their study being followed the whole day? Seeing that hereby, so much time and labour, as Construing and reconstruing requireth, is gained: and besides that, the whole Grammar so to their view laid open, as that they need but at their leasures, open their eyes, and by reading behold that, which before the most part could not in 7. or 8. yeers at the least, see into. To say nothing, what light and liking of Grammar may hereby arise unto them, who cannot this way bestow their time: and so, what encouragement to put their children to it, to the great advantage of Learning, and to the unspeakable good both of the Church, and of the Commonwealth thereby. In the end of this Grammar, for the better opening of the course before mentioned, is added a *Praxis*, both of Construing and Parsing, and also of giving and making Vulgars; for the better help of Scholars, and such especially as want Teachers. The examining of the Rules, in learning and repeating them, needeth no opening here. For every one may easily, even almost of himself, perceive how to do it.

The

PREREQS

1. ENGLISH READING
2. ENGLISH COUNTING
3. ENGLISH WRITING

(SEE BRINSLEY "LUDUS UTTERARIUS")

The Latine letters are thus written.

The Capital Letters. { A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R
S T U V X Y Z.
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R
S T U V X Y Z.

The small Letters. { a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s
t u v x y z.
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t
u v x y z.

Letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

A Vowel is a letter which maketh a full and perfect sound of it self; and there are five in number: namely, *a, e, i, o, u*, whereunto is added the 'Greek Vowel *y*.

A Consonant is a letter which must needs be sounded with a Vowel; as *b* with *e*. And all the letters, except the Vowels, are Consonants.

A syllable is the pronouncing of one letter or more with one breath: as *a-ve*.

A diphthong is the sound of two vowels in one syllable; and of them there be foure in number, namely, *e, æ, au, eu*, whereunto is added *ai*: as, *Aeneas, scena, audio, euge; hei*.

In stead of *æ* and *au* we commonly do pronounce *e*.

The Greek letters are thus written.

The Capital Letters. Α Β Γ Δ Ε Ζ Η Θ Ι Κ Λ Μ Ν Ξ Ο Π Ρ
letters. Σ Τ Υ Φ Χ Ψ Ω

The Small Letters. α β γ δ ε ζ η θ ι κ λ μ ν ξ ο π ρ σ ρ
τ υ φ χ ψ ω

~~The study of Grammar to be necessary for every one.~~

Grammaticae labor est parvus, sed fructus in illa est
non parvus. Per hoc hic discito parve puer.
Nemo est tam doctus, qui non cognoscit ista:
• Cur pudeat pueros ista labore sequi?

GRAMMAR

The PARTS thereof.

GRAMMAR is an art of writing and speaking rightly. Of Grammar, there be foure partes: Orthographie, Etymologie, Syntaxis, and Prosodie.

OF ORTHOGRAPHY. = SPELLING

ORTHOGRAPHIE is the way of writing rightly: by which we are taught with what letters every word is to be formed: as, Lesib, reading, not Lexio: of o, o, o, right, and graph, writing.

Of the LETTERS.

Of the two and twenty letters, five are Vowels : a, e, i, o, u, Vowels.
 For y is a Greek letter. Of which being diversly disposed, Diphthongs.
 do arise five Diphthongs:

du alle die <i>Diapasons</i> .			
a		Musik, a sweet song.	The rest of the letters are cal-
au		Audio, I hear.	led consonants: of which nine
ai		Caelum, Heaven.	are <i>Open</i> , e, i, g, k, p, q, r, and
ei		Hei, Ho!da.	seven <i>Semi</i> vowels, h, m, n, f, s, x, z:
eu		Euge, Cellar bone.	of which also four are called
			Consonants. Mutes. Semi-vowels. Liquids.

But is a letter as it were of his own power, which sometimes is
also silent. X and Z are double consonants; and I also between
two vowels.

Unto the consonants are added I, and V, when they are set before themselves, or other vowels in the same syllable: as Iuno, the Goddess, sister and wife of Jupiter. Iovis, Jupiter, sonne to Saturne and Ops, boorne at the same birth with Iuno. Volumus, will, vultus the countenance.

H, is properly no letter, but a note of aspiration. But with the
13 *h* is both sometimes the force of a consonant. And it is set be

foe all vowels: as, Hamus a hook. Hebenus the Ebene tree Hiacus a yawning, humus the ground, hymnus a song in the praise of one: but never before any consonant. Elle doo rightly therefore pronounce Huleus, gazing as the ground is brought: and Hiacchus a name of Bacchus, with three syllables: and Hieronymus, Jerome, and Hieretimus Termy, with five syllables.

But in Latin words, h. is sometimes put after c: as, c harus, deare; c haritas, charity; c pulcher, faire; c pulchritudo, beauty.

Letters are written two waies, with greater characters, and
with smaller. With the bigger, sentences are begun: as, Deum,
time: Fear God. Regem honora: Honour the King, And proper
names:

OF

ORTHOGRAPHY.

names: as, Henricus, Henry. Anglia, England.
It is diligently to be marked, what words are written with
Diphthongs. For the Diphthongs must either be written down,
or noted: as, Mula presunt: or Muls presunt: The Mules do rule.
When the bigger letters do stand alone, and but few together:
they signifie sometimes the first, or as now wee call it, the Chri-
stian name: and sometimes number:

The bigger Let-
ters.

A. Aulus.	These, as also	R. P. Republica, the common
C. Caius.	Quintus, Spuri-	wealth.
D. Decius.	us, and Titus,	Sp. Spurius.
G. Gaius.	following, are	SEX. Sextus, Tutor to M. Anth.
L. Lucius.	the surnames	the Emperour.
M. Marcus.	of Divers Ro-	S. P. Q. R. Senatus, populusq; Ro-
P. Publius.	manes.	manus, the senate, and peo-
P. R. Populus Romanus,	The people of Rome.	ple of Rome.
P. C. Patres conscripti, the Se-	nators, or senate of Rome.	T. Titus.
Q. Quinctus, Quæstor, the treasur-	er: Quinctus, people of Rom.	T. C. Tua Clementia, thy cle-
		mentie.
		And an infinite number of
		the like.

But in number:	I.	One.
	V.	Five.
	IX.	Nine.
	X.	Ten.
	XL.	Forty.
	L.	Fifty.
	XC.	Ninety.
	C.	An hundred.
	D.	Five hundred.
	M.	A thousand.

Of the distinctions of Syllables.

He that will write rightly, must learn first of all, in writing,
aply to distinguish and join together syllables. In simple
words be, do cleave into the vowels following: as, A-bdomen,
the outward part of the belly, from the navel downward. A-
bdera, a towne in Thrace, another in Spaine, now called Alme-
ria, also an Isle nere to Samothrace.

Which also is to be observed in these following: as,
a Do-ctus, learned. } 2m A-gmen, an army of foot-
a San-ctus, holy. } men marching, an as-
Scri-psi, I have written. } sembly.
pf Sum-psi, I have taken. } 2o I-gnis, fire.
pi-scis, a fish. } 3o Ve-ster, yours.
Di-sco, I learne. } st Magi-ster, a Master.
en Æ-na, a hill in Sicilie. } xi An-xius, sad.
anda cite by it. } Di-xi, I have said: and
the like.

Betweenem and n, we never write p. It is ill therefore to write
Sompnus for somnus sleepe. Columpra for columna, a pillar. S is ne-
ver put after x: as, exscribo, to write out of a copie, ex vivo, to pay
all clearly: not exscribo, ex vivo. In words compounded with a
prep. sition, regard is to be had to the care, and good sound: as,
Occurro,

ORTHOEPY.

Occurro, I meet with	Rather	Obcurro,	And contrari-
Officio, I hurt.	then	Officio,	wise,
Aufero, I take away.		Aufero,	
Abstineo, I abstain.	And not	Austineo,	
Obtineo, I obtain.		Obtineo,	
Obrepro, I come possibly		Obrepro,	

And for this cause also, consonants are in composition some-
times put between: as, Redamo, I love again. Redeo, I return.
Ambigo, I am in doubt. Ambio, I environ.

OF ORTHOEPY.

There is some affinity between Orthography, and Orthoepy: Orthoepy.
that is, the way of speaking purely and rightly: of ortho-
right, and in word.

Here, Teachers ought to have a speciall care, so to frame and
fashion the tender and stammering tongues of children, that they
do not with a continuall volubility of the tongue, either so hastily
utter their speech, as that they never cease untill their breath fail:
or contrariwise, at every word make a long pause, foolishly break-
ing off the tenour of their talk, by belching, laughter, hicke,
spitting, cough, or such like.

But before all things, children are to be kept from those vices,
which do seem almost proper to our common people: as, Iora-
cisme, Lamdacisme, Ichnocisme, Traulicisme, Placisme, and the like.

Ioracisme, is, when the letter I is pronounced with too full and
an undecent sound: a fault of our English Northerly people
especially.

Lamdacisme, is, when as any pronounce L too violently: as,
Ellucee for elucee, it shineth: Saulvus for salvus, safe. Our common
people offend diversly, in pronouncing this letter, more grossly
then is meet: as for

Multus, much,	pronouncing	Moultus,
Mollis, soft,		Moolis,
Fallus, false,		Faulus,

Ichnocisme, is, a certain slenderesse of speaking: so often as we
do pronounce certain syllables, more slenderly and finally then
is fit: as, for

Nunc, now,	pronouncing	Nync,
Tunc, then,		Tync,
A quis, some body,		Elquis,
Alius, another,		Elus,

Traulicisme, is a certain stammering or sturting, when the same
syllable is often repeated: as, Cacacame for canit, he singeth:
Tumilius for Tullius, Tully.

This most foul and dangerous fault, Fabius thinketh, is thus
to be helped: that children be betimes put to the quick and
round pronouncing of words and verses of affectate difficulty,
and consisting of many and hard syllables, sounding roughly to-
gether: as, Arx, videns, rostris, iphyon, præter, torrida, seps, strix,
—postquam discordia terga: After that horrible discord,
Belli ferratos postes. portaque refregit: hath broken open the iron
posts and gates of war. The words are thus englished: Arx,
a tower;

ORTHOGRAPHY.

a soldier; tridens, any instrument of three teeth; rostris, the bills of birds; sphynx, a monkey; praeter, a venomous worm; corrida, D; y; seps, a hedge; itrix, a scritch owl.

Platasmae. Plateame, is, when we endeavour to speak more thickly or bigly, and with more then a mans voice: as, when for Montes, hills, we pronounce Mountes, as also, for Fontes, fountains, Fountes, Pones, bridges, Pounes. Ergo, therefore, Argo, Sperma, seed of genera, we pronounce Sparma, Perago, I finish, (tion), Parago.

In some places also amongst us, there are, which for v, a consonant, do sound f: and contrariwise for f, do pronounce v: as,

Folo, Volo, I will, } And again, Fis, Vis, thou wiltst. } Polui, Volui, I have wilted, } Felle, Velle, to will. } Vero, Fero, I bear or suffer. } Vers, Fers, thou bearest or sufferest. } Verre, Ferre, to bear or suffer.

And many do corruptly sound (between two vowels:

as, for Læsus, hurt, } pronouncing } Læzus, Visus, seen, } Vizus, Ritus, laughter, } Rzus.

They will have h, in the beginning of a word, to be pronounced softly: we do ill therefore pronounce,

Omo, Homo, a man or a woman, } Amus, Hamus, an hook, } Umus, Humus, the ground, } Cristus, Christus, Christ, } Crisma, Crisma, ointment or anointing. } Cremes, Chremes, a man so called, } Tus, Thus frankincense, incense, } Diptongus, Diphtongus, a Diphtong, (round. } Spera, Sphera, a sphere, circle, or any thing

But people do softly erre also, in pronouncing d and c, with an aspiration: as, Amath, Caputh, Aputh; for, Amat, he loveth; Caput, a head; Apud, at.

But the vices of this kinde are innumerable, which we leave to good students, and diligent teachers, to be reformed.

Of the POINTS of Sentences.

Neither doth a small part of Orthography seem to consist in the distinguishing of writing. It shall not be in vain therefore, to note some few things, concerning the distinction of Clauses.

Points therefore, or notes, used of the learned in writing, are of the Latines called, Subdistinction, i. a Subdistinction: Media distindio, i. a middle distinction: and, Plena ac perfecta distindio, i. a full and perfect distinction: with the Greeks, Comma, Colon, Periodus.

A Subdistinction or Comma, is a note of silence, or rather a place of

ETYMOLOGY.

of breathing: as whereby the term of pronunciation, the sence still remaining, is so suspended: as that that which followeth ought presently to succeed. And it is marked with a point tassel downward, thus, Quid: Utendum est atate, cito pede labitur atas: Nec bona tam sequitur, quam bona prima fuit. We must make benefit of our time, age cometh quickly: neither is the latter age so good as the former. With this note also, the several parts of a speech are distinguished: as, Juvenal:

Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptes,

Graculus esuriens, in celum, jussu, ibit.

The grammarian, rhetorician, geometer, painter, chirurgian, Grecian hungering, into heaven, thou hast commanded, shall go.

The middle distinction or Colon, is, when so much almost of the sentence remaineth, as is already uttered: and it is a perfect part of the Period, and is noted with two points, thus: Quem admodum horologii umbram progressam sentimus, progredientem non ceminus: & fruticem aut herbam crevisse apparet, crescere autem nulli videtur: ita & ingeniorum profectus, quoniam minutis constar actibus, ex intervallo sentitur. Even as we perceive the shadow of a diall to have gone, but discern it not going: and fruit or grasse appeareth to have increased, but is not seen of any to increase: so also the growth of wies, seeing it consisteth of small increases, is perceived by distance of time.

The full distinction, called also a Period, is put after a perfect sentence, and is noted with a plain point, thus.

Dic mihi Musa vitum, capta post tempora Troje, Qui mores hominum multorum vidit, & urbes.

Shew me my Muse, a man after the taking of Troy, who hath seen the manners of many men, and cities.

Verueto besongeth a Parenthesis, and an Interrogation. A Parenthesis is a sentence included within two half-moons, which being removed, the speech notwithstanding, remaineth whole: as, — princeps (quia bella minantur

Holles) militibus urbes praeunuit, & armis. The Prince (because the enemies do threaten wars) both fortifie the cities with soldiers and weapons.

An Interrogation is signed with two points, the higher being tassel upward, thus: as, Et quæ tanta fuit Romam ubi causa videndi: And what moved thee so much to see Rome?

OF ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY is occupied especially in searching out the original of words: as, whether an unmarried man be called Cælebs, single, of celestis, heavenly; as leading celestem vitam, an heavenly life. Whether an hare be called Lepus, as it were levipes, light foot. But Etymology (so far forth as in this place we do speak of it) is the way of learning the differences of cases: as, fortis, strong; fortiter, strongly: lego, I read; legit, he readeth; and comprehendeth all parts of speech. Cicero calleth it Notationem, Notation, or veriloquium, true speech. And it is compounded of *ετυμος*, true, and *λογία*, speech.

OF

Platasmae.

S.

H.

What Points there be.

A Comma.

Of the Eight Parts of SPEECH.

There be eight parts of speech: { Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, } declin- { Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, } undecli- ned.

Of a NOUN.

A Noun.

A NOUN is a part of speech, which signifieth a thing, without any difference of time or person. As,

A Noun is the name of a thing that may be seen, felt, heard, or understood: as, the name of my hand in latine is Manus, the name of an house is Domus, the name of goodnesse is Bonitas.

Of Nouns, some be Substantives, and some be Adjectives.

A Noun Substantive, is that which standeth by himself, and requireth not another word to be joyued with him, to declare his signification: as, Homo, a man. And it is declined with one article: as, hic Magister, a master: or else with two at the most: as, hic & hec Parens, a father or mother.

A Noun Substantive, is either proper to the thing that it be tokeneth; as, Eduardus is my proper name: or else, is common to moe: as, Homo is a common name to all men.

A Noun Substantive Appellative or Common, is that which signifieth a thing common to many: as, Lapis, a stone: Iustitia, justice: Bonitas, goodnesse. A Noun Substantive Proper, is that which signifieth a thing proper to some one onely: as, Iesus, Jesus: Maria, Mary: Londinum, London: Thamesis, the Teme.

Of a Noun Substantive Proper, there be three kindes.

Prænomen, or the first name, now called the Christian name, given for difference sake, or of some old custome: as, Lucius, Publius, Aulus, Marcus: the names of divers Romans.

Nomen, or name, which to every one is his own: as, Petrus, Peter: Paulus, Paul: Cæsar, Cæsar: Tullius, Tully.

Cognomen, or surname, given either of affinity: as, Gracchus, Fabius, Scipio, Cicero, the surnames of divers Romans: or of some event: as, Africanus, Macedonicus, Germanicus, the names also of certain Romans.

An Adjective is that which in speech needeth a Substantive to cleave unto: as, Piger, sloathfull: alacris, merry: candidus, white: clemens, gentle. As,

A Noun Adjective is that which cannot stand by himself, in reason or signification, but requireth to be joyued with another word: as, Bonus, good: pulcher, fair. And it is declined either with three terminations; as, Bonus, bona, bonum: or else with three articles: as, Hic, hæc, & hoc felix, happy: Hic & hæc levis, & hoc leve, light.

Of Nouns Adjectives, there be two kindes: Common, and Proper. Common, which signifieth an affection, common to many: as, Bonus, good: malus, evill: solers, witty: satur, glutted. Proper, which signifieth an affection peculiar to some one onely: as, Gradivus to Mars, Quirinus to Romulus.

Two kindes of Nouns: substantive, and Adjective.

A Noun Substantive.

Two kindes of Nouns Substantives: Appellative or common; and Proper.

The first, or Christian name.

Name.

Surname.

A Noun Adjective.

Common.

Proper.

Of the Accidents, or things belonging to a Noun.

TO a Noun there appertaineth seven things: Species or form, Figure, Number, Case, Gender, Declension, Comparison. Seven things do befall unto a Noun.

Of the SPECIES or form.

There be two forms of Nouns, Primitive and Derivative. Primitive, which cometh not of another: Derivative, which is formed of another. To the Primitive, do belong these things following, and the like: that is to say.

A Noun Collective, which in the singular Number, signifieth a multitude: as, Concio, an assembly: cæcus, a congregation: plebs, people: orba, a company: pecus, cattell: grex, a flock.

A Noun fictitious or fained, which is fained of the sound: as, Sibylus, an hissing: tinninabulum, a little bell: stridor, a noise: clangor, the sound of a trumpet.

A Noun Interrogative: as, Quis, who? uter, which? qualis, what an one? quantus, how much? quot, how many? nunquid, is there any one? Which do sometimes become Indefinites, and sometimes Relatives.

A Noun Redditive, which answereth the Interrogative: as, talis, such an one: tantus, so much: tot, so many.

A Noun Numerall, whereof there are these species or kindes following. Cardinall: from whence, as from the fountain, other Numbers do flow: as, Unus, one: duo, two: tres, three: quatuor, four.

Ordinall: as, Primus, the first: secundus, the second: tertius, the third: quartus, the fourth.

Distributive: as, Singuli, every each: bini, every two: terni, three: quaterni, four.

Partitive: which signifieth, either many a part: as, Quisque, every one: unusquisque, every one: uterque, both: neuter, neither: or, one of many: as, Alter, one of the two: aliquis, some one: cætera, the residue: reliquus, the other.

Universal: as, Omnis, all: cunctus, all: nullus, none: nemo, no body.

Particular: as, Aliquis, some body: quisquam, any body: ullus, any: quidam, a certain man.

And Derivatives have under them, these species: that is to say, A Noun Verball: as, Lectio, reading: litura, a blot: auditus, hearing: aratrum, a plow.

Patriall: or of ones country: as, Eboracensis, an inhabitant of York: Londinensis, a Londoner: Oxoniensis, an Oxonian: Atonensis, one of Aton.

Gentile: as, Græcus, a Grecian: Latineus, a Latine: Habreus, an Hebrew: Anglus, an English man.

Patronymicall: which is derived from the father, or from some other person of the family: as, Eacides, the son or nephew of Eacides: Nerine, the daughter or niece of Nerius: Latoneus, the son of Latona: Menelaus, the wife of Menelaus.

Diminutive:

Form: Primitive. Derivative.

Collective.

Feigned.

Interrogative.

Redditive.

Numerall.

Cardinall.

Ordinall.

Distributive.

Partitive.

Universal.

Particular.

Derivative.

Verball.

Patriall.

Gentile.

Patronymicall.

- Diminutive.** Diminutive: as, *Regulus*, an *Earl*: *popellus*, a small people: *Majusculus*, somewhat greater: *Minusculus*, little.
- Possessive.** Possessive: as, *Herilis*, pertaining to the master: *servilis*, pertaining to the servant: *Regius*, belonging to the King: *paternus*, that pertaineth to a father.
- Materiall.** Materiall: as, *Faginus*, of the beech tree: *lapideus*, of stone: *gemmeus*, of a precious stone: *aureus*, of gold.
- Locall.** Locall: as, *Hortensis*, pertaining to a garden: *agrestis*, pertaining to the field: *Marius*, belonging to the sea: *Montanus*, of the hills.
- Adverbiall.** Adverbiall: as, *Hodiernus*, of to day: *hesternus*, of yesterday: *crastinus*, of to morrow: *clandestinus*, secret.
- Participiall.** Participiall: as, *Amandus*, worthy to be loved: *docendus*, that is to be taught: *videndus*, that is to be seen: *scribendus*, worthy to be written. And such as end in *ilis*, coming of Nouns: as, *Fidilis*, earthen: *coctilis*, sodden: *flexilis*, easie to be bowen: *pendilis*, hanging down.

OF FIGURE.

- Figures of Nouns.** The Figure of a Noun, is either simple: as, *Iustus*, just: or compound, as, *injustus*, unjust. There are, which do adde hereunto also, Decompoundes: as, *irreparabilis*, that cannot be repaired.

OF NUMBER.

- Number.** Nouns be two Numbers; the Singular, and the Plural: the Singular Number speaketh but of one: as, *Lapis*, a stone: *pater*, a father. The Plural Number speaketh of more then one: as, *Lapides*, stones: *patres*, fathers.

OF CASE.

- Cases of Nouns:** Nouns be declined with six Cases, singularly, and plurally: the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.
- The Nominative.** The Nominative, called also, *Reus*, right; is the first voice, by which we call any thing.
- The Genitive.** The Nominative case cometh before the Verb, and answereth to this question, Who, or what? as, *Magister docet*, the master teacheth.
- The Genitive case is that which signifieth whose any thing is, commonly called *Patrius*, patriall; or the case *Signendi*, of begetting; or *Interrogandi*, of asking.
- The Genitive case is known by this token, *Of* and answereth to this question, Whose, or whereof? as, *Doctrina magistri*, the learning of the master.
- The Dative.** The Dative case, called also the case *Dandi*, of giving, is that, by which we attribute any thing to any body. Under this voice, they have comprehended also the Octave case: as, *Ecce clamor coeli*, that is, in heaven; the clamour goeth to heaven, that is, into heaven.

The Dative case is known by this token, *To*, and answereth to this question, To whom, or to what? as, *Do librum magistro*, I give a book to the master.

The Accusative case, called also *Incusativus*, accusing; or *causativus*, excusing: is that which followeth the Verb, as whereinto the action of the Verb doth immediately passe: as, *Amo patrem*, I love the father.

The Accusative case followeth the Verb, and answereth to this question, Whom or what? as, *Amo magistrum*, I love the master.

The Vocative case, called also *Saluatorius*, salutory; is that which is used in calling, or speaking to persons.

The Vocative case is known by calling, or speaking to: as, *O magister*, O master.

The Ablative case is that, by which we signifie any thing to be taken from any body. This is called the *sexta*, and *Latine* case, because it is proper to the Latines.

The Ablative case is commonly joyned with Prepositions, serving to the Ablative case: as, *De magistro*, of the master: *Coram magistro*, before the master.

Also, *In*, *With*, *Through*, *For*, *From*, *By*, and *Then*, after the Comparative degree, be signes of the Ablative case.

OF GENDER.

Articles, which are the notes of Genders, are bestowed of the Pronoun; and be thus declined:

Singulariter	Nominativo <i>hic, hac, hoc</i> , this.	Pluraliter	Nominativo <i>hi, ha, hac</i> .
	Genitivo <i>hujus</i> .		Genitivo <i>horum, harum, horum</i> .
	Dativo <i>huius</i> .		Dativo <i>his</i> .
	Accusativo <i>hunc, hanc, hoc</i> .		Accusativo <i>hos, has, hac</i> .
	Vocativo <i>care</i> , i. it wants.		Vocativo <i>care</i> , i. it wants.
	Ablativo <i>hoc, hac, hoc</i> .		Ablativo <i>his</i> .

Genus, or Gender, is a distinction of the sex.

Genders of Nouns be seven: the Masculine, the Feminine, the Neuter, the Commune of two, the Commune of three, the Doubtfull, and the Epicene.

Genders seven.

The Masculine Gender is declined with this Article, *Hic*: as, *hic vir*, a man.

The Feminine Gender is declined with this Article, *Hac*: as, *hac mulier*, a woman.

The Neuter Gender is declined with this Article, *Hoc*: as, *hoc saxum*, a stone.

The Commune of two is declined with *Hic* and *hac*: as, *hic & hac pater*, a father or mother.

The Commune of three is declined with *Hic*, *hac* and *hoc*: as, *hic, hac & hoc felix*, happy.

The Doubtfull Gender is declined with *Hic* or *hac*: as, *hic vel hac dies*, a day.

The Epicene or Promiscuall Gender, is declined with one Article, under which one Article, both kinds are signified: as, *Hic*

Hic passer, a sparrow; hac aquila, an eagle, both he and she: hic anser, a goose or gander.

Though indeed, this Gender doth not so properly belong to this present matter, seeing that in this place we do not treat of the nature of things, but of the quality of words.

The difference between the Commune of two Genders, and the Doubtfull

Furthermore, there is this difference between the Commune of two Genders, and the Doubtfull; that when as once thou hast coupled an Adjective to a Noun of the Commune Gender, it is not now at thy choice, speaking of the same thing, to change the Gender of the Adjective: as if thou hast said, Durus parens, an hard father: or canis fœra, a bitch with whelp: as long as thou speakest still of the very same things, it shall not be lawfull for thee, changing the Gender, to say, Parentem iniquam, an evil mother; or canem fœrum, a dog with whelp. But a Substantive of the Doubtfull Gender being put, though thou addest unto it an Adjective of the Masculine Gender; yet nevertheless, continuing thy speech of the same thing, it shall be lawfull for thee, at thy discretion, to alter the Gender of the Adjective: as if thou hast said, Durum corticem, an hard bark: thou mayst also, proceeding to speak of the same, say, Blandum corticem esse & amaram, the same bark to be also bitter.

And that thou mayst exactly know the Genders of Nouns, these Rules following are with all diligence to be learned: which thou oughtest to acknowledge, to have been received from William Lily an English man.

The generall Rules of WILLIAM LILY, for Proper Names.

The Names of the male kinde, are the Masculine Gender: as,

1. Of Gods: as, Mars, Bacchus, Apollo.
2. Of Men: as, Cato, Virgilius.
3. Of Floods or Rivers: as, Tiberis, Orontes.
4. Of Months: as, Octobris.
5. And of Windes: as, Iybi, Notus, Austus.

The Names of the female kinde, are the Feminine Gender: as,

1. Of Goddesses: as, Juno, Venus.

2. Of Women: as, Anna, Philota.

The proper Names of the male kinde, are of the Masculine Gender: as first of Gods: as, Mars, Martis, the God of battell: Bacchus, Bacchi, the God of wine: Apollo, Apollinis, the God of wisdom. Secondly, of Men: as, Cato, Catonis, Cato: Virgilius, Virgilii, Virgil. Thirdly, of Floods: as, Tiberis, Tiberis, a flood or river running through Rome: Orontes, Orontis, a river parting Antiochia from Syria, now called Tarsaro; also an hill by Antiochia, and the name of a Trojan that came with Aeneas into Italy. Fourthly, of Months: as, Octobris, Octobris, the month of October. And fifthly, of Windes: as, Iybi, Lybis, the southwest winde by west: Notus, Noti, the south winde: Austus, austri, the south winde, south part; or the winde in generall.

The proper Names of the female kinde, are of the Feminine Gender: as first of Goddesses: as, Juno, Junonis, the Goddess Juno, Jupiters wife: Venus, veneris, the Goddess of love and beauty. Secondly, of Women: as, Anna, Annæ, Ann: Philota, Philotis, Philot. Thirdly, of Cities: as, Elis, Elis a City in Arcadia, or country in Peloponnesus: Opus, Opuntis, a City of Locris. Fourthly, of Regions: as, Græcia, Græciæ, Græce: Persis, Persidis, a country in the east part of Asia, having on the north, Media, on the west,

west, Sufiana; on the east, Carmania; and on the south, the Persian sea. And fifthly, of Isles: as, Creta, Cretæ, Crete now called Candie: Britannia, Britanniz, Britanny, or the Ile of England and Scotland: and Cyprus, Cypri, an Ile in the sea Carpathium, between Sicilia and Syria.

But the names of certain Cities are to be excepted: as first, Sulmo, Sulmonis, a town of the Peligni, a people in Italy, next to the people called Marsi; or amongst the Britians, in the uttermost borders of Italy, above the Lucani; or amongst the Britians in Naples by Sicily: Agragus, agragantis, a town in the Ile of Sicily, now called Gergenti, or a hill there, upon the which standeth the town Agrigentum: which two are the Masculine Gender. Secondly, Argos, argos, argeo, which in the plural number is the Masculine Gender: as, Argi, argorum, a town in the half Ile of Greece, called Ieloponnesus, not far from the City Mycenæ: Tybur, tyburis, a City of Italy near Rome, now called Triveli: Præneste, prænests, the City Palestrina of Latium in Italy: which three are the Neuter Gender. And thirdly, Anxur, anxuris, the City now called Tarentine, or Tarasine in Italy: which is the Masculine and Neuter Gender both.

Generall Rules for Nouns APPELLATIVES, or Noun Substantives common.

Nouns Appellatives of Trees, are of the Feminine Gender: as, Ainos, alni, an Alder tree: Cupressus, cupressi, or capressus, a Cypress tree: Cedrus, a Cedar tree, cedri. Except first, Pinus, pini, and pinus, a Pine tree, bearing the greatest nuts that be: and Oleaster, oleastri, a certain shrub like the Olive tree: the Greeks call it the wilde Olive tree, or the ground Olive, for the lownesse: both which are the Masculine Gender. And secondly, Siler, sileris, an hill Oiler, or a simple used of the Apothecaries, called in Latine, Seceli Massiliensie: Suber, suberis, a Cork tree: Thus, thuris, Frankincense, and the tree Incense: Robur, roboris, an Oak: and Acer, accis, a Maple tree: which five are the Neuter Gender.

The names of fleeing things: as, Passer, passeris, a Sparrow: Hirundo, hirundinis, a Swallow. Secondly, of wilde Beasts: as, Tigris, tigridis, a Tyger: Vulpes, vulpis, a Fox or a Firop. And thirdly, of Fishes: as, Ostrea, ostrea, a Shell-fish, as an Oyster, and such like: Cætus, cætus, a Whale: under which both kindes be signified, are the Epicene Gender.

3. Fishes: as, hac Ostrea, hic Cætus: under which both kindes be signified, are the Epicene Gender.

But here is to be noted, that of all the Nouns before mentioned, every Noun, whether Greek or Latine, ending in um, or being undeclined, is of the Neuter Gender.

Now I will speak in order of all other Nouns Appellatives, or which are as Appellatives, whose Gender is alwayes known by the Genitive case: as the three-fold speciall Rule following doth shew.

3. Of Cities: as, Elis, Opus.

4. Of Regions: as, Græcia, Persis.

5. And of Isles: as, Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.

3. Exceptions: as,

1. Sulmo, Agragus, Masculine.

2. Argos, Tybur, Præneste, Neuter.

And 3. Anxur, Masculine and Neuter.

1. Pinus, and Oleaster, Masculine.

And 2. Siler, Suber, Thus, Robur, & Acer, Neuter.

1. The names of fleeing things: as, hic Passer, hac Hirundo.

2. Of wilde Beasts: as, hac Tigris, hac Vulpes. And of

A generall exception, of all in um, or undeclined, to be Neuter. The use of the three speciall Rules following.

The First special RULE.

A special Rule.
Nouns not increas-
ing, in the Geni-
tive Case, are Fe-
minine: as, Caro,
carnis, capra, caprae,
nubes, nubis.

A Noun not increasing in the Genitive case, is the Feminine Gender: as, Caro; in the Genitive case, carnis, flesh: Capra, in the Genitive case, caprae, a goat: Nubes, in the Genitive case, nubis, a cloud.

Because our Lilly doth teach, that the Gender of Nouns Appellatives, is to be known by the Genitive case: children are to be admonished, that this first Rule is of all Nouns Appellatives, not increasing in the Genitive case: of which but are all Nouns of the first and fourth Declension, and of the second also, except a very few, noted afterwards in the third Rule.

The most Nouns also of the third Declension, do appertain to this Rule: as, Labes, labis, a spot, dishonour, reproach, a greed: chap: Peltis, peltis, a plague or poison: Vis, in the Genitive case, vis, strength, power, nature, violence: Mater, matris, a mother: Caro, carnis, the meat of any thing, but most commonly flesh.

The first Excep-
tion.

The first Exception of Nouns not increasing, being the Masculine Gender.

Which is first, of
Nouns ending in
a, to be Masculine:
as, Scriba, scribae,
securus, securi, lixa,
lanista.

2. Greek Nouns
of the first De-
clension, in a: as,
Satrapas.

3. In es: as, Ath-
letes.

4. Latine Nouns
derived of them,
and ending in a:
as, Satrapas, Ath-
letes.

5. Verres, natalis,
aqualis.

6. The Com-
pounds of As,
affis, or affis, affis;
as, Centusis.

7. Lientis, orbis, cal-
lis, caulis, follis,
collis, mentis, exsis,
fictis, funis, panis,
penis, crinis, ignis,
callis, fals, torris,
scentis, piscis, unguis, vermis, victis, postis, & axis.

8. In us: as, Logos.

Many names of men, ending in a, are the Masculine Gen-
der: as first, Scriba scribae, a Scribe or Notary: Afficia,
afficiae, a Page. Lacky, or continuall waiter: Scuria, scurrae, a
Scoffer, Jester, or Parasite: Rabula, rabulae, a Bawler, or Ma-
ster in the Law: Lixa, lixae, the Scullian that waiteth on an
army: Lanista, lanistae, a Master of defence. Secondly, Greek
Nouns of the first Declension ending in a: Thirdly, in es. And
fourthly, as many as coming of them, do end in a: as, Satrapas,
satrapae, and Satrapa, satrapae, a Prince: Athletes, athleteae, and Ath-
leta, athleteae, a Champion, or he that striveth for a game. Fifthly,
Verres, verres, a Bore: Natalis, natalis, a Birth day: Aqualis, aqua-
lis, a Layer, or an Ewer. Sixthly, the Compounds, of Affis, affis,
a Pound of twelve Dunces, or the whole sum of any thing: as,
Centusis, centusis, an Hundred pound. Seventhly, Lientis, lienis,
the Heart: Orbis, orbis, a Globe, bowl, or the world, because it
is round like a bowl: Callis, callis, a Path way: Caulis, caulis, a
Stalk: Follis, follis, a pair of Bellows: Collis, collis, an Hillcock:
Mensis, mensis, a Month: Ensis, ensis, a Sword: Fictis, fictis, a
Club: Funis, funis, a Rope: Panis, panis, Bread: Penis, penis, a
Tail, or a mans Part: Crinis, crinis, Hair: Ignis, ignis, Fire:
Callis, callis, a Net, Falcis, falcis, a Sagar: Torris, torris, a Fire-
brand: Scentis, scentis, a Thorn: Piscis, piscis, a Fish: Unguis, unguis,
a Nail, an hoof, a talant: Vermis, vermis, a Worm: Veditis, ve-
ditis, a Dove bar: Follis, follis, a Post: and Axis, axis, an Apeltree;
and by translation, the straight Line that may be imagined, from
the one Pole to the other Pole. Eighthly, Nouns ending in er:
as, Venter, ventris, a Belly. Ninthly, in os: as, Logos, logi, a Word,
speech, reason. And tenthly, in us: as, Annus, annis, a Year.

8. Nouns ending in er: as, Venter.

And 10. In us: as, Annus.

But

But first, Mater, matris, a mother, is the Feminine Gender. Se-
condly, Humus, humi, the ground: Domus, domus, or domi, an house:
Alvus, alvi, the paunch, and sometimes the belly without: Colus,
colus, or coli, a distaff or spindle, a rook: Ficus, ficus, a fig or fig-
tree: Acus, acus, a needle: or an instrument wherewith women
indur their hair: Porticus, portici, a gallery, walking place, or
porch: Tribus, tribus, a kindred: Socrus, socrus, a mother in law:
Nurus, nurus, a daughter in law: Manus, manus, an hand: Idus,
iduum, idubus, the Ides of the months, i. dayes dividing the
month: in March, May, June and October, it is the fifteenth
day: in the rest, it is the thirteenth day: Anus, ani, an old wife,
too ripe: Vannus, vanni, a Man to winnow corn with. And thirdly,
Greek Nouns, which becoming Latine, do turn their os into us:
as, Papyrus, papyri, paper: Antidotos, antidoti, counterpoison, or a
preservative against poison: Costus, costi, a Quib growing in Ara-
bia, Iury and Syria, having a root of a very sweet savour, com-
monly called, the Herb of Mary: Diphthongus, diphthongi, a Diph-
thong, one sound of two vowels, a double sound: Byssus, byssi, a
most fine flax or silk: Abyssus, abyssi, a bottomlesse depth, or pit:
Chrysalis, chrysalis, chrysalis: Synodus, synodi, a Synod, or ge-
nerall Council gathered: Saphyrus, saphyri, a precious stone,
called a Sapphire: Eremitus, eremi, a wilderness, or desert place
not inhabited: Arctus, arcti, a sign of the stars,
called the Bear, or the Waggon, or the North Pole: with
many more.

The second Exception of Nouns not increasing, being the Neuter Gender.

An Exception of
such as end in er,
and us: whereof
these are the Fe-
minine Gender: as,
1. Mater.

2. Humus, a mus,
alvus, colus, ficus,
acus, porticus, tri-
bus, socrus, nurus,
manus, idus, anus,
& vannus. And

3. Greek Nouns,
which becoming
Latine, do turn
their os into us:
as, Papyrus, anti-
dotos, costus, diph-
tho- gus, byssus, a-
byssus, chrysalis,
synodus, saphyrus,
eremitus, and
many more.

The second Excep-
tion, is,

First, Nouns ending in e, which is in the Genitive case, are of
the Neuter Gender: as, Mare, maris, the sea: Rete, retis, a net.
Secondly, in on: as, Barbiton, barbiti, a Lute, or any instrument
that is played upon with a quill. Thirdly, in um: as, Ovum, ovi,
an Egge. Fourthly, Hippomanes, hippomanis, a poison to procure
love withall: or a little piece of flesh, growing in a Colis foxe-
head, when it is first soled: Cacoethes, cacoethis, an evil custome,
or a bile hard to be cured: Virus, viri, a poison or stinch: Pelagus,
pelagi the sea. And fifthly, Vulgus, vulgi, the base and common
people: which is sometimes the Masculine, and sometimes the
Neuter Gender.

And 5. Vulgus, which is sometimes the Masculine, and sometimes
the Neuter Gender.

The third Exception of Nouns not increasing, being the Doubtfull Gender.

These Nouns following, are of the Doubtfull Gender:
Talpa, talpae, a Mole: Dama, damae, a Buck or a Doe: Ca-
nalis, canalis, a chancell: Halcyonis halcyonis, a bird, called the kings
fisher: Finis, finis, an end: Clunus, clunis, a buttock: Restis, restis,
a rope

The third Exce-
ption, is,
Of these Nouns of
the Doubtfull
Gender: Talpa,
dama, canalis, hal-
cyonis, finis, clunis,
restis,

penus, amnis, pampinus, corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis, ficus, fici, phaselus, lecythus, atomus, grossus, pharus, & paradisus.

A rope of *Witch*: *Penus, peni*, or *penus*, all manner of victuals: *Amnis, amnis*, a river: *Pampinus, pampini*, a vine branch: *Corbis, corbis*, a basket, pannier, skep, or the top of a mast: *Linter, linteris*, a cock boat: *Torquis, torquis*, a collar, or chain of gold or silver, to adorn the neck: *Specus, speci*, or *specus*, a den to await a prey in: *Anguis, anguis*, a dyer or a water snake: *Ficus, fici*, a figle, or hard and red soy in the fundament: *Phaselus, phaseli*, a little swift and long ship, called a *Bigandine*: *Lecythus, lecythi*, an oyl bot, pot or glass, a vial, eloquence in wisting: *Atomus, atomi*, a mote in the Sun, a thing so small, that it cannot be divided, the least moment of time, in numbers, one: *Grossus, grossi*, a rather ripe fig, or a green fig not yet ripe: *Pharus, phari*, a watch tower: *Paradisus, paradisi*, a most pleasant place; *Paradise*, a garden or orchard.

The fourth Exception, is,

The fourth Exception of Nouns not increasing, being the Commune Gender.

Of Nouns derived of Verbs, and ending in *a*, which are the Commune of two Genders: 1. *Grajugena, agricola, advena, senex, fenis, auriga, verna, sodalis, vates, extorris, patriu- elis, perduellis, affinis, juvenis, civis, canis, hostis*.

The Second special Rule, is,

Of Nouns, whose last syllable but one, of the Genitive case increasing is long, to be the

First, Nouns derived of Verbs, and ending in *a*, are of the Commune Gender: as, *Grajugena, grajugena*, a Grecian boy; of gigno, to beget: *Agricola, agricolae*, an Husbandman; of colo, to till: *Advena, advens*, a stranger; of venio, to come. And secondly, *senex, fenis*, an old man or woman: *Auriga, auriga*, a wagoner, *Carman* or *catter*: *Verna, verna*, a bondman or woman; born of a bondwoman at home: *Sodalis, sodalis*, a fellows: *Vates, vates*, a Prophet or Prophetess: *Extorris, extorris*, a banished man or woman: *Patriu- elis, patriu- elis*, a brothers child, or Cousin-german: *Perduellis, perduellis*, an enemy in ways: *Affinis, affinis*, a kinsman by marriage: *Juvenis, juvenis*, one come to mans age, a young man: *Tektis, tektis*, a witness, man or woman: *Civis, civis*, a Citizen, man or woman: *Canis, canis*, a dog, a dog-fish, or a Star, or sign in the firmament, called *Canis*: *Hostis, hostis*, an enemy.

The Second special RULE.

A Noun is the Feminine Gender, whose last syllable but one, of the Genitive case, increasing, is long: as, *Pietas, pietatis*, godliness: *Virtus, virtutis*, virtue, or great power.

Feminine Gender: as, *Pietas, pietatis*; and *Virtus, virtutis*.

Hitherto do appertain those Nouns which do sound long in the last syllable but one, of the Genitive case increasing: as, all Nouns of the first Declension, except *Fides, fidei*, faith or truth; Feminine Gender.

Also, all Nouns of one syllable, except *Vis, vis*, Fear: Gender, strength, power, nature, violence. All the rest are of the third Declension: as all ending in

c, Hæc,

Hæc, & hoc hæc, hæc, a Herring.
Hic delphin, } a Dolphin fish, or a sign in the sea.
An, } *Hic Titan,* } *nis.* } *son to Colum and veila; used of the*
Hic & hæc infans, } a Babe.
Ans, } *Hic quadrans,* } the fourth part of as, i. 3 ounces,
Ens, } *Hic continens,* } continent, chaffe. (a quarter-
Hic triens, } entis. } a Farthing coin, the third part of
Uns, } *Hic decuns, decuntis,* } as, i. 4 ounces or inches.
Hic decuns, decuntis, } ten ounces.

Also, in *er* long, written of the Greeks by *as*, *hic Character, Eris*, a Letter, token, mark or seal: *hic Crater, Eris*, a goblet, or standing piece: *hic Stater, Eris*, a coin worth two shillings four pence: *hic Soter, Eris*, a Saviour.
 Latine Nouns in *er*, belonging to the third Rule: and therefore, *hæc Mulier, Eris*, is not rightly placed in this form.

Inx, } *Syrinx, ingis*, a Pipe, flute, recorder, a Squire; fem. gen.
Aux, } *Phalanx, angis*, a four-square army of 8000. footmen;
Deunx, } *m g.* } 11 ounces, or 11 parts of any thing divid-
Unx, } *uncis.* } ed into 12.
In, } *as* } *Septanx,* } a waight of 7. ounces, seven parts of
as } *f. g.* } a whole.
Ons, } *Bifrons,* } one that hath a face before, and another
Ors, } *ontis, com. gen.* } (behide.
Efrons, } bold, impudent.
Cohors, } a band of souldiers, a company; fem. gen.
Confors, } *ortis.* } (of three.
Confors, } a companion, yelvie to, like; Adject. com.

Furthermore, Latine Nouns in *o*, having *onis*, and *enis*, in the Genitive case: as, *Lectio, onis*, fem. gen. a reading: *Ligo, onis*, male gen. a Spade, shoul, mattock or plowshare: *Hic spado, onis*, what- soever is gelded: *Hæc anio, enis*, the river Taveron in Italy. Except a few Nouns Genitives, which do appertain to the third Rule: as, *hic Macedo, onis* a Macedonian boy: *hic Brito, onis*, a Britain: *hic Saxo, onis*, a Saxon: *hic Vangio, onis*, a Vangian: *hic Lingo, onis*, one of Langres in France.

Nouns of the Nenter Gender, in *al*: as, *Vestigal, alis*, tribute: *Animal, alis*, a living creature. The rest in *al* are of the third Rule.

In *En*, having *enis*, in the Genitive case: as, *Hic Iyen, enis*, the spleen or mist: *hæc syren, enis*, a Mermaid. The rest are of the third Rule.

Greek Nouns in *on*, keeping *o* in the Genitive case: as, *hic Damon, onis*, a Pythagorean philosopher, so called: *hæc Ladon, onis*, a river of Arcadia: *hic Symon, onis*, a Philosopher, Rhetorician, Musician.

Al.

En.

• **Maſtican**, and **Image-maker**, ſo called: hic Tryon, ſonis, a maſt ſo called. Certain do vary; as, hic Orion, ſonis, ſon to Iupiter, Neptune and Mercury: hic Edon, ſonis, a hill in Macedonia, near Thrace, alſo the country of Idumea: hac Egeon, ſonis, a city betwixt Aetolia and Peloponneſus: and theſe have alſo onis in the Genitive caſe. The reſt are of the third Rule.

Ar. **Latine Nouns in Ar**: as, Hoc laquear, ſaris, a vaulted roof of a Palace: Hoc exemplar, ſaris, a pattern: hoc calcar, ſaris, a Spur: except hoc jubar, ſaris, the Sun-beam: Hac nedar, ſaris, a prince y Wind, or honey: Hoc hepar, ſaris, the Liver.

Or. **Latine Nouns in Or**: as Hic amor, ſonis, love: hic timor, ſonis, fear: hac uxor, ſonis, a wife.

Except theſe following, which belong to the third Rule: as, Hac arbor, ſonis, a tree: hoc marmar, ſonis, marble: hoc aquor, ſonis, plain, the ſea, the air: hoc odor, ſonis, wheat: hoc robor, ſonis, ſtrength, courage, &c. And many Greek Nouns alſo: as, Hic Rhetor, ſonis, a Rhetorician: hic Hector, ſonis, Priams ſon by Hecuba: hic Neſtor, ſonis, ſon to Neleus and Cloris: hic Scentor, ſonis, a Greek, that with his voice alone, could make a greater noiſe than fifty men together, &c.

As. **Latine Nouns in As**: as, Hac majestas, ſatis, majesty: hac lenitas, ſatis, gentleneſſe: hac humilitas, ſatis, ſolitude: hac humanitas, ſatis, counteſſe, &c. Except, Hic vel hac anas, anſis, a Duck or a Drake. And certain Greek Nouns of the Feminine Gender: as, Lampis, ſidis, fire, brightneſſe of the Sun, or a lamp: Monas, ſidis, one alone: Trias, ſidis, three: Decas, ſidis, a ſingle ten.

Es. **Some Latine Nouns in Es**: as, Hac quies, ſis, reſt: hic Magnes, ſis, the Load-ſtone: Hic & hac locuples, ſis, rich: hac merces, ſis, wages: hic & hac hares, ſis, an heir: hic & hac coheres, ſis, a joint-heir. And certain Greek Nouns alſo: as, hic lebes, ſis, a Cauldron or pan: hic Tapes, ſis, a carpet, or cloath of Arras: hic Dares, ſis, a Phrygian, who wrote the wars of Troy: alſo a champion of Aeneas friends: hic Chremes, ſis, a man ſo called.

Is. **In Is, making ſis, inis, and idis, in the Genitive caſe**: as, Hic Samnis, ſis, a Samnite: hic Quiris, ſis, one of Rome: hac Salamis, ſis, an Ile near Athens, or a City in the ſame: hac Trachis, inis, a City of Pithiotis, at the foot of the hill Oeta: hac Plophis, idis, a City of Arcadia: Crenis, idis. The reſt are of the third Rule.

Os. **Latine Nouns in Os**: as, Hic & hac cuſtos, ſis, a keeper, man or woman: hic nepos, ſis, a nephew: except, hic & hac Compos, ſis, partaker of: hic hac & hoc Impos, ſis, void of, unable. And the Greek Nouns, which keep *o* in the laſt ſyllable ſave one of the Genitive caſe: as, Hic Heros, ſis, half a God: hic Minos, ſis, King of Crete, or chief Judge of Hell: hic Rhinoceros, ſis, a man of that name: hic Agoceros, ſis, a man ſo called.

Us. **In Us, having in the Genitive caſe ſingular, ſis, ſidis, ſis, ſantis**: as, Hac ſalus, ſis, health: hac palus, ſis, a Fen or marſh: hac tellus, ſis, the earth or ground: hac Opus, ſis, a City of Locris. Except this one word, Hac pecus, ſis, all kinde of cattell. Whereto do belong the Comparatives of the Neuter Gender in *us*, as, Hoc ſandius, ſis, more hoſy: hoc probius, ſis, more honeſt: hoc melius, ſis, better: hic pejus, ſis, worſe.

Ax. **As will Latine as Greek Nouns, in Ax**: as, Hic & hac limax, ſis,

ſis, a ſnail: hac fornax, ſis, a furnace, oven or chimney: hic thorax, ſis, a breaſt, or breaſtplate: hic hac & hoc phrax, ſis, voluptuous: hic hac & hoc audax, ſis, bold: hic hac & hoc bibax, ſis, given to drink, a drunkard. Except certain Greek Nouns Appellative and Gentile: as Hic abax, ſis, a cupboard or ſteller: hic thorax, ſis, a ſweet Incenſe, or Gum, called alſo, ſtyrax, ſis, ſong. hac ſimilax, ſis, a Dew tree: hic colax, ſis, a flatterer: hic corax, ſis, a Raven or Crow: hic dropax, ſis, a medicine to take away hair: hic Pharnax, ſis, Mithridates ſon: Candax, ſis,

Notwithſtanding, hic ſyphax, ſis, ſyphac, ſis, ſyphacis, ſis, a King of Numidia.

A few in *ix*: as, Hic vertex, ſis, a weather ſteep: hic vibex, ſis, the point of a ſtripe: hic & hac exlex, ſis, a lawleſſe man or woman: hac alex, ſis, Wine with bees and all. The reſt in *ix*, do belong to the third Rule.

Latine and Greek Nouns in *ix*: as, Hac lodix, ſis, a ſheet, coverlet or blanket: hac radix, ſis, a root: hac cornix, ſis, a crow, the ring, or Iron hammer, wherewith men knock at the door: hic hac & hoc ſpadix, ſis, a Date-tree branch, plucked from the tree, with the fruit thereof, a ſcarlet colour, a bright day: hic hac & hoc felix, ſis, happy: hic phoenix, ſis, a bird ſo called: hic & hoc pernix, ſis, a Partridge: hac cornix, ſis, a Quail, &c. And all Cardinals in *ix*: as, hac vidrix, ſis, ſhe that vanquiſheth: hac nutritrix, ſis, a nurſe, or nurſery of trees: hac nutritrix, ſis, ſhe that nurseth: hac lotrix, ſis, a Laundreſſe, &c. The reſt do belong to the third Rule.

Subſtantives and Adjectives in *ox*: as, hac celox, ſis, a little back boat: hic hac & hoc velox, ſis, ſwift: except, hic Cappadox, ſis, a Cappadocian: hic Allobrox, ſis, one of Savoy, and Dauphine.

In *ux*: as, Hic Pollux, polſis, one of the Twins whom Jupiter begate of Leda, in the form of a Swan. The reſt are of the third Rule.

In *yx*: as, Hic bombyx bombycis, a ſilkworm, or ſilk: but Bombyx varieth hebrycis, maſcul. gender: an inhabitant of Hebrycia, or a King of the Pyrene mountains. The reſt belong to the third Rule.

Greek Nouns in *s*, with *p* before it: as, Hydrops, ſis, the dropsie: hic Cyclops, ſis, a Cycant, or an ancient inhabitant of Sicily, having but one eye: hac conops, ſis, a Gnat: hic hac & hoc cerops, ſis, deceitfull, jealous. The reſt in *ops*, do belong to the third Rule.

The firſt Exception of Nouns increaſing long, being the Maſculine Gender.

1. **Certain Nouns of one ſyllable, are the Maſculine Gender**: as, ſal, ſalis, Salt: Sol, ſolis, the Sun: Ren renis, the Kidney: Splen, ſplenis, the Spleen: Car, caris, a man of Caria: Ser, ſeris, one of the people in Aſia, called Seres: Vir, viri, a man: Vas, vadis, a Surety, bail, pledge, or hoſtage: As, aſſis, a pound of twelve ounces, or the whole ſum of any thing: Mas maris, a man: Hes, beſſis, eight ounces: Cres, cretis, a Cretian, or man of Candy: Pies,

2. **Nouns of one ſyllable, the maſc. gender**: as, Sal, ſol, ren, ſplen, car, ſer, vir, vas, vadis, as, mas, bes, cretis

pres, pres, glis, gliris, mus, flos, ros, trois, mus, dens, mens, pons, fons, seps for a serpent, *grips, thrax, rex, grex, & phrix.*

2. Nouns of more than one syllable in *n*: as, *Acarnan, lichen, delphin.*

3. In *o*: as, *Leo, curculio.*

4. *Senio, terminio, sermo.*

5. In *er*: as, *crater.*

6. In *or*: as, *conditor.*

7. In *os*: as, *heros.*

8. *Torrens, nefrens, oriens.*

9. In *dens*: as, *bidens,* signifying an instrument with two teeth.

10. *Gigas, elephas, adamas, garamas, tapes, lebes, Cures, magnus, meridies.*

11. The compounds of *as*: as, *dodrans, semis.*

12. *Samnis, hydrops, nycticorax, thorax, vervec, phnix, & bumbix,* for a little worm.

An Exception, of *Syren, mulier, soror, uxor,* to be the Fem. Gender.

1. The second Exception; i. of these monosyllables, to be the neuter.

Mel, fel, lac, far, ver, cor, as, vas, vasis, os, ossis, as, vis, rus, thus, jus, ens, pus.

2. Of more than one syllable in *al*: as, *capital.*

Pros, predis, a Surety in a money matter: Pes, pedis, a foot: Glis, gliris, a Dormouse: Mos, moris, a Custom or manner: Flos, floris, a flower: Ros, rotis, the dew: Trois, trois, or trois, a Trojan: Mus, muris, a Mouse: Dens, densis, a tooth: Mons, montis, a hill: Pons, pontis, a bridge: Fons, fontis, a Well: Seps, sepis, a Serpent, by whose biting or stinging, the flesh rotteth, a horned worm, a hedge: Grips, griphis, a Giffon: Thrax, thraxis, a Thracian: Rex, regis, a King: Grex gregis, a flock or company: Phryx, phrygis, a Phrygian or Trojan.

Secondly, Nouns of more than one syllable in *n*: as, *Acarnan, acarnanis, one of Acarnania in Greece: Lichen, lichenis, Liverwort, or a leppy called a sauce steam: Delphin, delphinis, a Dolphin fish, or sign of the heavens: Chircile, in o, signifying a body: as, Leo, leonis, a Lion: Curculio, curculionis, a Flea: Senio, senionis, the Size: terminio, terminionis, the thyme: Sermo, sermonis, speech: Fifthly, in *er*: as, *Crater, crateris, craterem, or cratera, a goblet, or standing piece: Sixthly, in or*: as, *Conditor, oris, a builder: Seventhly, in os*: as, *Heros, herois, a man, noble or excellent for worthy deeds: Eighthly, Torrens, torrenis, a Lake without a spring, begun by rain: Nefrens, nefrendis, a young Pig: Oriens, orientis, the East: Ninthly, many in dens*: as, *Bidens, bidentis, an instrument with two teeth: in the Feminine Gender, a sheep with two teeth.**

Tenthly, *Gigas, gigantis, a Giant: Elephas, elephantis, an Elephant: Adamas, adamantis, an Adamant, or the herb called Henbane: Garamas, garamantis, one of Asfrick: Tapes, taperis, a Carpet, or cloth of Arras: Lebes, leberis, a Cauldron or pan: Cures, curium, a Town of the Sabines: Magnes, magneteris, the Load-stone which draweth Iron unto it: Meridies, meridies, Noon or the noon dead: Eleventhly, Nouns compounded of this word, *As*, a pound of twelve ounces: as, *Dodrans, dodrantis, nine ounces: Semis, semissis, half a pound, or six ounces, or the half of any whole sum. And twelfthly, Samnis, samnitis, a Samnite, an inhabitant of the mountains betwixt the Sabines and the Marsi in Italy: Hydrops, hydropis, the Dropsie: Nycticorax, nycticoracis, a night-Raven: Thorax, thoracis, the breast, and breastplate: Vervex, vervecis, a weather sheep: Phrenyx phoenicis, a bird so called: bombyx, bombycis, a silk worm, or silk. But of these, *Syren, syrenis, a Mermaid: Mulier, mulieris, a woman: Soror, sororis, a sister: Uxor, uxoris, a wife: are the Feminine Gender.***

The second Exception of Nouns increasing long, being the Neuter Gender.

First, these Nouns of no more than one syllable, are the Neuter Gender: *Mel, mellis, honey: Fel, fellis, the Cat: Lac, lactis, milk: far, farris, bread corn: Ver, veris, the Spring time: Cor, cordis, the heart: As, aris, Copper, and sometimes money: Vas, vasis, a vessel: Os, ossis, a bone: Os, oris, a mouth: Rus, ruris, the country: Thus, thuris, Frankincense, incense: Jus, juris, the law, right, or potage: crus, curis, a leg: pus, puris, corrupt matter, or a core. Secondly, Nouns of more than one syllable in *al*: as, *Capital capitalis, an ornament of the Head in Sacrifice, or worn of Kings, a lace,**

lace, ribbon, or coss, to tussle up the hair, or a crime punishable with death: Chircile, in ar; as, Laquear, laquearis, a vaulted roof of a chamber or parlour, or a plain beam in a roof. And fourthly, Halec, halecis; which is both the Fem. and Neuter Gender also.

The third Exception of Nouns increasing long, being the Doubtful Gender.

These Nouns are of the Doubtful Gender: *Python, pythonis, a Serpent, a spirit of southsaying, or man or woman possessed with such a spirit: Scrobs, scrobis, a ditch, pit, or furrow: Serpens, serpentis, a Dragon, serpent or snake: Bubo, bubonis, a Scritch owl, or owl: Rudens, rudentis, a gable-rope: Grus, gruis, a Crane: Perdix, perdicis, a Partridge: Linx, lineis, a spotted beast of a most sharp sight, called an Ounce: Limax, limacis, the shelled, or newt snail: Sturps, stirpis, signifying the stump, stock, or body of a tree: Calx, calcis, the heel, or last end of any thing: Dies, diei, a day: but, Dies is the Masc. Gender only in the Plural Number.*

The fourth Exception of Nouns increasing long, being the Communine Gender.

First, these Nouns following, are of the Communine Gender: *Parens, parentis, a father or mother, a grandfather or grandmother: Autor, autoris, an Author, the worker or doer of any thing, man or woman: Infans, infantis, an Infant, or babe: Adolescens, adolescentis, a stripling, from 12 years to 21. Dux, ducis, a Captain or guide, man or woman: Illex, illegis, a lawless body, man or woman: heres, heredis, an heir: Exlex, exlegis, a lawless man or woman. Secondly, Nouns compounded of *Frans, frontis, a forehead; as, Bifrons, bifrontis, he or she which hath two foreheads or faces. And thirdly, Custos, custodis, a keeper, man or woman: Bos, bovis, an Ox, bull or cow: Fur, furis, a man or woman thief: Sus, suis, a Boar, sow or hog: Sacerdos, sacerdotis, a Priest or Nun.**

The Third special RULE.

A Noun is the Masculine Gender, whose last syllable but one of the Genitive case increasing, is short; as, *Sanguis, sanguinis, blood.*

Contrariwise, these Nouns are short in the last syllable but one of the Genitive case; of which sort are those few of the second Declension above mentioned: that is to say, *Hic, socer, soceri, a father-in-law: Hic, gener, generi, a son-in-law: Hic, puer, pueri, a child, servant or son: Hic, adulter, adulteri, an adulterer: Hic, Presbyter, presbyteri, a Presbyter or Elder; an Ecclesiastical word.*

The Compounds of *Hic vir, viri, a man, husband, or male of beasts: as, Hic, levir, leviri, the husbands brother: Hic, triumvir, triumviri, one of the three in like authority: Hic, decemvir, decemviri, one of the ten in like authority: Hic, centumvir, centumviri, one of the hundred in like authority.*

The Nouns also compounded of *Geo, to bear; and Fero, to bear*

3. In *ar*: as, *Laquear.*

4. Of *Halec*, to be both the Feminine and Neuter Gender.

The third Exception is, Of these Nouns of the Doubtful Gender.

Python, (scrobs, serpens, bubo, rudens, grus, perdix, linx, limax, stirps, calx, dies; which last is the Masc. only in the Plur. Num. Steps, for a stock or descent; and Calx, for lime, chalk or mortar; are the Fem. Gen.

These Nouns are of the Com. Gen.

1. *Parens, autor, infans, adolescens, dux, illex, heres, exlex.*

2. Nouns coming of this word, *frons; as, Bifrons.*

3. *Custos, bos, fur, sus, & sacerdos.*

The third special Rule, is,

Of Nouns, whose last syllable but one of the Genitive case increasing, is short, to be the Masc. Gen. as, *Sanguis, sanguinis.*

- beat or suffer: as, hic Armiger, armig'eri, an Esquire for the body, or armour-bearer of a Knight: Hic claviger, clavig'eri, a bearer of keys: Hic caducifer, cadus'feri, one that carrieth a white rod: Hic lucifer, luciferi, one that bringeth light. And certain adjectives: as, Tener, tenera, tenerum, teneri, tender: Satur, a, um, uri, full: Dexter, era, erum, eri, right: Prosper, a, um, eri, prosperous. Wherby also do belong all Greek Nouns of the Neuter Gender in a: as, Poema, poematis, a Poem, or Poets work, Verses: Dogma, dogmatis, an opinion: sophisma, sophismatis, a Sophisme or cavill: Enigma, enigmatis, a dark question, or riddle.
- Yr. Also, Greek Nouns in Yr: as, Hic & hac Martyr, martyris, a Martyr, or witness: P'schyr, p'schyris.
- Ur. In like manner, all Latine Nouns in Ur: as Hic & hac augur, auguris, a man or woman soothsayer: Hoc murmur, murmuris, a noise of water running, or any such like thing, a roaring, muttering, or humming noise: Hic hac & hoc cicur, cicuris, tame.
- Ur. Also, all Nouns in Ur: as, Hoc caput, caputis, an head: Hoc occiput, occiputis, the under part of the head.
- O. Furthermore, all Latine Nouns in O besides them before excepted: as, hac Imago, imaginis, an Image: Hac sarrago, sarraginis, a frying pan: Hic ordo, ordinis, an order: Hic vel hac cardo, cardinis, an hook or hinge.
- L. In L: as, hic Annibal, Annibalis, the son of Amilear: hic Mugil, mugilis, a Mullet: hic Consul, consulis, a Consul, or chief officer among the Romans, a Burrow-master: hic & hac Praeful, praefulis, a Prelate, superintendant, or Prior.
- En. In En: as, Hic pecten, pectinis, a comb, or weavers fley: Hic tibicen, tibicenis, a player on the Flute, a trumpeter, or minstrell: Hic carmen, carminis, a verse or song: Hoc crimen, criminis, a fault, or false report.
- On. Greek Nouns in On, having the little o, in the last syllable but one of the Nominative case Singular: as, hic Canon, canonis, a Rule: hic Demon, demonis, a Devil or spirit: hic Architecton, architectonis, a master Mason, or Carpenter: hic Philemon, philemonis, a comical Poet.
- Or. Latine and Greek Nouns in Or: as, Hac arbor, arboris, a tree: hoc aquor, aquoris, a Plain, or the sea: Hoc marmor, marmoris, a marble: hic Pantocrator, pantocratoris, Almighty: Apator, apatoris.
- As. In As: as, hic vel hac anas, anatis, a Duck or Drake. And Greek Nouns: as, hic Archas, archadis, Jupiters son by Callisto, an Arcadian: Hac chilias, chiladis, a thousand: Hac hebdomas, hebdomadis, a week: hac Enneas, enneadis, the Nine.
- Es. Latine Nouns in Es: as, Hic fomes, fomitis, a chip, tinder, touchwood, or any matter that is easily fired, or where with fire is kept burning and kindled: Hic limes, limitis, a frontier, bound, or ducting in fields, a cross way: Hic & hac praefes, praefidis, a superintendant, man or woman: Hic hac & hoc deses, desidis, idle.
- Is. Latine and Greek Nouns in Is: as, Hic sanguis, sanguinis, blood: Hac pollis, pollinis, fine wheat flower, or fine powder: Hac tyrannis, tyrannidis, a tyranny in government, cruelty: Hac paropsis, paropsidis, a Charger, platter or dish.

Latine

- Latine and Greek Nouns in Ar: as, Hoc jubar, jubaris, the Sun-beam: Hic hac & hoc compar, comparis, equal: Hoc nectar, nectaris, a pleasant liquor, or honey: hac Bacchar, baccharis, an herb called of the French men, our Ladies gloves.
- Latine and Greek Nouns in Er: as, Hic socer, soceri, a wifes father, a father-in-law: Hic gener, generi, a daughters husband, a son-in-law: hic Aer, aeris, the Ay: hic Aether, aetheris, the Element of fire, or whatsoever is above it, the ay, sky, or brightness of heaven.
- As well Latine as Greek Nouns in S, with a Consonant before: as, hic & hac Princeps, principis, a Prince or Princess: hic hyems, hyemis, Winter: Hic hac & hoc inops, inopis, needy: hic Aethiops, aethiopsis, an Ethiopian: hic Arabs, arabis, an Arabian: hic Chalybs, chalybis, Steel, a sword.
- Latine Nouns in Os: as, Hic & hac compos, compotus, partaker of.
- Latine and Greek Nouns in Us: as, Hoc pecus, praecoris, all cattle: hoc Decus, decoris, Honour, or comeliness: hoc Vellus, velleris, a fleece of wooll, a felt, leaves of trees: Hoc vulnus, vulneris, a wound: Hic tripus, tripodis, anything of three feet: as, a stool, pot, or tripet: hic Oedipus, oedipodis, son to Laius and Locasta.
- Greek Nouns in Ax: as, Hic abax, abaxis, the square of a pillar below, serving to sit on: a counting table, or the art of counting, a chestboard, a cupboard, a case to keep plate in, a dresser, the compass of the body of the Sun, as it appeareth to us: hic Sorax, storaxis, a sweet Incense or Gum: Hic colax, colaxis, a flatterer: Hic climax, climaxis, a step of a ladder, or a ladder, a stile, a going up.
- Latine Nouns in Ex: as, hic & hac Index, indicis, an appeacher of another, a touchstone, a Table of a book, a Summary, an Inventory, a sign, a guide: hic & hac Vindex, vindicis, a revenger, repressor, defender, or Doctor: Hic carnifex, carnificis, an hangman, cutter, or murderer: hic & hac Aruspex, aruspis, a Soothsayer, by looking into the bowels of beasts.
- Latine and Greek Nouns in Ix: as, hic Varix, varicis, a crooked Vein, swelling with corrupt blood, in the temples, belly, or legs: hic Fornix, fornicis, an arch, a Stew: hic Calix, calicis, a cup, Chalice, or bottome of a boat: hic Maltix, malticis, a whip, the sweet Gum called Mastick.
- Latine and Greek Nouns in Ox: as, Hic hac & hoc praecox, praecocis, too soon ripe: hic Cappadox, cappadocis, a Cappadocian: hic Allobrox, allobrogis, one of Savoy, or Dauphine: hic Polyphilo, polyphilis.
- Latine Nouns in Ux: as, hic & hac Conjux, conjugis, an husband or wife, a Bride, a mate: Hic hac & hoc redux, redicis, one returning, or bringing home again.
- To conclude, Greek Nouns in Yx: as, hic vel hac Onyx, onychis, the Nail of ones finger or toe: hic & hac Sardonyx, sardonichis, a stone in the upper part, resembling the colour of ones Nail, in the nether part, the colour of flesh, called a Sardonyx: hic Cryx, crychis, a Purlevant, Beadle, or Cryer: hic Eryx, erychis,

The first Excep-
tion.

1. OF Nouns of more than two syllables, in *do*, & *di*: *nis*: as, *dulcedo*, *dulcedinis*.

2. In *go*, & *gini*: as, *compago*, *compaginis*.

3. *Virgo*, *grando*, *fidis*, *compes*, *teges*, *teges*, *arbor*, *hyemis*, *bacchar*, *syndon*, *gorgon*, *icon*, & *amazon*.

4. Greek Nouns in *as*: as, *lampas*.

5. Greek Nouns in *is*: as, *laspis*, *causus*, *culpis*.

6. *Pecus*, *pecudis*, & *foefex*, *pellex*, *carex*, *supellex*, *appendix*, *histris*, *coxendix*, & *filix*.

The second Excep-
tion.

1. OF Nouns, no-
ting a thing with-
out life, to be the
Neuter Gender,
ending in *as*: as,
problemata.

2. In *en*: as,
omen.

3. In *ar*: as, *jubar*.

4. In *ur*: as, *lecur*.

5. In *us*: as,
onus.

6. In *put*: as, *occi-
put*, &.

7. *Cadaver*, *ver-
ber*, *iter*, *fisher*,
tuber, *uber*, *gingi-
ber*, *laser*, *cicer*,
piper, *papaver*, *sicer*, *aler*, *aquor*, *marmor*, *ador*, & *pecus*, *pecoris*.

The first Exception of Nouns increasing short, being
the Feminine Gender.

First, Nouns of more than two syllables, ending in *do*, habi-
dinis in the Genitive case: are of the Feminine Gender: as
Dulcedo, *dulcedinis*, *Wetness*. Secondly, in *go*, having *gini* in
the Genitive case: as, *Compago*, *compaginis*, a joynr. Thirdly,
Virgo, *virginis*, a Virgin: *Grando*, *grandinis*, hail: *Fides*, *fidis*, faith
or truth: *Compes*, *compedis*, a pair of fetters: *Tege*, *tegetis*, a cover-
ing, a mat: *Segetes*, *segetis*, sowing corn: *Arbor*, *arboris*, a tree:
Hyems, *hyemis*, winter: *Bacchar*, *baccharis*, an herb which the
French men do call, our Ladies gloves: *Syndon*, *syndonis*, fenda-
a most fine veil, curtain, or sail, or linnen. as *Cambridge*, *Luton*, &
Gorgon, *gorgonis*, a certain terrible woman: *Icon*, *iconis* an image.
Fourthly, Greek Nouns in *as*: as, *Lampas*, *lampadis*, a lamp, fire,
or the brightness of the Sun. Fifthly, Greek Nouns in *is*: as
Jaspis, *jaspidis*, a precious stone of a green colour, called a Jasper.
Callis, *callidis*, an helmet: *Cuspis*, *cuspidis*, the point of a Spear.
Pike, *Partizan*, or of any weapon, a sting. Sixthly, *Pecus*, *peco-
dis*, all cattell. And seventhly, *Portex*, *porticis*, a pair of Scissors.
Shears: *Pellex*, *pellicis*, an harlot: *Carex*, *caricis*, *Sedge*: *Supellex*,
supellectilis, household-stuff: *Appendix*, *appendicis*, an Appendice, &
a booty to increase a thing: *Histris*, *histris*, a Porcupine or Hedge-
hog: *Coxendix*, *coxendicis*, the ship: *Filix*, *filicis*, fern.

The Second Exception of Nouns increasing short, being
the Neuter Gender.

A Noun signifying a thing without life, is the Neuter Gender,
ending itself in *as*: as, *Problema*, *problematis*, a demand. Se-
condly, in *en*: as, *Omen*, *ominis*, a fore-speaking. Thirdly, in *ar*:
as, *Jubar*, *jubaris*, the Sun, or sun-beam. Fourthly, in *ur*: as,
Jecur, *jecoris*, or *jecinoris*, the Liver. Fifthly, in *us*: as, *Onus*, *on-
ris*, a burthen. Sixthly, in *put*: as, *Occiput*, *occipitis*, the hinder
part of the head; of which notwithstanding, *Pecten*, *pectinis*, a
comb, or a weavers key: and *Furur*, *furfuris*, Bran, or scurfe: are
of the Masculine Gender. And seventhly, *Cadaver*, *cadaveris*, a dead
body, corpse, or carrion: *Verber*, *verberis*, a rod, a whip, a stripe: *Iti-
neris*, a journey: *Suber*, *suberis*, a Cork-tree: *Tuber*, *tuberis*, a Load-
stool: *Uber*, *uberis*, a Dug, or Udder: a bosome, a spout, or cock of
a Conduit, fatness or fertility of the ground, a swarm of young
Bees, hanging on the branches of a tree: *Gingiber*, *gingiberis*,
Ginger: *Laser*, *laseris*, a Juice of the Herb *Lasercitium*, or Benjamin.
Cicer, *ciceris*, a certain Italian Pease: *Piper*, *piperis*, *Pepper*: *Papa-
ver*, *papaveris*, *Poppy*: *Sicer*, *siceris*, a *Perlin*: *Siler*, *sileris*, an
Uster: *Aquor*, *aquoris*, a *Plain*, the sea, or *ayr*: *Marmor*, *marmoris*,
a marble: *Ador*, undeclined, *Advent*: and *Pecus*, *pecoris*, all cattell.

The third Exception of Nouns increasing short, being
the Doubtfull Gender.

These Nouns following, are of the Doubtfull Gender: *Car-
do*, *cardinis*, an hook or hinge: *Margo*, *marginis*, the brink of
any thing, the bank of a river, or of the sea: *Cinis*, *cineris*, ashes,
inders, a Lark: *Obex*, *obicis*, a bar or bolt of a door, a stop: *Pulvis*,
pulveris, of pulvis, dust: *Adeps*, *adipis*, fat: *Forceps*, *forcipis*, a pair of
Congers: *Pumex*, *pumicis*, a pumice stone: *Ramek*, *ramicis*, barst-
nelle: *Anas*, *anatis*, a Duck or a Drake: *Imbrex*, *imbricis*, a gutter-
tile: *Culex*, *culeicis*, a Gnat: *Natrix*, *naticis*, a water-Serpent: *O-
nyx*, *onycis*, the Nail of ones hand, a precious stone, white like a
Nail, the hair in ones eye: *Silex*, *silicis*, a flint-stone. But these are
most used in the Masculine Gender.

The fourth Exception of Nouns increasing short, being
the Commune Gender.

First, these Nouns following, are of the Com. of two Gen.
Vigil, *vigilis*, a man or woman watcher: *Pugil*, *pugilis*, a man or
woman champion: *Exul*, *exulis*, a banished man or woman: *Præsul*,
præsulis, he or she that superintendeth. *Homo*, *hominis*, a man or wo-
man: *Nemo*, *neminis*, no body, man or woman: *Martyr*, *martyris*, a wit-
ness man or woman, a Martyr: *Lygur*, *lyguris*, one of Lyguria in Ita-
ly: *Augur*, *auguris*, a man or woman soothsayer: *Arcas*, *arcadis*, one of
Arcadia: *Amiles*, *amilitis*, a man or woman President, or a chief
Ruler: *Miles*, *militis*, a man or woman soldier: *Pedes*, *peditis*, a
Foot-man or woman: *Interpres*, *interpretis*, a man or woman In-
terpreter, or Translator: *Comes*, *comitis*, a man or woman com-
panion on the way: *Hospes*, *hospitis*, an host, hostes, or guest, man
or woman: *Ales*, *alitis*, a bird, or swift: *Præses*, *præsidis*, a President,
he or she: *Princeps*, *principis*, a Prince or Princess: *Auceps*, *aucipis*,
a man or woman Fowler: *Eques*, *equitis*, an horseman or woman:
and *Obex*, *obicis*, a man or woman hostage or pledge. And second-
ly, many other Nouns coming of Verbs: as, *Conjux*, *conjugis*, an
husband or wife: *Judex*, *judicis*, a man or woman Judge: *Vindex*,
vindicis, an avenger man or woman: *Opifex*, *opificis*, a work-man
or woman: *Aruspex*, *aruspis*, he or she that seeketh Destinies by
the bowels of beasts, a soothsayer.

A general Rule for Nouns ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives of one termination, are all three Genders: as,
Hic *hæc* & *hoc* *felix*, *felicitis*, happy: *Hic* *hæc* & *hoc* *audax*, *auda-
cis*, bold. If they have two terminations; the first is the Com-
mune Gender, and the other the Neuter: as, *Hic* & *hæc* *omnis*,
& *hoc* *omne*, *omnis*, all. If they have 3 terminations, the first is the
Masculine, the second the Feminine, and the third the Neuter:
as, *Sacer*, *saceris*, *sacerum*, *saceri*, *sacra*, *sacri* holy. These are by declining,
Com. Gen., and the other the Neuter: as, *omnis* & *omne*. If they have 3 terminations, the 1. is
the Masc., the 2. the Fem., the 3. the Neut. as, *sacer*, *saceris*, *sacerum*, holy. These are by declining,
almost

The third Exce-
ption, which of
these two Nouns
following, to be
the Doubtfull
Gender: *Cardo*,
margo, *cinis*, *obex*,
pulvis, *adeps*, *for-
ceps*, *pumex*, *ra-
mek*, *anicis*, *imbrex*,
gutter, *natrix*, *onyx*,
silex; which are
most used in the
Masculine Gen-
der.

The fourth Exce-
ption of Nouns,
being of the Com-
mune of two Gen-
ders: as,
1. *Vigil*, *pugil*, *exul*,
præsul, *homo*, *nemo*,
martyr, *lygur*, *au-
gur*, *arcas*, *antistes*,
miles, *pedes*, *inter-
pres*, *comes*, *hospes*,
ales, *præses*, *prin-
ceps*, *auceps*, *eques*,
& *obex*.

2. And many o-
ther Nouns also,
derived of Verbs:
as, *Conjux*, *judex*,
vindex, *opifex*, &
aruspex.

Genders of Adje-
tives, such as
have but one ter-
mination, are all
3. Genders under
that one: as, *felix*,
audax. If they
have 2. terminati-
ons, the first is the
Masc., the 2. the Fem., the 3. the Neut. as, *sacer*, *saceris*, *sacerum*, holy. These are by declining,
almost

almost Substantives, but by nature and use. Adjectives: *Pauper, pauperis, puber, degener, uber, dives, locuples, super, comes, superstes*: with a few more. These have a certain kinde of declining proper to themselves: as, *Caupescer, volucris, celer, saluber, pedester, equester, acer, paluster, alacer, silvester*.

almost Substantives, but by nature and use. Adjectives: as, *Hic & hae pauper, pauperis, puer, puber, degener, degeneris, degenerat, unnober, hic & hae uber, uberis, plentifull, hic & hae dives, divit, rich: hic & hae locuples, locupletis, wealthy, of account: hic & hae sopes, sospitis, whole: hic & hae comes, comitis, a companion a partaker, an Earl: hic & hae superstes, superstitis, a survivor, a pender, safe: with some few others. These have a certain kinde of declining, proper to themselves: as, *Hic campester, hae campestris & hoc campestre, campestris, of the plain or champion country, of fields: hic volucris, hae volucris, & hoc volucris, volucris, of the swift, inconstant: hic celer, hae celeris, & hoc celeris, celeris, of the swift, nimble: hic saluber, hae salubris, & hoc salubre, salubris, of the healthful, wholesome, profitable: hic pedester, hae pedestris, & hoc pedestre, pedestris, of the foot, a footman: hic equester, hae equestris, & hoc equestre, equestris, of the belonging to an horse: hic acer, hae acris, & hoc acre, acris, sharp, stout, strong: hic paluster, hae palustris, & hoc palustre, palustris, of the marsh, a swamp: hic alacer, hae alacris, & hoc alacre, alacris, cheerful, quick of spirit, of courage: and, hic silvester, hae silvestris, & hoc silvestre, silvestris, of the wood, woody, rude, of the field or country.**

There are Adjectives, which are defective in Gender of which as also of other Nouns, we will speak in another place.

The Declination of Nouns.

OF DECLINATION.

Declination is the variation of a word by Cases. There be five Declensions of Nouns.

The first Declension.

The first is when the Genitive and Dative case Singular endeth in a Diphthong, the Accusative in *am*, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in *a*. The Nominative Plural, in a Diphthong, the Genitive in *arum*, the Dative in *is*, the Accusative in *as*, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in *is*.

As in example:

Singular
Nominativo *hae musa*.
Genitivo *hujus musae*.
Dativo *huic musae*.
Accusativo *hanc musam*.
Vocativo *o musa*.
Ablativo *ab hac musa*.

Pluraliter
Nominativo *hae musae*.
Genitivo *harum musarum*.
Dativo *his musis*.
Accusativo *has musas*.
Vocativo *o musae*.
Ablativo *ab his musis*.

Hae mensa, mensa, a board. Hic poeta, poeta, a Poet. Hic & hae verna, verna, a bondman or woman, a slave. Hae musa, musa, a sweet song, a Muse, the Muses.

Note that *filia* and *nata*, do make the Dative and Ablative case Plural in *is*, or in *abus*. Also *Dea, mula, equa, libera* *ambae*, and *duae*, do make the Dative and Ablative case Plural, in *abus* only.

The first Declension comprehendeth four terminations: A, as, *mensa, mensae, a table*. As, as *hic Aeneas, Aeneae, a noble man of Troy, son to Anchises and Venus*. Es, as *hic Anchises, Anchisae, son to Capys*. And E, as *haec Penelope, Penelopes, daughter to Icarus, and wife to Ulysses*. Moreover, all which do end in As, Es, and E, are Greek Nouns: as, *hic Thomas, Thomae, Thomas: hic Anchises, Anchisae, Anchites. Hae Phoebe, Phoebe, Phoebe*.

Some add hereunto, certain Hebrew names in Am: as, *hic Adam, Adae, Adam: hic Abraham, Abrahae, Abraham: which notwithstanding, thou mayst decline better after the Latines, thus: hic Adamus, Adamis; hic Abrahamus, Abrahami*.

Such as end in As, do make their Accusative in Am and An: as, *hic Aeneas, Aeneam, or Aenian: and the Vocative in A: as, Aeneas, Aeneae*.

Such as end in Es, have En in the Accusative: as, *hic Anchises, Anchisen: in the Vocative and Ablative, E or A: as, Anchise, or, Anchisa*.

Such as end in E have es in the Genitive, e in the Dative, en in the Accusative, and e in the Vocative or Ablative: as, *Nominativo, haec Penelope, Genitivo hujus Penelopes, Dativo huic Penelope, Accusativo hanc Penelopem, Vocativo o Penelope, Ablativo ab hac Penelope*.

A Type of the first Declension.

SINGULARITER.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.	
a	a	a	am	a	a	<i>Hae musa.</i>
as	a	a	am, or an	a	a	<i>Hic Aeneas.</i>
es	a	a	em, or a	es, or a	or a	<i>Hic Anchises.</i>
e	es	e	em	e	e	<i>Hae Penelope.</i>

PLURALITER.

a	arum	is	as	a	is, and some in abus.
---	------	----	----	---	-----------------------

Sometimes

Note! *Hae filia, filia, a daughter: hae nata, nata, a daughter: hae dea, dea, a goddess: hae mula, mula, a Mule: hae equa, equa, a Mare: hae libera, libera, he or she that of bond is made free: ambae, both: duae, two.*

As in the Genitive.

Sometimes some Latine Nouns have As in the Genitive case, after the manner of the Greeks: as, hic paterfamilias, paterfamilias, the Godfather, or father of the house or family. Which the Antients observed in many other words, Ennius: Dux ipse vias, the guide himself of the way. Livius Andronicus; Mercurius lingue eo filius Latonas, for Latona: Mercurius, and with him, the son of Latona. So Nevius: Filii terras, for terra, of the son of the earth. Virgilius: Nec auras nec sonitus memor: neither mindfull of the soft winds, nor of the sound. Aulæ, aulæ, for aulæ, f.g. an hawk: hic pica, pica, for pica, a Quaker with a collar, a champion, a fighting cock, whereof I leave aulæ and pica, and like, to old writers. The Genitive case Plurall, doth sometimes admit a Syncope: as, Horum Aeneadum, for Aeneadarum, of the Trojans: Horum & harum Grajugenarum, for Grajugenarum, of the Greeks.

The second Declension.

The second Declension.

Hic vir, viri, a man. Hic liber, libri, a book. Hic colus, colis, a distaff. Hic legio, legi, speech. Hic magister, magistris, a master.

The second is when the Genitive case Singular endeth in i, the Dative in o, the Accusative in um, the Vocative for the most part like the Nominative, the Ablative in o: The Nominative Plurall in i, the Genitive in orum, the Dative in is, the Accusative in os, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in is.

As in Example:

Singular	Nominativo hic magister.	Plural	Nominativo hi magistris.
	Genitivo huius magistris.		Genitivo horum magistrum.
	Dativo huic magistro.		Dativo his magistris.
	Accusativo hunc magistrum.		Accusativo hos magistris.
	Vocativo ô magister.		Vocativo ô magistris.
	Ablativo ab hoc magistro.		Ablativo ab his magistris.

Note.

Hic Dominus, domini, a Lord. Hic Deus, dei, God. Hic filius, filii, a son. Hic Georgius, Georgii, George. Hic agnus, agni, a lamb. Hic lucus, luci, a wood. Hic & hoc vulgus, vulgi, the common people. Hic populus, populi, a people. Hic chorus, chori, a company of singers or dancers. Hic fluvius, fluvii, a flood or river. Hic damnum, damni, loss. Hic malum, mali, evil.

But Ovidius is bold to say, Latini Endymion, non est tibi luna, Endymion's Latini Endymion. Art thou not ashamed of the Moon? But he followeth the Attick Dialect of the Greeks, which doth seem the Vocative like the Nominative ever.

Note also that all Nouns of the Nuter Gender, of what Declension soever they be, have the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Vocative like in both Numbers: And in the Plurall Number, they end all in a.

As in example:

Singular	Nominativo hoc regnum.	Plural	Nominativo hæc regna.
	Genitivo huius regni.		Genitivo harum regnorum.
	Dativo huic regno.		Dativo his regnis.
	Accusativo hoc regnum.		Accusativo hæc regna.
	Vocativo ô regnum.		Vocativo ô regna.
	Ablativo ab hoc regno.		Ablativo ab his regnis.

Except Ambo and Duo, which make the Nuter Gender in o; and be thus Declined:

Hoc verbum, verbi, a word. Ambo, both. Duo, two.

Plural	Nominativo, Ambo, ambo, ambo.
	Genitivo, Ambarum, ambarum, ambarum.
	Dativo, Ambobus, ambobus, ambobus.
	Accusativo, Ambos, ambos, ambos.
	Vocativo, Ambo, ambo, ambo.
	Ablativo, Ambobus, ambobus, ambobus. Likewise, Duo.

Which two Anomalous Poets do use in the Masculine Gender of the Accusative case: as Virg. Si duo præterea tales Ida tulisset, terra viros; for duos: If the land of Ida had born two such men more. Hor. Ne vos titillet gloria: Jurejurando obstringam ambos; for ambos: Let glory should tickle you, I will bind you both with an oath. Cicero: Præter duo vos, nemo hic loquitur; for duos: Besides you two, no man speaketh here.

There are with the Latines, five terminations of the second Declension: as, Er, ir, ur, us, um: as, Hic aper, apri, a wilde Boar: Hic vir, viri a man; Satur, satura, saturum, glutted, plentiful, fruitful: hic Dominus, domini, a Lord, a ruler, an husband: hoc templum, templi, a Temple, a Church.

Of Greek Nouns, there be in this second Declension, three terminations: as, Os, on, eus: as, hæc Delos, delo, delon, an Ile, one of the Cyclades, in the sea Ægeum: hic Ilium, ilii, the first gut from the ventricle: hic Orpheus, Orpheis, Orpheus, an ancient Poet, son to Apollo and Calliope.

Attick Nouns in Os, do make the Genitive in o, the Accusative in on: as, hic Androgeos, Genitivo Androgeo, Accusativo Androgeon, son to Minos king of Crete, or a Grecian captain against Troy.

Certain Greek Nouns contracted into Us, do form the Vocative in u: as, hic Panthus, ô Panthu, son to Ocreus: for the word is Pantheus. Hic Oedipus, ô Oedipu, son to Laius and Jocasta.

The Greek Nouns in Eus, do form the Genitive in ei, or eos, the Dative in ei, the Accusative in ea, and the Vocative in eu: as, Nominativo hic Orpheus, Genitivo huius Orphei, or Orpheos, Dativo huic Orphei, Accusativo hunc Orpheu, Ovi Orpheon, Vocativo ô Orpheu, Ablativo ab hoc Orpheo.

To conclude, the Genitive Case Plurall doth sometimes admit also a Syncope: as, horum Deum, for horum Deorum, of the gods: Horum virum, for horum virorum, of men.

An Example of the second Declension.

SINGULARITER.						
	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
Hic Magister.	er				er	
Hic Vir.	ir				ir	
Satur, saturi, saturum; full (fed).	ur	i	o	um	er	o
Hoc Gemmum, ni, a Gemm.	um				um	
Hic Dominus. Georgius, m.	us				e i	
Hic Orpheus.	eus	eus	ei	eum	e	o
PLURALITER.						
	i			os	i	
		orum	is			is
	a			a	a	

The third Declension.

The third Declension.

Hic pater, patris, a father. Hic panis, panis, bread. Hoc opus, operis, a work. Hoc caput, capitis, an head. Hic nubes, nubis, a cloud.

The third is when the Genitive case singular endeth in i, the Dative in i, the Accusative most commonly in em, and sometime in im, and sometime in both; the Vocative like the Nominative the Ablative in e, sometime in i, and sometime both in e and i. The Nominative case Plural in es, the Genitive sometime in um, and sometime in ium; the Dative in bus, the Accusative in es, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in bus.

Hic vel hac bubo bubonis, an Owl. Hec virtus, virtutis, virtue. Hoc animal, animalis, a living creature. Hoc cubile, cubilis, a bed. Hoc calcar, calcaris, a spur.

As

As in Example:

Singulariter	Nominativo hic lapis, a stone.	Pluraliter	Nominativo hi lapides.
	Genitivo hujus lapidis.		Genitivo horum lapidum.
	Dativo huic lapidi.		Dativo his lapidibus.
	Accusativo hunc lapidem.		Accusativo hos lapides.
	Vocativo o lapis.		Vocativo o lapides.
	Ablativo ab hoc lapide.		Ablativo ab his lapidibus.
Singulariter	N. hic & hac parens.	Pluraliter	N. hi & he parentes.
	G. hujus parentis.		G. horum & harum parentum.
	D. huic parenti.		D. his parentibus.
	A. hunc & hanc pare. sem.		A. hos & has parentes.
	V. o parens.		V. o parentes.
	Ablativo ab hac parente.		A. ab his parentibus.

A father or mother.

The third Declension is very divers, the more difficult cases. The Accusative case.

Some have their Accusative cases only in im: as, Hec vis, vim, strength, power, nature, violence: Hec ravis, ravis, ravis, ravis, hoastness: Hec tussis, tussis, tussis, tussis, the cough: Hec fides, fides, fides, fides, the faith: Hec maguderis, maguderis, maguderis, maguderis, the herb, stalk or root of Lalerpicium: Hec amulus, amulus, amulus, amulus, a Patrons or Carpenters rule, or line chalked or okered: Hec Charydis, charydis, charydis, charydis, a Gulf of the sea by Sicily, ever against Scylla. So also, the Accusative cases of certain Rivers: as, hic Tybris, tybris, tybris, tybris, a great River, which runneth through Rome, falleth into the sea, fifteen miles from it: hic Araris, araris, araris, araris, the River Sagona in France.

Some Nouns have their Accusative cases in im and em, indifferently: as, Hec buris, buris, buri, burim, & burem, the Plow tail, or handle: hic pelvis, pelvis, pelvi, pelvim, & pelvem, a Basin where in divers things are washed; also the Brain-tunnell: Hec clavis, clavis, clavi, clavem & clavim, a key: Hec securis, securis, securi, securim, & securem, an axe, or an hatchet: Hec puppis, puppis, puppi, puppim, or puppem, the tail or rattle of a ship, the stern, and sometimes the whole ship: Hic vel hec torquis, torquis, torqui, torquim, or torquem, a neck-collar or chain: Hec turris, turris, turri, turrim, or turrem, a tower: Hec vel hec restis, restis, resti, restim, or restem, an halter, cord, rope or gable, a rope of Onions, a bunch of Catlick: Hec Febri, febris, febris, febim, or febrem, a Fever or Ague: Hec navis, navis, ravi, navim, or navem, a ship, boat, barque, a vessel of the sea: Hec Bipennis, bipennis, bipenni, bipennim, or bipennem, a Two-bill: hic & hac Bipennis, & hac bipenne, bipennis, bipenni, bipennim, or bipennem, & hac bipenne, that is sharp on both edges: Hic & hac bipennis, & hac bipenne, bipennis, bipenni, bi, ennim, or bipennem, having two wings: hic Aqualis, aqualis, aquali, aqualim, or aqualem, an Otter, or other like befall for water, also water itself.

The Ablative case endeth regularly in e: as, Hoc pectus, pectore, the breast, heart, courage, mind, or stomach, the back of the hand: Hec salus, salute, a salutation, safety, remedy, health, life, the good state of ones life.

Proper Names, which are like unto Adjectives, have their Ablative

- Ablative cases in e: as, hic Felix, felicis, felices, Felix: hic Clementis, Clemente, Clemente, hic Juvenalis, juvenale, juvenal: hic Martialis, Martiale, Martiali, &c.
 But Nouns of the Neuter Gender, ending in alar, and e, have their Ablative for the most part in i: as, Vediculæ, vediculæ, vediculæ, a triduce, a yearly revenue: Calcar, calcaris, calcaris, a spur: Maris, maris, the sea.

A Demonstration of the third Declension.

SINGULARITER.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
Hoc <i>Fama, matris</i> , a Poets' work. Hoc <i>cubile, cubilis</i> , a bed.	A. E.				A. E.	
Hic <i>sermo, moris</i> , speech. Hoc & hoc <i>halee, hales</i> , an Werring.	O. C.			ens, ius	O. C.	e. i.
Hic <i>animal, malis</i> , a living creature. Hoc <i>nomen, nominis</i> , a name.	L. N.	is	i		L. N.	
Hic <i>pater, patris</i> , a father. Hic <i>lapis, lapidis</i> , a stone.	R. S.				R. S.	
Hoc <i>caput, capitis</i> , an head. Hic <i>codex, dicis</i> , a book.	T. X.				T. X.	

PLURALITER.

	Es.	iura	Es.	Es.	
	A.	iura	A.	A.	

The Ablative case Rete, being the Communitive Gender, a net, context of the Nominative case Rete: not of the Nominative case, Rete, Rete, the Neuter Gender, a net. Hic hæc & hoc par, paris, equal, convenient, sufficient, two: with his compounds, hath as well e as i: as, Par, Ablativo pare, or pari: Hic hæc & hoc compar, Ablativo compare, or compari, equal. Yet these do keep e; Hoc far, farris, farre, bread corn: Hoc hepar, hepatis, hepate, the Liver, or a fish like a Bream: Hoc jubar, jubaris, jubare, the sun beam, the day.

day star, or brightness of the fire: hoc Nectar, nectaris, nectare, a pleasant liquor, or honey: hoc Gausape, indeclinable, a frieze, or rough garment, an hairy mantle for a bed, a carpet for a table: hoc Praepe, praepis, praepis, a Steers or brother-horse, a stable or crib, a stall or sheep-house. And so also do these proper Names: hoc Soracte, soracis, soracte, a mountain twenty miles from Rome: hoc Praeneste, praenestis, praeneste the City Palestrina of Latium in Italy: hæc Reate, reatis, reate, a City of Umbria in Italy.

The Names of Feasts being only of the Plural Number, have the Genitive case sometimes in orum: as, hæc Agonalia, agonalium, Feasts in the honour of Janus, before called Agonia: hæc Vinalia, vinalium, Feasts belonging to the tastings of wine, Saint Martins Feasts. But sometimes in ium: as, hæc Floralia, floralium, Feasts in the honour of Flora, an harlot: hæc Feralia, feralium, a day dedicated to the Gods, to pacify them towards dead souls; All-Souls day. And sometimes as well in orum as in ium: as, hæc Parentalia, parentalium, or parentalium, funeral Feasts of parents, or other Ancestors: hæc Saturnalia, saturnalium, or saturnalia, Feasts kept in December, in the honour of Saturnus. But they make their Datives and Ablatives in bus: as, Saturnalibus: & hæc Bacchanalia, bacchanalium, or bacchanalium, bacchanalibus, the Feasts of Bacchus. Except, hæc Quinquatria, quatuor, quinquatriis. The Names of Months in er or is, have the Ablative in i only: as, hic September, septembris, Ablativo Septembri, the Month of September: hic Aprilis, aprilis, Ablativo Aprili, the Month of April.

Such Nouns as have the Accusative in im only, have the Ablative in i: as, Hic scis, scis, scim, Ablativo scio, sciri: Hic vultus, vultus, vultum, Ablativo vultu, a tough.

Adjectives, having the Nominative in is or er, and the Neuter in e, do make the Ablative in i only: as, Hic & hæc fortis, & hoc forte, fortis, Ablativo forti, strong: Hic & hæc mollis, & hoc molle, mollis, Ablativo molli, soft: Hic & hæc dulcis, & hoc dulce, dulcis, Ablativo dulci, sweet. So, Hic acer, hæc acris, & hoc acre, acris, Ablativo acri, sharp. Though Poets do sometimes for better sake, use e for i.

Other Adjectives do make the Ablative as well in e, as in i: as, Hic hæc & hoc capax, capax, Ablativo capace, or capaci, capable, apt to receive: Hic hæc & hoc duplex, duplicis, Ablativo duplici, or duplici, double. Except, Hic & hæc pauper, pauperis, Ablativo paupere, poor: Hic & hæc degener, degeneris, Ablativo degeneri, degenerate, unmoile: Hic & hæc uber, uberis, Ablativo ubere, plentiful: Hic & hæc sospes, sospitis, Ablativo sospite, whole: Hic & hæc hospes, hospitis, Ablativo hospite, an host, hostis, or guest. For these do make the Ablative case in e only.

Also, Nouns of the Comparative Degree, do make their Ablative case two ways: as, Hic & hæc melior, & hoc melius, melioris, Ablativo meliore, or meliori, better: Hic & hæc doctior, & hoc doctus, doctioris, Ablativo doctiore, or doctiori, more learned. So likewise, certain Substantives: as, Hic ignis, ignis, Ablativo igne, or igni,

The Names of Feasts.

The Names of Months.

Note

igni, fire: Hic vel hæc annis, annis, Abl. annæ of anni, a rider: Hic vel hæc anguis, anguis, Abl. angue, of angui, a dyer of water snake: hæc supellex, supellectilis, Abl. supellectile, of supellectili, household stuff: Hic unguis, unguis, Abl. ungue, of ungui, a nail or hoof: Hic veditis, veditis, Abl. veditæ, of vediti, a dog-bar. But Hic & hæc civis, civis, both more seldom make in the Ablative case, give of civi, a Citizen: hic Arpinas, Arpinatis, both also seldom make in the Ablative case, Arpinatæ, of Arpinati; one of Arpinum in Italy. And so likewise of other Nouns Genitives. To conclude, after the same manner as those Nouns form their Ablative cases, whose Accusative case ends in em and im: as, Hæc puppis, puppis, Abl. puppæ, of puppi the stern of a ship: Hæc navis, navis, Abl. navæ, of navi, a ship. And likewise Marshall Nouns in trix: as, Hæc victrix, victrix, Abl. viciæ, of viciæ, she that overcometh: Hæc alitrix, alitrix, Abl. alitricis, of alitricis, she that nourisheth.

Nouns of the Neuter Gender, whose Ablative Singular ends in i only, or in e and i, have their Dominative Plural in ia: as, Hic & hæc mollis, & hoc molle, mollis, Abl. molli of molle, Nominative Plur. mollia soft: Hic hæc & hoc duplex, duplicis, Abl. duplicæ, of duplici, Plur. Nom. duplicia, double. Except Ubera, in the Dominative Plural, of hoc uber, uberis, Abl. uberi, a breast: Plur. of pluria, of hoc plus, plus, Abl. pluri more: Aplustra, of aplustre, aplustre, Abl. aplustri, flags or banners in the top of the mast of a ship. And Nouns of the Comparative degree: as, Meliora, of hic & hæc melior, & hoc melius, melioris, Abl. meliore, of meliori, better: Fortiora, of hic & hæc fortior, & hoc fortius, fortioris, Abl. fortiore, of fortiori, stronger: Doctiora, of hic & hæc doctior, & hoc doctius, doctioris, Abl. doctiore, of doctiori, learned: and Priora, of hic & hæc prior, & hoc prius, prioris, Abl. priore, of priori, former.

Of Abiatives in i only, or in e and i: the Genitives Plural are in ium: as, Hic & hæc utilis, & hoc utile, utilis, Abl. utili, Plural Genitivo utillum, profitable: Hæc puppis, puppis, Abl. puppæ, of puppi, plural. Gen. puppium, the Stern of a ship, of a ship. Except the Comparatives: as, Hic & hæc major, & hoc majus, majoris, Abl. majore, of majori, plural. Gen. majorum, greater: Hic & hæc melior, & hoc melius, melioris, Abl. meliore, of meliori, Plural. Gen. meliorum, better. Except these also, Hic hæc & hoc supplex, supplicis, Abl. supplici, Plur. Gen. supplicum, humbly intreating: Hic hæc & hoc complex, complicitis, Abl. complici, Plur. Gen. complicum, partner: Hoc strigil, of hæc strigilis, strigilis, Abl. strigili, Plur. Gen. strigilum, a curly-comb: Hic artifex, artificis, Abl. artifice, of artifice, Plur. Gen. artificum, an Artificer: Hic & hæc vigil, vigilis, Abl. vigili, Plur. Gen. vigillum, a watch-man or woman: Hic hæc & hoc vetus, veteris, Abl. veteri, Plur. Gen. veterum, old: Hic hæc & hoc memor, memoris, Abl. memori, Plur. Gen. memorum, mindfull: Hic & hæc pugil, pugilis, Abl. pugili, Plur. Gen. pugilum, a man or woman champion: Hic hæc & hoc inops, inopis, Abl. inope, of inopi, Plur. Gen. inopum, needy. But, Hoc pius, pius, Abl. pluri Plur. Gen. plurium, more.

Some also do sometimes admit a syncope: as, Hic hæc & hoc sapiens, sapientis, Plur. Gen. sapientum, for sapientium, wise: Hic vel hæc ferpens, serpentis Plur. Gen. serpentum, for serpentium, a serpent.

When the Dominative cases Singular do end with two Consonants, the Genitives Plural do end in ium: as, Hæc pars, partis, Plur.

The Genitive Plural.

Plur. Gen. partium, part: Hæc urbs, urbis, Plur. Gen. urbium, a City: Hæc falx, falcis, Plur. Gen. falcium, an hook, or sickle: Hæc glans, glandis, Plur. Gen. glandium, an acorn, plummet or pellet: Hæc trabis, trabis, Plur. Gen. trabium, a beam, or great piece of timber: Hæc merx, mercis, Plur. Gen. mercium, merchandise. Except thist, hæc Hyems, hyemis, Plur. Gen. hyemum, Winter: hic & hæc Princeps, principis, Plur. Gen. principum, a Prince: Hic hæc & hæc particeps, participis, Plur. Gen. participum, a partaker: hic & hæc Municeps, municipis, Plur. Gen. municipum, a Citizen, freeman, free Denizen, or Burgesse: hic vel hæc forcipis, forcipis, Plur. Gen. forcipum, a pair of Tongs or Pincers: Hic hæc & hoc inops, inopis, Plur. Gen. inopum, poor: Hic & hæc coelebs, coelibis, Plur. Gen. coelibum, a single person, unmarried: Hic & hæc cliens, clientis, Plur. Gen. clientum, a retainer, or client.

When as there are in the Dominative and Genitive cases Singular, like syllables, the Genitive Plural ends in ium: as, Hic collis, collis, Plur. Gen. collium, an hillock: Hic mensis, mensis, Plur. Gen. mensium, a Month: Hæc auris, auris, Plur. Gen. aurium, an ear. Add unto these, Hæc lis, lis, Plur. Gen. litium, strife: Hic & hæc dis, dis, Plur. Gen. dirum, rich: Hæc vis, vis, vim, vi, Plur. Nomin. vires, Gen. virium, strength: Hæc vitis, vitis, Plur. Gen. vitium, a Vine: hic Sal, salis, Plur. Gen. salium, Salt: Hi manes, manium, Debilis: Hi penates, penatium, household gods. Except yet, Hic & hæc canis, canis, Plur. Gen. canum, a dog: Hic panis, panis, Plur. Gen. panum, bread, or a loaf: hic & hæc Vates, vatis, Plur. Gen. vatium, a Prophet: hic & hæc juvenis, juvenis, Plur. Gen. juvenum, a young man: Hujus opis, hanc opem, ope, Plur. Gen. opum, ayds, riches: hæc Apes, vel apis, apis, epicen, Plur. Gen. apum, a Bee.

Hic as, asis, hath in the Genitive Plural, asium, a pound of twelve ounces, in weight: in money, the least piece of coin: in the division of solid things, as land, it is taken for the whole: Hic mæmaris, Plur. Gen. marium, a man: Hic vas, vasis, Plur. Gen. vadium, a surety in a matter of death: Hæc nox, noctis, Plur. Gen. noctium, night, sleep, darkness: Hæc nix, nivis, Plur. Gen. nivium, snow: Hæc ossis, Plur. Gen. ossium, a bone: Hæc faux, faucis, Plur. Gen. faucium, the cheek, jaw, or gullet: hic Mus, muris, Plur. Gen. murium, a Mouse: Hæc caro, carnis, Plur. Gen. carnum, flesh: Hoc cor, cordis, Plur. Gen. cordium, an heart: Hic hæc & hoc ales, alis, Plur. Gen. alitum, wings: of Hic & hæc ales, alis, Plur. Gen. alitum, (for it taketh into it, u) any great or winged fowl: hic & hæc Bos, bovis, Plur. Gen. boum, Dat. & Abl. bobus, of bubus, (for, in all these cases, it is irregular) an Ox, Cow, or Steer.

Nouns ending in ium, in the Genitive cases Plural, do form the Accusative in es, and in the Diphthong eis: as, Hæc pars, partis, Plura. Genit. partium, Accusativo partes, of parteis, part: Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc omne, omnis, Plur. Gen. omnium, Accusativo omnes, of omneis, all.

Greek Nouns for the most part, being varied after that language, have the Genitive case in os: as, hic Titan, Titanos, Genit. to Cælum and Vesta, and is of Poets used for the Sun: hic Pan, Panos, the god of Shepherds: hic Daphnis, Daphnidos, Mercury's son; also a Castle in Lycia. and the Suburbs of Antiochia: hæc Phylis, Phyllidos, daughter to King Lycurgus; also, in the Dialect.

The Accusative Plural.

The declining of Greek Nouns.

line Gender, a River in Bithynia: and the Dative in *i*, *Thoti*: as *Titani*, *Pani*, *Daphnidi*, *Phyllidi*. But the Accusative in *a*, unless they be of the Neuter Gender, not ending in *a*: as, *hic Pan*, *Panos*, Accusative *Pana*: *hec*, or signifying a River, *hic Phyllis*, *Phyllidos*, Accusative *Phyllida*: *hec* *Amaryllis*, *Amaryllidos*, Accusative *Amaryllida*: a country twenches name, mentioned often by Theocritus and Virgil: *hic Orpheus*, *Orpheos*, Accusative *Orpheas*, an ancient Poet, son of Apollo and Calliope.

Notwithstanding, *is* and *ys*, being declined in the Genitive case with pure *os*, do make the Accusative, by changing the *o* of the Nominative, into *n*: as, *hec Tethys*, Gen. *Tethyos*, Accusative *Tethyn*, goddess of the sea, wife to Neptune, sister to Saturn, and mother to all the Sea Nymphs: *hec Decapolis*, Gen. *Decapolis*, Accusative *Decapolin*, a country of Syria next Judea, so called of ten Cities therein contained: *hec Genetis*, Gen. *Genetios*, Accusative *Genetion*, generation, nativity, the Planet under which one is born: *hec Metamorphosis*, Gen. *Metamorphosis*, Accusative *Metamorphosin*, a transformation, or change of one shape into another.

There are, which have a double Genitive case, one in *us*, and pure, another in pure *os*. And these, according to the manner of their Genitives, do form also a double Accusative case; the one in *n*, and the other in *a*: as, *hic Paris*, Gen. *Paridos*, & *Parios*, Accusative *Parida*, & *Parin*, son to Priamus and Hecuba: *hec Themis*, Gen. *Themidos*, & *Themios*, Accusative *Themida*, & *Themion*, goddess of Justice, Jupiter's sister, on whom he begat Minerva.

Nouns of the Feminine Gender, in *o*, do make the Genitive in *us*, and the Accusative in *o*: as, *hec Sappho*, Gen. *Sapphus*, Accusative *Sappho*, a famous Poetess of Lesbos: *hec Manto*, Gen. *Mamdo*, Accusative *Mantdo*, daughter to Tiresias the Theban soothsayer: *hec Clido*, Gen. *Clidis*, Accusative *Clido*, one of the nine Muses.

The Vocative case is for the most part like the Nominative; yet notwithstanding, in some Nouns the *s* is cast away from the Nominative: as, *hic Pallas*, Gen. *Palanti*, Vocative *o Palla*, son to Evander and Pandion: *hec Theseus*, Gen. *Theseos*, Vocative *o Theseu*, son to King Aegeus, and Athra: *hec Tethys*, Gen. *Tethyos*, Vocative *o Tethy*, goddess of the sea: *hec Phyllis*, Gen. *Phyllidos*, Vocative *o Phylli*, daughter to King Lycurgus: *hec Alexis*, Gen. *Alexios*, Vocative *o Alexi*, Pollion's servant, whom Virgil loved; also, a comical Poet: *hic Achilles*, Gen. *Achilleos*, Vocative *o Achilli*, son to Peleus and Thetis.

Nouns of the Neuter Gender, and Singular Number, in *a*, are Greek Nouns: as, *hec Problema*, *problematis*, a demand: *hec Poema*, *poematis*, a Poem, or Poets work: which the Ancients did also decline after the Latin form, adding therewith the syllable *um*: as, *hec Problematum*, *problematis*: *hec Poematum*, *poematis*: whose Datives and Ablatives Plural, are yet in more use: as, *Problematis*, *Poematis*.

The fourth Declension.

The fourth Declension.

The fourth is, when the Genitive case Singular endeth in *us*, the Dative in *ibus*, the Accusative in *um*, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in *u*: The Nominative Plural

in *us*, the Genitive in *um*, the Dative in *ibus*, the Accusative in *us*, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in *ibus*.

As in Example:

Singular	N. <i>hec manus</i> , an hand.	Plural	N. <i>hec manus</i> .	Hic gradus, <i>us</i> , a step. Hec porticus, <i>us</i> , a porch or walking place. Hec cornu, <i>an</i> horn. Hec genu, <i>a</i> knee. Hic concubitus, <i>us</i> , copulation. Hic vestitus, <i>us</i> , apparel.
	G. <i>hujus manus</i> .		G. <i>hujus manusum</i> .	
	D. <i>huius manus</i> .		D. <i>huius manusibus</i> .	
	A. <i>hanc manusum</i> .		A. <i>hanc manus</i> .	
	Voc. <i>o manus</i> .		Voc. <i>o manus</i> .	
	Abl. <i>ab hac manu</i> .		Abl. <i>ab his manusibus</i> .	

In the fourth Declension, there is almost no difficulty. For, in the Nominative case Singular, it hath only two terminations, that is, *us* & *u*: as, *manus*, *genu*. The Antients, from the Nominatives, *hec anus*, an old woman, or wife: *hec tumultus*, a tumult or stir: *hec ornatus*, apparel, trimming: have used in the Genitive case, *anuis*, *tumultus*, *ornatus*. Terent. *Ejus anuis causa*, for his old wife's sake. Idem. *Nihil ornati*, no decking. *Nihil tumultus*, no stir.

The Dative case hath *ibus*, and sometimes also *u*: as, *Hic fructus*, *Dativo fructibus*, fruit: *Hic concubitus*, *Dativo concubitiibus*, copulation: seldom *fructu*, *concubitu*. Virgil: *Quod neque concubitu indulget*: that, they do neither give themselves to copulation. Terent. *Vestitu nimio indulget*: thou givest thy self too much to apparel, or trimming. But *currum*, for *curram*, in the Genitive case Plural, of *hic currus*, *currus*, a cart, wagon, ship, or triumph; is a Syncretism, as is usual in other Declensions also.

Iesus hath in the Accusative case, *hunc Iesum*; but in all the other cases, *Iesu*, *Iesus*.

These do form the Dative and Ablative cases Plural in *ibus*: as, *hec acus*, *acus*, Plu. Abl. *acubus*, a needle: *hec lacus*, *lacus*, Plu. Abl. *lacubus*, a lake, or pool: *hec artus*, *artus*, *artubus*, in the Ablative Plural, the joints: *hec arcus*, *arcus*, Plu. Abl. *arcubus*, a long Bow, an arch: *hec tribus*, *tribus*, Plu. Abl. *tribubus*, a tribe or kindred: *hec ficus*, *ficus*, Plu. Abl. *ficubus*, a fig: *hec vel* *hec specus*, *specus*, Plu. Abl. *specubus*, a Den to await a prey: *hec quercus*, *quercus*, Plu. Abl. *quercubus*, an Oak: *hec parvus*, *parvus*, Plu. Abl. *parvubus*, a birth of a child, a child, or brood: *hec portus*, *portus*, Plu. Abl. *portubus*, a Port or Haven: *Hoc verum*, undeclined in the Singular Number; in the Plural, *hec vera*, *verum*, Abl. *verubus*, a Spitt of Dart. All other Nouns end in *ibus*: as, *Hic fructus*, *fructus*, Plu. Abl. *fructibus*, fruit: *Hic fetus*, *fetus*, Plu. Abl. *fecubus*, children, or young ones of any thing: *hec manus*, *manus*, Plu. Abl. *manibus*, an hand: *Hic motus*, *motus*, Plu. Abl. *motibus*, a moving, gesture, a stir, a motion, or cause: and so in the Dative.

A Type of the fourth Declension.

SINGULARITER.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
<i>Hic fructus, fructus, fructe.</i>	us	us	ui	um	us	"

<i>Hoc cornu, indeclinabile, an horn.</i>	"	"	"	"	"	"
---	---	---	---	---	---	---

PLURALITER.

<i>Hec cornua, horns.</i>	us	um	ibus	ae	ia	ibus
	a	um	ibus	a	a	ibus

The fifth Declension.

The fifth Declension.

The fifth is, when the Genitive and Dative case Singular endeth in ei, the Accusative in em, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in e: The Nominative case Plural in es, the Genitive in eum, the Dative in ebus, the Accusative in es, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in ebus.

As in Example:

Singulariter	N. hic merides, G. huius meridiei, D. huic meridiei, A. hunc meridiem, Voc. o merides, A. ab hoc mer. die.	Pluraliter	N. hi merides, G. horum meridierum, D. his meridebus, A. hos merides, Voc. o merides, A. ab his meridebus.	Hec res, rei, a thing. Hec facies, faciei, a face. Hec acies, aciei, an edge, the array of an army, the sight of the eye. Hec fides, fidei, faith. Hic vel hac dies, ei, plural, hi dies, dierum.
--------------	---	------------	---	---

Note, that all Nouns of the fifth Declension, are of the Feminine Gender, except merides, and dies, a day.

The fifth Declension hath seldom the Genitive, Dative and Ablative cases Plural; as afterwards it shall be shewed more at large in the Heteroclites.

The Genitive case Singular of this Declension, did in times past end also in es, ii, and e: Cicero: Equites verò dauros illius dies penas: But the horsemen, to give the punishments of that day. Virgil: Munera laetitiaque dii: The gifts and joy of the day. Sallust:

Just: Vix decima parte die reliqua: Scarce the tenth part of the day being left.

In times past also, certain Nouns of the third Declension, were declined after this Declension: as, Hec plebes, plebei, the common people.

But besides these things now spoken, thou shalt note also still, gently, those Nouns which the Grammarians do call Heteroclites. These thou must learn, partly by the others reading of approved Authors, and partly by the Rules following.

An Example of the fifth Declension.

SINGULARITER.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.	
es	ei	ei	em	es	e	Hec facies, faciei, a face.

PLURALITER.

es	eum	ebus	es	es	ebus.	
----	-----	------	----	----	-------	--

The DECLINING of Adjectives.

A Noun Adjective of three terminations, is thus Declined: The declining of Adjectives.

Singulariter	N. bonus, bona, bonum. G. boni, bonae, boni, good. D. bono, bonae, bona. A. bonum, bonam, bonum. V. bone, bona, bonum. A. bono, bona, bona.	Pluraliter	N. boni, bonae, bona. G. bonorum, bonarum, bonorum. D. bonis. A. bonos, bonas, bona. V. boni, bonae, bona. A. bonis.	Niger, nigra, nigrum, black. Tardus, tarda, tardum, slow. Satur, saturi, saturum, full fed. Doctus, docti, doctum, taught. Inermis, aequi, unarmed. Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.
--------------	--	------------	---	--

There are besides these, certain Nouns Adjectives, of another manner of declining; which make the Genitive case Singular in ius, and the Dative in i: which be these that follow, with their compounds.

An Exception.

Singulariter	Nominativo unus, una, unum. Genitivo unius, ONE. Dativo uni. Accusativo unum, unam, unum. Vocativo une, una, unum. Ablativo uno, una, uno.	Pluraliter	Nominativo uni, una, una. Genitivo unorum, unarum, unorum. Dativo uni. Accusativo unos, unas, una. Vocativo uni, una, una. Ablativo uni.
--------------	---	------------	---

Note, that Unus, una, unum, hath not the Plural Number, but when it is joined with a word that lacketh the Singular Number.

Adjectives lacking the Vocative case.

Number: *as*, *Una* *libra*, one letter: *Una* *monia*, one wall.
In like manner be declined, *Totus*, the whole; *Solus*, alone; and
also, *Ullus*, any: *Alius*, another: *Alter*, one of the two: *Uter*, either
of the two: and *Neuter*, neither of the two: saving that *Uter*
the last rehearsed, lack the Vocative case.

A Noun Adjective of three Articles, is thus declined:

Hic *hac* & *hoc* *ingeni*,
ingeni, *ingeni*,
mighty.

Hic *hac* & *hoc* *sa-*
lentis, *solentis*, *solentis*,
witty.

Hic *hac* & *hoc* *cap-*
ax, *capax*, *capax*,
capable.

Hic *hac* & *hoc* *ve-*
teris, *vetus*, *vetus*,
old.

Hic & *hac* *levis*,
& *hac* *levis*, *levis*,
light. *Hic* *celer*,
hac *celeris*, & *hac* *celeris*, *celeris*,
swift. *Hic* & *hac* *melior*, & *hac* *melior*, *melioris*,
better.

Singulariter
N. *hic* *hac* & *hoc* *salix*.
G. *hujus* *salicis*, happy.
D. *huic* *salici*.
A. *hunc* & *hanc* *salicem*, & *hoc*
Voc. *o* *salix*.
A. *ab* *hoc* *hac* & *hoc* *salice*, & *o*

Pluraliter
N. *hi* et *he* *salices*, et *hac* *salix*.
G. *horum*, *hanc* & *hanc* *salicem*.
D. *his* *salicibus*.
A. *hos* & *has* *salices*, & *hac* &
Voc. *o* *salices*, & *o* *salicis*.
A. *ab* *his* *salicibus*.

Singulariter
N. *hic* & *hac* *tristis*, et *hoc* *triste*.
G. *huius* *tristis*, sad.
D. *huic* *triste*.
A. *hunc* & *hanc* *tristem*, & *hoc*
Voc. *o* *tristis*, & *o* *triste*.
A. *ab* *hoc* *hac* & *hoc* *tristi*.

Pluraliter
N. *hi* et *he* *tristes*, & *hac* *tristis*.
G. *horum*, *hanc* & *hanc* *tristem*.
D. *his* *tristibus*.
A. *hos* & *has* *tristes*, & *hac* &
Voc. *o* *tristes*, & *o* *tristis*.
A. *ab* *his* *tristibus*.

A Type of the declining of Nouns Adjectives of three terminations.

SINGULARITER.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
<i>Doctus</i> , <i>doctus</i> , <i>doctus</i> , learn-	<i>ui</i> , <i>er</i> ,	<i>i</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>e</i> <i>er</i>	<i>o</i>
<i>ed</i> , <i>Tower</i> , <i>temera</i> , <i>temerum</i> ,	<i>a</i> .	<i>e</i> .	<i>a</i> .	<i>um</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>o</i>
<i>tender</i> .	<i>temer</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>temere</i>	<i>o</i>

PLURALITER.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Voc.	Ablat.
	<i>i</i>	<i>orum</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>os</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>
	<i>a</i>	<i>orum</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>is</i>
	<i>a</i>	<i>orum</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>is</i>

A Type of the declining of Noun Adjectives of three Articles.

SINGULARITER.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
<i>Hic</i> & <i>hac</i> <i>dulcis</i> , & <i>hoc</i> <i>dul-</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>i</i>
<i>ce</i> , <i>dulcis</i> , sweet.	<i>e</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>i</i>

* 1. 2.

<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>ac</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>is</i> <i>hac</i> & <i>hoc</i> <i>felix</i> , <i>felicit</i> , <i>happy</i> .
<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>is</i> <i>hac</i> & <i>hoc</i> <i>prudens</i> , <i>pru-</i> <i>dentis</i> , <i>wise</i> .
PLURALITER.						
<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	
SINGULARITER.						
<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i> & <i>hac</i> <i>doctus</i> , & <i>hoc</i> <i>do-</i> <i>ctus</i> , <i>doctus</i> , more learned.
PLURALITER.						
<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	
<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	

OF Nouns HETEROCLITES: ROB. ROBINSON.

HETEROCLITES are such Nouns, as do after a new or
der, vary their Gender or Declension, or are defective or
abounding.

What Hetero-
clites are.

Nouns varying the Gender.

These Nouns do vary, partly the Gender, and partly the De-
clining; being the Feminine Gender in the Singular
Number, and the Neuter in the Plural: as, Singulariter *Nomi-*
nativo *hac* *Pergamus*, *Pergami*; Pluraliter *Nominativo* *hac* *Pergama*, *Per-*
gamorum, a City of the Trojans, otherwise called, *Ilium*, or *Ilion*.
So, *Hec* *supellex*, *supellex*, and in the Plural Number, *hac*
supellectilia, *supellectilia*, household-stuff: unless it want the Plu-
ral Number.

These are in the Singular Number, the Neuter Gender, and
in the Plural, the Masculine and Neuter both: as, *Hoc* *rastrum*,
rastrum, *Plu* *hi* *rastra* & *hac* *rastra*, *rastrorum*, a Rake: *Hoc* *fratrum*, *fra-*
tri, *Plu* *hi* *fratres*, & *hac* *fratres*, *fratrum*, a Siddle: *Hoc* *filium*, *fil-*
ii, *Plu* *hi* *filii*, & *hac* *filii*, *filiorum*, a thyeb: *Hoc* *capistrum*, *capistri*, *Plu* *hi*
capistria, & *hac* *capistra*, *capistrorum*, an halter: *Hoc* *Argos*, *Argos*,
Plu *hi* *Argi*, *Argorum*, a famous City of Peloponnesus, the half
Isle of Greece, also a Town of Apulia, another of Thessaly, and an-
other of Acarnania; also the name of Ulysses dog: *Hoc* *coelum*, *celi*,
Plu *hi* *coeli*, *coelorum*, Heaven: which two last, are only the Ma-
sculine Gender in the Plural Number. These following, are
the Neuter Gender in the Singular Number, and the Feminine
in

Feminines in the
Singular Number,
and Neuters in
the Plural, are
Pergamus, & *su-*
pellex: Except
supellex want the
Plural.

Neutrals, in the
Singular Number,
and Masculine
and Neuter both,
in the Plural, are
these: *Rastrum*,
fratrum, *filium*, *ca-*
pistrum, *Argos*, &
coelum; which two
last are Masculine
only in the Plu-
ral Number.

Also *Nundinum*, epulum & balneum, which three are Feminine in the Plurall Number: saving that *Juvenal* hath in the Plurall Number, *balnea*, in the Neuter Gender. Masculines, in the Singular Number, and Neutrals in the Plurall, are these: *Mendus*, *Dyndimus*, *Ismarus*, *Tartarus*, *Taygetus*, *Tanarus*, *Maficius*, & *Gargarus*. But *Sibyllus*, *Jocus*, *locus*, *Campanus*, & *Avernus* are both Masculine and Neuter in the Plurall Number.

Nouns Aptotes are such, as alter not from the Nominative case: as, *Fissul*, *nihil*, *infus*: and many ending in *u*, and in *i* as, *Cornu*, *genu*, *gummi*, *frugi*: so also, *Tempe*, *tot*, *quot*: and all Nouns of Number, from three to an hundred.

Nouns Monoptotes are they, which are found in someone oblique case onely; as, *Noctu*, *natu*, *justu*, *injustu*, *astu*; and in the Accusative, *Plu. astu*, *pramptu*, *permittu*, & *inficiu*.

In the Plurall: as, hoc *Nandinum*, *nundini*, *Plu. hz nundinz*, *nundinarum*, a Fair of Market: hoc *Epulum*, *epuli*, *Plu. hz epulz*, *epularum*, a Feast: hoc *Balneum*, *balnei*, *Plu. hz balnez*, *balnearum*, and with the Poet *Juvenal*, *haz Balnea*, *balnearum*, a Bath.

These Nouns following, are the Plurall Gen. in the Singular Number, and the Neuter in the Plurall: as, hic *Menalus*, *Menali*, *Plu. hz Menala*; *Manalorum*, a mountain in Arcadia: hic *Dyndimus*, *Dyndimi*, *Plu. hz Dyndima*, *Dyndimorum*, a top of Ida; the hill by Troy: hic *Ismarus*, *Ismari*, *Plu. hz Ismara*, *Ismarorum*, a mountain in Thracia: hic *Tartarus*, *tartari*, *Plu. hz tartara*, *tartarorum*, a deep place in Hell: hic *Taygetus*, *Taygeti*, *Plu. hz Taygeta*, *Taygetorum*, an high steep hill in Lacædemonia, where Sparta and Amicle, the Cities, do stand: hic *Tanarus*, *Taneri*, *Plu. hz Tanera*, *Tanerorum*, a Damontory of Laconia, where was supposed to be an entry into Hell: hic *Maficius*, *Mafici*, *Plu. hz Mafica*, *Maficorum*, an hill in the part of Italy, called Campania: hic *Gargarus*, *Gargari*, *Plu. hz Gargara*, *Gargarorum*, a very high top of the hill Ida, also a town at the foot of the same hill; also a Lake, out of the which cometh mander and Simois do issue. But these are both Masculine and Neuter, in the Plurall Number: as, hic *Sibyllus*, *sibylli*, *Plu. hi sibili*, & *haz sibila*, *sibillorum*, an hissing: Hic *Jocus*, *joci*, *Plu. hi joci*, & *haz joca*, *jocorum*, a merry scoff, or sport: Hic *locus*, *loci*, *Plu. hi loci*, & *haz loca*, *locorum*, a place: *Campanus*, *Campana*, *Campanum*, *Campani*, & *mi*, *Plu. Campani*, *Campanæ*, *Campana*, *Campanorum*, anurum, of Campania in Italy: hic *Avernus*, *Averni*, *Plu. hi Avernî*, & *haz Avernæ*, *Avernorum*, a Lake in Campania, where hence they thought was a descent into Hell.

Nouns Defectives.

These following, are either maimed in Number, or in Case.

Nouns APTOTES.

Nouns Aptotes are such as have no Case: as, *Hoc fas*, right lawfull: *godly*: *Hoc nil*, & *hoc nihil* nothing: *Hoc inftar* like. Many such Nouns also there be, ending in *u*, and in *i*: as, *Hoc cornu*, an horn: *Hoc genu*, a knee: *hoc Gummi*, Gum: *Hic hz* & *hoc frugi*, thistly, profitable: likewise, *hoc Tempe* a fair field in Thessalia, a place of delight; there is also *Tempe* in Boeotia, and another in Sicily: *Hi hz*, & *haz tot*, so many: *Hi hz* & *haz quot*, how many: and lastly, all Nouns of Number, from three to an hundred.

Nouns MONOPTOTES.

A Noun Monoptote, is a Noun of some one Case onely, it not being the Nominative: as, *Noctu*, by night: *natu*, by birth: *Injustu* by commandment: *Injustu*, without bidding: *Astu* by doct: *Promptu*, with speed, by readinesse: *Permittu*, by inference: all which are Ablatives: but *astu*, hath in the Accusative also Plurall, *astus*: and also in the same Case and Number, we read *Inficiu*, a denfall.

Nouns DIPTOTES.

A Noun Diptote, is a Noun of two Cases onely: as, *Nominativo hz* *foris*, Ablativo *ab hac forte*, *haz*; Genitivo *spontis*, Ablativo *hac sponte*, of his own accord: *Nom. hoc plus*, Gen. *pluris*, more: *Plu. harum*, *repetundarum*, *ab his repetundis*, of hisbery: Gen. *jugeri*, *ab hoc jugere*, of an acre of ground: *Hujus verberis*, *ab hoc verberis*, of a rod or stripe: *Plu. Nom. hz suppetias*, Accul. *suppetias*, aids: *Nom. hoc tantundem*, *hujus tantidem*, as much: Gen. *impetis*, *ab hac impete*, of violence: Accul. *hanc vicem*, Abl. *vice*, by turn: neither do I read more. But, *verberis*, *vicem*, *plus*, & *jugeri*, have all the Cases in the Plurall Number.

pete, *vicem*, *vice*, and no more: but, *verberis*, *vicem*, *plus*, & *jugeri*, are whole in the Plurall Number.

Nouns TRIPTOTES.

A Noun Triptote, is a Noun of three Cases onely: as, Genitivo *precis*, *hanc precem*, Ablativo *ab hac prece*, of prayer: Gen. *opis*, *hanc opem*, *ab hac ope*, of aid: But, Gen. *frugis*, of fruit, corn or pulse; and, Gen. *ditionis*, of right or title, do want onely the Nominative case. *Hec vis*, *vis*, wanteth no Case, except it be the Dative. But all these have all the Cases in the Plurall Number.

In the Nominative: and *vis*, onely the Dative: and are all perfect in the Plurall Number.

Relatives; as, *Qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, *vel quid*, *cujus*, which. Interrogatives; as, *Equis*, *ecquæ*, *ecquod*, *ecqujus*, *who*, *whether* any. Distributives; as, *Nullus*, *nulla*, *nullum*, *nullius*, *none*. Neuter; *neutra*, *neutrum*, *neutrius*, *neither* of two: *Hic* & *hæc omnis*, & *hoc omne*, *omnis*, *all*, *every* one. Nouns Infinites; as, *Quilibet*, *quælibet*, *quodlibet*, *cujuslibet*, *every* one, or *whosoever* you will: *Alter*, *altera*, *alterum*, *alterius*, *another*, the other of the two; do commonly want the Vocative case: and likewise, all the Pronouns, except *Noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*, *nostrî*, & *i*, *ours*: *Hic* & *hæc nostras*, & *hoc nostrate*, *nostratis*, of our country, *sect*, of faction: *Meus*, *mea*, *meum*, *mei*, & *i*, *mine*: and, *Tu*, *tui*, *tibi*, *thou*.

All proper Names do want the Plurall Number: as, *hic Mars*, *Martis*, the heathenish god of battell: *hic Cato*, *Catonis*, the name of a wise man in Rome: *hæc Gallia*, *Galliæ*, France: *hæc Roma*, *Romæ*, Rome: *hæc Ida*, *Idæ*, an hill by Troy, the daughter of *Da danus* King of Syria; and another high hill in Crete, surrounded with many Cities: *hæc Tagus*, *Tagi*, a river in Portugal, or Spain, parting Castile from Portugal: *hic Lelaps*, *Læapsi*, the name of one of Aæons Dogs: *hic Parnassus*, *Parnassi*, an hill in Phocis: *hic Bucephalus*, *Bucephali*, an horse of Alexander the great: and also, the names of *Virad* corn: of *Towre*, or *Woolle*, or *Darn*: of *herbs*: of most things: and of *Metals* wherein the opinion of Authors is to be observed. For, sometimes they use them in the Plurall Number, and sometimes not.

Towre, or *Woolle*: thirdly, of *Herbs*: fourthly, of most things: and fifthly, of *Metals*.

Nouns

found onely in the Nom. Accus. and Voc. Cases, in the Plu. Num. *Hordeum, far, forum, mel, mulsum, defrutum, & thus.*

These Masculines have scarcely the Plu. Num. as, *Hesperus, vesper, pontus, lychnis, semus, penus, & thus.*

These Neuteres have scarcely the Plu. Num. as, *Puer, salus, talio, indoles, tristis, pice, humus, lues, sitis, fagus, quies, cholera, fames, bilis, senectus, juvenus:* but, *sol, solus, & labels,* with all Nouns of the fifth Declension have the three like Cases Plurall: except, *res, species, factis, dies, & dies;* which are whole in the Plu. Num. b. Adde hereunto, many other Feminines, often wanting the Plu. Num. as, *Stultitia, invidia, sapientia, defidia,* and the like.

These Neuters do want the Pl. Num. as, *Delicium, senium, luthum, cæmon, salum, barathrum, virus, vitium, visum, rænum, iustum, nihilum, ver, lac, glutin, hæc, gelu, solium, jubar;* and many the like.

These Masculines do want the Sing. Num. as, *Manes, canis, cancelli,*

A NOUN.

Nouns of the Neuter Gender, and Singular Number, wanting certain Cases Plurall.

Hoc hordeum, hordei, *Barly:* Hoc far, farris, *Bread corn:* hoc Forum, fori, a *Market:* hoc Mel, mellis, *Hony:* hoc Mulsum, mulsi, *Wine mingled with Hony:* hoc Defrutum, defruti, *Wine boyled to the half:* hoc Thus, thuris, *Frankincense.* or the tree: have onely the three like Cases in the Plurall Number: as, *Hæc hordeæ, farra, fora, mella, mulsa, defruta, and thura.*

These Nouns of the Masculine Gender, do scarcely admit the Plurall Number: as, *hic Hesperus, hesperi, the evening Star;* *hic Vesper, vesperi, the evening;* or *evening Star:* *Hic pontus, ponti, the sea:* *Hic limus, limi, mud, or slime:* *Hic simus, simi, dung:* *Hic penus, peni, all manner of victuals, meat and drink:* *Hic sanguis, sanguinis, blood:* *hic Æther, ætheris, the Element of Fire, and whatsoever is above it, the sky or firmament, the light:* and, *Hic & hæc nemo, neminis, no body.*

These Nouns of the Feminine Gender, do scarcely admit the Plurall Number: as, *Hæc pubes, pubis, ripeness of age:* *Hæc salus, salutis, health:* *Hæc talio, talionis, like for like:* *Hæc indoles, indolis, towardeesse:* *Hæc cussis, cussis, the cough:* *Hæc pice, piceis, pitch:* *Hæc humus, humi, the ground:* *Hæc lues, luis, a common disease, or murrain:* *Hæc sitis, sitis, thirst:* *Hæc fuga, fugæ, a fleeing away:* *Hæc quies, quietis, rest of body:* *Hæc cholera, cholera, cholæ, or the cholericke passion:* *Hæc fames, famis, hunger:* *Hæc bilis, bilis, gall, anger, melancholy:* *Hæc senectus, senectæ, old age:* *Hæc juvenus, juvenutis, youth.* But these, *Hæc soboles, sobolis, an offspring:* *Hæc labe, labis, a spot, a grea: chap, a remeatch.* As also, all Nouns of the fifth Declension, have in the Plurall Number the three like Cases: except, *res, rei, a thing:* *Hæc species, speciei, a form, or kinde:* *Hæc facies, faciei, a face:* *Hæc acies, aciei, an edge, the array of an army, the sight of the eye: and, Hic vel hæc dies, dei, & hi dies, dierum, a day:* which have all the Cases in the Plurall Number. Adde hereunto many other Feminines, wanting commonly the Plurall Number: as, *Hæc stultitia, stultitiæ, foolishnesse:* *Hæc invidia, invidiæ, envie:* *Hæc sapientia, sapientiæ, wisdom:* *Hæc defidia, defidiæ, sloathfulnessse:* and such like.

These Nouns of the Neuter Gender do want the Plurall Number: as, *Hoc delicium, delici, ones Delight:* *Hoc senium, senii, old age:* *Hoc lethum, lethi, death:* *Hoc cænum, cæni, dirt:* *Hoc salum, sali, the sea:* *hoc Barathrum, barathri, a place taken for Hell, Hell:* *Hoc virus, viri, or hoc virus, undeclined; a popson or stink:* *Hoc vitium, viri, glasse:* *Hoc vitium visci, Bird-lime:* *Hoc pœnum, pœni, provision of victuals, all manner of victuals:* *hoc Iustum, iustiti, Vacation time, no Term:* *Hoc nihilum, nihili, nothing:* *hoc Ver, veris, the Spring time:* *hoc Lac, lactis, Milk:* *hoc Glutin, glutinis, Glue:* *hoc & hoc Hæc, hæc, a Derring:* *hoc Gelu, undeclined, Frost of Ice:* *Hic solium, solii, a throne, or seat of estate:* *Hic jubar, iubaris, the Sun-beam:* and many such like.

These Nouns of the Masculine Gender, have onely the Plurall Number: as, *Hi manes, manum, Spirits:* *Hi majores, majorum, Ancestors:* *hi Cancelli, cancellorum, a Lattice, or the Lists of a game*

A NOUN.

game place, or of a spectacle: *Hi liberi, liberorum, children:* *Hi antes, antium, pillars or Buttresses, the uttermost ranges of vines, or the walls that compass them:* *hi Menfes, mensium, Womens monthly Flowers:* *hi Lemures, lemurum, Hobgoblins, or night Spirits:* *hi Faltis, faltorum, a Register of things for the whole year:* *hi Minores, minorum, our Successours, posterity:* *hi Natales, natalium, a flock, or Family whereof one cometh, an originall parentage:* *hi Penates, penatium, the heathenish household gods, the secret parts of ones house:* and many Names also of places, are onely of the Plurall Number: as, *hi Gabii, Gaborum, a City of the Collians in Italy, fourtore miles from Rome:* *hi Locri, Locorum, people of Locris a City in Italy; and such like.*

These Nouns of the Feminine Gender, have onely the Plurall Number: as, *Hæc exuvia, exuviarum, the thing that is put off:* *Hæc phalæra, phalarum, horse trappings:* *Hæc ares, has, grates, (having no more Cases) thanks:* *Hæc manubiz, manubiarum, spoiles taken in war:* *hæc Idus, iduum, the Ides of the Months, or days dividing the Months:* in March, May, June, and October, it is the fiftieth day, in the rest the thirtieth: *Hæc atriæ, atriarum, a womans forelocks:* *hæc Inducia, induciarum, a Truce:* *hæc infidiz, infidiarum, a laying in wait for, or deceit:* *Hæc minæ, minarum, threatenings:* *Hæc excubiz, excubiarum, watch and ward:* *hæc Nonæ, nonarum, the Nones of a Month; because that from that day, nine are counted to the Ides; they are the first dayes after the Calends, that is, after the first day of the Month: in March, May, June, and October, there be six, and in the rest but four.* *Hæc nugæ, nugarum, trifles:* *Hæc trices, tricarum, trifling gewgaws, a trifling let:* *hæc Calendæ, calendarum, the Calends, that is, the first day of every Month:* *Hæc quiquiliz, quiquiliarum, the sweeping and refuse of things, things of no waight, chippings:* *hæc thermæ, thermarum, hot bathes:* *hæc cunæ, cunarum, a cradle for a child:* *Hæc ræ, dirarum, curlings, hellish furies:* *hæc exequiæ, exequiarum, Solemnities, or Ceremonies of, or at burials:* *hæc Inferiæ, inferiarum, heathenish Sacrifices done to Spirits in hell:* *hæc feriæ, feriarum, holy-days, or times of pastures:* *Hæc primitiæ, primitiarum, the first-fruits of ones grounds, or the firstlings of any other thing:* *Hæc plagæ, plagarum, great nets to take Beasts:* *Hæc valvæ, valvarum, folding, or two-leaved doors:* *Hæc divitiæ, divitiarum, riches:* *Hæc nuptiæ, nuptiarum, marriage:* *hæc Lædæ, lædium, the small Guts.* Adde hereunto, *hæc Thebæ, Thebarum, the City Thebes in Egypt, and another so called in Boetia:* *hæc Athenæ, Athenarum, the City Athens in Greece; with many such Names of places.*

These Nouns of the Neuter Gender, have seldom the Singular Number: as, *hæc Mœnia, mœniorum, the Walls of a Town:* *Hæc telus, telorum, rough places, untilld, or hard to climb upon:* *hæc Præcordia, præcordiorum, the Biddiff:* *Hæc lustra, lustrorum, Dens of wilde beasts, or Brothel-houses, petty tipling houses of Bawdy:* *Hæc arma, armorum, armour, or weapons:* *hæc Mapalia, mapaliorum, sheep coats, or small Cottages:* *hæc Bellaria, bellariorum, Tuncates:* *Hæc munia, muniorum, a duty, or office:* *hæc Caltra, caltrorum, the Camp, pavilion, or army, tents:* *hæc fusta, fustorum, the Ceremonies of buriall:* *Hæc sponsalia, sponsaliorum, conditional betrothings:* *hæc Rostra, rostrorum, a Pulpit:* *Hæc crepundia,*

liberi, antes, menses, lemures, fasti, minæ, natales, penates: and many Names of places; as, *Gabii, & Locri.*

These Feminines do want the Singular Number: as, *Exuvia, phalæra, grates, manubiz, atriæ, infidiz, minæ, excubiz, nonæ, nugæ, trices, calendæ, quiquiliz, thermæ, feriæ, primitiæ, plagæ, valvæ, divitiæ, nuptiæ, lædæ, & Athenæ,* and many like Names of places.

These Neuters have seldom the Singular Number: as, *Mœnia, telus, præcordia, lustra, arma, mapalia, bellaria, tuncates, munia, caltra, fusta, sponsalia, rostra,*

Duo, two: Amba, both: being Plurals only.				
o	o ¹ 111111	obus	os	o
e	e ¹ 111111	abis	as	e
o	o ¹ 111111	obus	o	o
Tres, three: being only Plural.				
es	e ¹ 111111	ibus	es	es
ia	i ¹ 111111	ibus	ia	ia

The COMPARISONS of Nouns.

Comparisons of Nouns.

NDuns whose signification may increase, or be diminished, may form comparison.

There be three degrees of Comparison: The Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The Positive.

The Positive betokeneth a thing absolutely without excellency, as, Durus, dura, durum, (hard.) Albus, a, um, white: Niger, a, um, black. Probus, a, um, honest: Improbis, a, um, dishonest.

The Comparative.

[illegible]

The Superlative

The Superlative exceedeth his Positive in the highest degree.
as, Durissimus, a, um, (hardest.) It signifieth above his Positive
with the Adjective valde, very greatly, or, maxime, most of all: as
Durissimus, a, um, that is, valde durus, very, or, most hard: Doctissimus
a, um, that is, valde op, maxime doctus, most learned: Justissimus, a, um,
that is, valde op maxime justus, most just. And it is (regularly) the
med of the first Case of his Positive, that endeth in i, by putting
thereto s and simus: as, of (the Genitive) duri (hard) durissimus, a, um
(most hard): of (the Dative) tristi (sad) tristissimus, a, um (most sad):
of (the Dative) dulci (sweet) dulcissimus, a, um, (most sweet.) Of
Genitive, candidi, white, candidissimus, a, um, most white: Of
Dative, Prudenti, wise, prudencissimus, a, um, most wise.

In rimis.

But if the Positive end in r, the Superlative is formed of the Nominative Case, by putting to rimus: as, Pulcher, a, um, fairest; pulcherrimus, a, um, fairest. Niger, a, um, black; nigerrimus, a, um, blackest; Acer, a, um, black; acerrimus, a, um, blackest; Acer, a, um, black.

acerimus, a, um, sharpest: Teter, a, um, stinking, teterimus, a, um, most stinking. Except dextimus, a, um, of dexter, a, um, right: maturimus, a, um, maturissimus, a, um ripest, of this old word matur, a, um, ripe.

In lis

These fix *nouns ending in lis, doe make the Superlative by changing lis into limus: as, Hic & hæc familis, & hoc simile, familis, like famillimus, a, um, most like: Hic & hæc humilis, & hoc humile, humilis, humble: humilimus, a, um, most humble: Hic & hæc facilis, & hoc facile, facilis, easie, facillimus, a, um, most easie: Hic & hæc gracilis, & hoc gracile, gracilis, lean, gracillimus, a, um, most lean: Hic & hæc agilis, & hoc agile, agilis, nimble, agilissimus, a, um, most nimble: Hic & hæc docilis, & hoc docile, docilis, apt to learne: docilissimus, a, um, most apt to learne.*

, Nouns derived of
dico, loquer, &c.

nouns derived of dico to say; loquor, to speake; volo, to be will-
 ling; & facio, to doe: are thus compared; malecicus, a, um, ill-con-
 quied. hic & hac maledicentior, & hoc maledicentius, maledicentioris,
 worst tongued; maledicentissimus, a, um, worst tongued, of dico:
 magniloquus, a, um, of a lofty stile, hic & hac magniloquentior, & hoc
 magniloquentius, magniloquentioris, of a loftier stile, magniloquentis-
 simus, a, um, of the loftiest stile, of loquor: Pet Plaurus, of mendacilo-
 quus, a, um, that telleth lies, bath, mendaciloquus, that more telleth
 lies: And of Confidentioquus, a, um, that is confident in words, a
 bold speaker, confidentioquus, a more bold speaker. Of volo, to
 will, benevolus, a, um, well willing. hic & hac benevolentior, & hoc
 benevolentius, benevolentioris, more well willing, benevolentissimus,
 a, um, most well willing: Of facio, to make, magnificus, a, um, noble,
 hic & hac magnificentior, & hoc magnificentius, magnificentioris, more
 noble, magnificentissimus, a, um, most noble,

**Comparisons of
Nouns ending in
purcss.**

A more unusual Comparison.

In the meane time good judgement is to be had, that in reading of Anthoas, these things be seldom used, which are seldom found: as these following, Hic & hæc assiduus, & hoc assiduus, assiduoris, more diligent: Hic & hæc strenuor, & hoc strenuus, strenuoris, stollter: Egregissimus, a, um, most excellent: mirificissimus, a, um, most marvellous: Pientissimus, oꝝ piissimus, a, um, most merittfull: Ipsissimus, a, um, even the very same: Perpetuissimus, a, um, most perpetual: Tuissimus, a, um, even that thy selfe: In Ovid. Exiguissimus, a, um, most small: in Cicero, malissimus, a, um, most.

An irregular Comparison.

From these generall rules are excepted these that follow: as
Bonus, a,um, good: Hic & hæc melior, & hoc melius, melioris, better
Optimus, a,um, best: Malus, a,um, evil: Hic & hæc pejor, & hoc pejus
pejoris, worse, pessimus, a,um, worst: Magnus, a,um, great: Hic & hæc
maior, & hoc majus, majoris, greater: Maximus, a,um, greatest: Par

An exception, of a comparison anomalous, or, irregular, going out of rule.

OF a PRONOUN.

A Pronoun.

A PRONOUN is a part of Speech, much like a Noun, which is used in shewing, or rehearsing (any thing.)

There be fifteen Pronouns: Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, whereof four have the Vocative case; as, Tu, meus, noster, & vestras, and all other want the Vocative case.

To these may be added their Compounds; Egomet, tute, idem, (and the like :) and also, Qui, quæ, quod.

Of the things belonging to a Pronoun.

The things befalling to a Pronoun.

There belongeth to a Pronoun these five things: Number, Case, and Gender, as are in a Noun, Declension, and Person, as here followeth. Of these seven things: Species, Number, Case, Gender, Declension, Person, and Figure.

The species of a Pronoun. Primitives. Demonstratives.

A Pronoun is of two sorts: Primitive and Derivative. These eight; Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, and is, be Primitives: so called, because they be not derived of others. And they be also called Demonstratives, because they shew a thing not spoken of before. Of Primitives, some are Demonstratives, and some Relatives. These six; Hic, ille, iste, is, idem, and qui, be Relatives, because they rehearse a thing that was spoken of before. Of these seven; Hic, ille, ipse, iste, is, idem, and qui.

Relatives.

These seven; Hic, ille, ipse, iste, is, idem, and qui.

Derivatives.

These seven; Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, be Derivatives. For they be derived of their Primitives; Mei, tui, sui, nostri, and vestri.

Possessives. Gentiles.

Of Derivatives, some are Possessives: as, Meus, tuus, suus, noster, and vester. And some Gentiles: as, Nostras, vestras, and this Noun cujus, which are called Gentiles, because they signify country or nation, part or sect.

OF NUMBER.

Number in Pronouns.

There be in Pronouns, two Numbers: The Singular; as, Ego, I. And the Plural; as, Nos, We.

OF CASE.

Cases of Pronouns.

There be therein also six Cases, as in a Noun. But all Pronouns do want the Vocative case, except these four: Tu, thou, Meus, mine, Noster, ours; and Nostras, of our country, sect or faction. Per Marcellum seemeth to use this Pronoun, Ipse, he, in the Vocative case: as,

Martis revocatur amor, (sive)que tonantis,
Ate Iuno p. Est Celton, & ipsa Venus.

Let the love of Mars be recalled, and the voice of terrible thundring; let Celton require of thee, O Iuno, and thou, O Venus.

A PRONOUN.

OF GENDER.

There be Genders in Pronouns, even as in Nouns Adjectives. For, some are referred to three Genders: as, Ego, I. Tu, thou: Sui, of himself. Others are varied by three Genders: as, Meus, mea, meum, mine.

Gender of Pronouns.

OF DECLENSION.

There be four Declensions of Pronouns. And the Genitive case of the first Declension, endeth in i: as, Ego, tu, Genitivo mei, tui, and sui; which last wanteth the Nominative case, in both Numbers. These three; Ego, tu, sui, be of the first Declension, and be thus declined:

The Declensions of Pronouns. The first Declension.

Singulariter	Nominativo ego, I.	Pluraliter	Nominativo nos, we.
	Genitivo mei.		Genitivo nostrum vel nostri.
	Dativo mihi.		Dativo vobis.
	Accusativo me.		Accusativo nos.
	Vocativo caret. i. it wants.		Vocativo caret.
Singulariter	Ablativo à me.	Pluraliter	Ablativo à vobis.
	Nominativo tu, thou.		Nominativo vos, ye:
	Genitivo tui.		Genitivo vestrum, or vestri.
	Dativo tibi.		Dativo vobis.
	Accusativo te.		Accusativo vos.
Singulariter	Vocativo ô tu.	Pluraliter	Vocativo ô vos.
	Ablativo à te.		Ablativo à vobis.

Singulariter } Nom. caret.
and } Gen. sui, of himself, or of
Pluraliter } Dat. sibi. (themselves.) } Accus. se.
Voc. caret.
Abl. à se.

The second.

The Genitive case of the second Declension, endeth in ius, or ius: of which four are, Ille, he, Ipse, he, iste, this, that; Genitivo illius, ipsius, istius. Hic, this, is, he, qui, which; Genitivo huius, ejus, cujus.

These six; Ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, and qui, be of the second Declension, and be thus declined:

Nominativo hic hæc hæc, Genitivo huius, Dativo huic, as afore in the Noun.

Singulariter	Nominativo iste, ista, istud.	Pluraliter	Nominativo isti, istæ, ista.
	Genitivo istius.		Genitivo istorum, istarum, istorum.
	Dativo isti.		Dativo istis.
	Accusativo istum, istam, istud.		Accusativo isto, ista, ista.
	Vocativo caret.		Vocativo caret.
Singulariter	Ablativo isto, ista, ista.	Pluraliter	Ablativo istis.

Ille is declined like iste, and also ipse: saving that the Gender in the Nominative case, and in the Accusative case Singular, maketh iplum.

A PRONOUN.

Singulariter	Nominativo <i>is, ea, id.</i>	Pluraliter	Nominativo <i>ii, ea, ei.</i>
	Genitivo <i>eius.</i>		Genitivo <i>eorum, earum, eorum.</i>
	Dativo <i>ei.</i>		Dativo <i>illis, or eis.</i>
	Accusativo <i>eum, eam, id.</i>		Accusativo <i>eos, eas, ea.</i>
	Vocativo <i>eiet.</i>		Vocativo <i>eiet.</i>
Singulariter	Nominativo <i>qui, quae, quod.</i>	Pluraliter	Nominativo <i>qui, quae, quae.</i>
	Genitivo <i>cujus.</i>		Gen. <i>quorum, quarum, quorum.</i>
	Dativo <i>cui.</i>		Dativo <i>quibus, or quibus.</i>
	Accusativo <i>quem, quam, quod.</i>		Accusativo <i>quos, quas, quae.</i>
	Vocativo <i>caret.</i>		Vocativo <i>caret.</i>
	Ablativo <i>quo, qua, quo, or qui.</i>		Ablativo <i>quibus, or quibus.</i>

Likewise, Quis (who) and Quid (what) be declined, whether they be Interrogatives, or Indefinites. Also, Quisquis (Whosoever) is thus declined:

Singul. Nom.	Quisquis.	Accus. Quicquid.	Ablat. Quicquid.
	Quicquid.		Quicquid.

Where more, that Quid is alwayes a Substantive of the Neuter Gender, (and is thus declined:) Nominativo quid, Genit. cuius, Dat. cui, &c.

The Genitive case of the third Declension, endeth in *i, ei, illi* into Nouns Adjectives of three terminations.

These five; Meus (mine) Tuus (thine) Suus (his) Noster (ours) and Vester (yours) are of the third Declension, and be declined as Nouns Adjectives of three terminations, in this wise:

Singulariter	Nominativo <i>meus, meus, meus.</i>	Pluraliter	Nominativo <i>mei, mei, mei.</i>
	Genitivo <i>mei, mei, mei.</i>		Gen. <i>meorum, meorum, meorum.</i>
	Dativo <i>meo, meo, meo.</i>		Dativo <i>meis.</i>
	Accusativ. <i>meum, meum, meum.</i>		Accusativo <i>meos, meos, meos.</i>
	Vocativo <i>mei, mei, mei.</i>		Vocativo <i>mei, mei, mei.</i>
	Ablativo <i>meo, meo, meo.</i>		Ablativo <i>meis.</i>

So is Noster declined, and also Tuus, suus, vester, saving that these three last do lack the Vocative case.

The Genitive case of the fourth Declension hath six: as, Noster, nostris, of our own country, household, or sect: Vester, vestris, of your country, lineage, or faction: and this Noun, Cuius, cujus, of what sect, or country?

Noster, Vester, and this Noun Cuius, be of the fourth Declension, and be thus declined:

Singulariter	N. hic & haec nostras, & hoc nostras.	Pluraliter	N. hi & haec nostrates, & haec nostrates.
	G. huius nostratis. (istratis.)		G. horum nostratibus, & horum nostratibus.
	D. huius nostrati.		D. his nostratibus.
	A. hunc & hanc nostratem, & hoc nostrate.		A. hos & has nostrates, & haec nostrates.
	V. o nostras, & o nostrate.		V. o nostrates, & o nostratis.
	A. ab hoc has & hoc nostrate, or (nostrati.)		A. ab his nostratibus.

A PRONOUN.

Here is to be noted, that Noster, Vester, and this Noun Cuius, be called Gentiles, because they properly betoken pertaining to country's or nations, to sects or factions.

OF PERSON.

A Pronoun hath three Persons. The first Person speaketh of himself: as, Ego, I: Nos, we. The second Person is spoken of: as, Tu, thou: Vos, ye; and of this Person is also every Vocative case. The third Person is spoken of: as, ille, he, illis, they. And therefore, all other Pronouns, Nouns, and Participles, be of the third Person.

The Persons of a Pronoun.

OF FIGURE.

Figure is two fold: Simple; as, Ego, I: And Compound; as, Egomet, I my self.

Pronouns are compounded one with another: as, Egomet, I my self: Tuiple, thou thy self: Suiphus, of him himself: Meiphus, of me my self. Nominativo *istic, istac, istos, or istuc*: Ablativo *istoc, istac, istoc*: Pluraliter Nominativo, & Accusativo, *istac*. After the same manner also is declined, *illic, illac, illos, that same*.

They are compounded also with Nouns: as, *Hic hac & hoc*, of what fashion: undeclined. *Hic hac & hoc huiusmodi*, undeclined, of this sort. *Hic hac & hoc illiusmodi*, undeclined, of that sort. *Hic hac & hoc istiusmodi*, undeclined, of the same sort.

Also, they are compounded with Prepositions: as, Ablativo *meum, with me*: Tecum, with thee: Secum, with himself: Nobiscum, with us: Vobiscum, with you: Quicum, with whom: Quibuscum, with whom.

They are compounded also with Adverbs: as, of Ecce, behold; Ecce, eccam, loe he, or she: Ecce, eccas, behold these men, or women: Illuc, ellam, see where he, or she is: Illuc, ellas, see where these men, or women be. So, Idem, the same, is compounded of is, the same, and demum, finally.

They are compounded also with Conjunctions: as, Nominativo *haccine, haccine, haccine*, is this he here? Accusativo *huncine, huncine, huncine*, haccine, haccine, Ablativo *hoccine, haccine, haccine*. In the Plurall Number, and Neuter Gender, *haccine*.

To conclude, they are compounded with the addition of syllables: as, Metre, ce, pte. Mer, is added to the first and second Person: as, Egomet, I my self: Meimet, mibimet, memet, nosinet, &c. So we say, Sibimet, to him himself, and semet. But we do not say, in the Nominative case, Tumet, lest it should be thought to be a Verb, of Tumeo, to swell: but Tumet, of thee thy self; Tibimet, temet, nosmet, &c.

Te, is added to these, Tu, thou: as, Tute, thou thy self: Te, thee: Te, thee, thee thy self.

Ce, is added to the oblique Cases of these Pronouns: *Hic, ille, iste*, when they end in *s*: as, *Huiusce, of this, huiusce, illiusce, of him, istiusce, of this*: *Istosce, these; Istosce, those; Istosce, those*.

Pre, is put to these Ablatives: *Mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*: as, *Meapte*.

Meapte, mine own : Tuapte, thine own : Suapte, his own : Nostre, our own : Vostre, your own. And sometimes, it is added to the Masculine and Neuter Genders: as, Meapte marie, by mine own Mat: Tuapte labore, by thine own labour: Suapte jumento, by his own beast: Nostre damno, wistly our own loss, &c.

Quis, and Qui, are thus compounded: Quis, is in composition put after these Particles: En, behold: Ne, no: Alius, another: Nunc, whether: Si, if: as, Equis, a, equod, eccujus, what, who: Nequis, nequod, vel nequid, necujus, that none: Aliquis, a, aliquod, aliquis, some body: Nunquis, nunqua, nunquid, vel nunquid, nuncuius, is there any one? Siquis, siqua, siquod, vel siquid, scujus, if any. And thus as well in the Feminine Singular, as in the Neuter Plural, have Qua, and not Quæ: as, si qua mulier, if any woman: Nequa flagitia, that no offences, &c. Except Equis, which in the Feminine Gender, is found to have both Equæ, and Equæ.

But Quis, is in composition, set before these Particles: Nunc, piam, putas, quam quæ; as, Quisnam, quænam, quodnam, vel quidnam, cujusnam, who? Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam, vel quidpiam, cujuspiam, some body: Quisputas, quæputas, quodputas, vel quidputas, cujusputas, who think you? Quisquam, quæquam, quodquam, vel quidquam, cujusquam, any body: Quisque, quæque, quodque, vel quidque, cujusque, every one. And these every where, (excepting in the Ablative Singular) have Quæ, and not Quæ; as, Quænam doctrina, what doctrine? Negotia quæpiam, some businesses. Optima quæque, all the best things.

Quis, æ, quod, cujus, who; is also compounded with it self: as, Quisquis, whosoever; and is declined as before.

Qui, æ, quod, cujus, which; is in composition set before these Particles: Nam, vis, libet, eunque; as, Quidam, quædam, quoddam, re quiddam, cujusdam, a certain man: Quivis, quævis, quodvis, vel quivis, cujusvis, whosoever thou wilt: Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, vel quidlibet, cujuslibet, who, or whatsoever thou wilt: Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque, cujuscunque, who, or whatsoever. And these every where, (except in the Ablative case Singular) have Quæ, and not Quæ; as, Quædam puella, a certain wench: Quæcunque facinora, whatsoever offences.

The Declensions of Pronouns.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablat.
Sing.	ego	mei	mihi	me	tu	me
	* tu	tui	tibi	te		te
		sui	sibi	se		se
Plur.	nos	nostrum, i,	vobis	nos	vos	vobis
	* vos	vestrum, i,	vobis	vos		vobis
		sui	sibi	se		se

So are these seven Nouns and their Compounds declined: Unus, a, um, unius one: Totus, a, um, totius, the whole: Solus, a, um, solius, alone: Alius, a, um, alius another: Alter, a, um, alterius, one of the two: Uter, a, um, utrius, whether of the two: Ullus, a, um, ullius, any: as, in the end of the Heterocliics.

	Nominat.	Genitive.	Dative.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablative.
Sing.	ille, iste, ipse, a, um.	is	i	um, am, ud, um		a
Plur.	i, a	orum, arum, orum	is	as, a		is
Sing.	hic, hac, hoc	hujus	huic	hunc, hanc, hoc		hac, hac, hoc
Plur.	hi, hæ, hæc	horum, harum, horum	his	hos, has, hac		his
Sing.	is, ea, id	eius	ei	eum, eam, id		eo, ea, eo
Plur.	ii, ea, ea	eorum, earum, eorum	eis, or eis	eos, eas, ea		eis, or eis
Sing.	quis, or quæ, quæ, or quæ, quæ, or quæ	cujus	cui	quem, quam, quod, or quid		quo, or quo, qua, or qua, quo, or qui
Plur.	qui, quæ, or quæ	quorum, quarum, quorum	quibus, or quibus	quos, quas, quæ, or quæ		quibus, or quibus

Idem, the same, eadem, idem, is a Pronoun Relative, of the second order.

	Nominat.	Genitive.	Dative.	Accusat.	Vocat.	Ablative.
Sing.	id, eadem, idem	ei, eam, ei	ei	eum, eam, idem		eo, ea, eo
Plur.	ati, atia	atium	atibus	ates, atia	ates, atia	atibus

The second.

The third.

The fourth.

Of

A Verbe. *Moueo*,
I move. *Tango*,
I touch. *Moueor*,
I am moved. *Tan-
gor*, I am touched.
Saxiflo, I am.



Verbe is a part of speech declined with Gender and Tense, and betokeneth doing; as, *Amor*, I love: or *Suffering*; as, *Amor*, I am loving: being; as, *Sum*, I am.

Of Verbes, such as have Persons betokened Personals; as, *Ego amo*, (I love.) *Tu amas*, (thou lovest.) And such as have no Persons, betokened Impersonals; as, *Tader*, It is taken: *Oporet*, It behooveth.

A Verb Personall is that which is distinguished by certain persons; as, *Ego lego*, I read; *tu legis*, thou readest; *hic legitur*, he readeth; *illi legunt*, they read. Contrariwise, that is called Verb Impersonall, which is not distinguished, nor varied by voyces of divers Persons; as, *Poenitet*, it repenteth: *Miseretur*, it pitieth.

Of the things accidentary to a Verbe.

The accidents
of a Verb.

These things do belong to a Verb: *Numere*, *Modus*, *Tense*, *Genus*, *Personae*, *Numerus*, and *Coniugation*.

Of the Genus, or Kinde.

Kinde.

Active.

Passive.

Neuter.

A Verb Neuter
Substantive,
A Verb Neuter
Absolute.

Of Verbs Personals there be five kinds: *Active*, *Passive*, *Neuter*, *Dependent*, and *Commune*.

A Verb Active endeth in *o*, and betokeneth to doe; as, *Amor*, I love: and by putting to *r*, it may be a Passive, as, *Amor*, I am loved: *Lego*, I read; *legor*, I am read.

A Verb Passive endeth in *o*, and betokeneth to suffer: as, *amor*, I am loved: and by putting away *r*, it may be an Active, as, *Amo*, I love: *afficio*, I am affectioned, *afficio*, I doe affect.

A Verb Neuter endeth in *o*, or *m*, and cannot take *r* to make him a Passive: as, *Curro*, I run. *Sum*, I am. And it is Englished sometimes Actively, as, *Curro*, I run: and sometimes Passively, as, *Ego sum*, I am sick. *Ambulo*, I walke, *Iaceo*, I lie.

Of Verbs Neuters, there be three kinds. For, one is called a Verb Substantive; as, *Sum*, I am, *es*, thou art, *est*, he is, *sumus*, we are, &c. Another, a Verb Absolute, so called, because it doth by itself perfect the sense. And this againe is double. For, one both in the Verb it selfe signifieth an action compleat, and not depending into any other thing; as, *Ambio*, I desire, *dormio*, I sleepe, *pluit*, it raineth, *ningit*, it snoweth. But the other signifieth a passion in it selfe compleat; as, *Palleo*, I am pale, *ruceo*, I am red, *albesco*, I waxe white, *nigresco*, I waxe black. There is moreover another kinde of Verb Neuter, whose action passeth into a thing of the like signification, being used in the third Person of the Verb: as, *Bibo vinum*, I drinke wine, *Vinum bibitur*, wine is drunke: *Curro stadium*, I run a race, *stadium curritur*, a race is run.

Vivo vitam, I live a life, *vita vivitur*, a life is lived, *i. a me*, of me, *i. I live*: and so of the rest. To conclude there are Verbs which are simple Neuters, but being compounded do contain an action.

as, *Bo*, I go: *Adco*, I go to. *Mingo*, I pisse: *Commingo*, I pisse together with.

A Verb Dependent endeth in *r*, like a Passive, and yet in signification is but either Active: as, *Laquor verbum*, I speake a word: or Neuter, as, *Glorior*, I boast. (*Philosophor*, I profess Philosophy.)

A Verb Commune endeth in *r*, and in signification is both Active and Passive: as, *Osculor te*, I kisse thee: *Osculor a te*, I am kised of thee. *Veneror*, I honour: *Criminor*, I blame: *Consolator*, I comfort: *Stipulor*, I covenant: *Speculor*, I espye: *Adulor*, I flatter: *Frustror*, I frustrate: *Dignor*, I bouchaste: *Tector*, I witness: *Interpretor*, I interpret: *Amplector*, I embrace: *Meditor*, I meditate: *Exporior*, I prove: *Ementior*, I lie: and many such like, every where to be found, in the old writers.

MOODS.

There be five Moods: the Indicative, the Imperative, the Optative, the Potentiall, the Subiunctive, and the Infinitive.

Six Moods.

The Indicative Mood sheweth a reason, true or false: as, *Ego amo*, I love: or *esse*, asketh a question, as, *amas tu?* dost thou love?

Indicative.

The Indicative doth determine a thing simply to be done, or not to be done: as, *Probitas laudatur*, & alget: *Vonestie* is praised, and is very cold. This Mood is sometimes used in a question; as, *Quis legist haec?* Who readeth these things? Sometimes, in doubting; as, *An in actu venialius ex alio malum?* Whether doth one evil in the cite, come of an other, or no?

The Imperative Mood biddeth or commandeth: as, *Ama*, love thou.

Imperative.

We use the Imperative Mood in commanding. This Mood hath no future Tense, but a double Present Tense: as with *Propertius*. *Aur se es dura, nega; sin non es dura, venito*: Either if thou beest hard, denie; but if thou beest not hard, come. *Virg.*

Tityre dum redeo, brevis est una, pascis capellas
Et potum pascas, oge Tityre, et inter agendum
Ocupare capro (cornu ferit ille) caveto.

Tityrus whiles I returne, the way is short, feed the little goates: and being fed *Tityrus*, give them drinke, and in guiding it, prevent the goat, (he striketh with the home) take heed.

But it borroweth the Preterperfect tense of the Subiunctive Mood: *Cic. Sed amabo te, nihil incommode valetudinis tuae feceris*: But I pray thee of all love, do nothing that may be hurtfull to thy health.

Marcialis
Dic quotus es, quanticupias canare, nec ullum
Addideris verbum, cana parata tibi est: Say what thou art, how much thou desirest to sup with, neither adde a word, supper is ready for thee. And these Passives, *Præceptum* sic let it have been commanded: *Didum* sic let it have been spoken: *Determinatum* sic let it have been determined: *Psicium* confesseth to be of the Preterperfect tense of the Imperative Mood.

This Mood is also called permissive, because that sometimes permission is hereby signified: as,

S:

Si sine pace tusa, atque invito numine Trices

Isaltam peniere luxat peccata, nec illos juveris auxilio:

It without thy leave, and against the will of God, the Trojans have attained Italie, let them abide their sinnes, neither aid thou them.

To conclude, it is sometimes called suppositive, or optative: as, *Virg. — eamus, & in media arma ruamus:* Let us go, and rush into midst of the armour.

Optative.

The Optative Mood wisheth or desireth with these signs: *Would God. I pray God. or God grant: as, Utinam amen, I pray God I love. And hath evermore an Adverbe of wishing joyned with him.*

The Optative, Potentiall, and Subjunctive Moods seem to have the five Tenses severen by the same voices, according to Linacres. Note further, that, the Present tense of this Mood hath sometimes the signification of the Future Tense: as, *Veni aliquando tecum loquar:* God grant I do at the length speak with thee.

Potentiall.

The Potentiall Mood is knowne by these signs: *May, can, might, would, should, or ought: as, Amen, I may or can love, without an Adverbe joyned with him.*

By the Potentiall Mood, we signifie, that something may, would, or ought to be done: as, *Expectes eadem, à summo malim: poeta: for, poetes expectare: thou maist expect the same thing, of the greatest and least poet. Non expectes, ut statim gratias agi: qui fametur invit: for, non debes expectare: Thou oughtest not, looke that he should presently give thanks, which is heale, against his will. Quis enim rem tam veterem, pro certo affirmet? si vult affirmare? Who would affirme a matter so old, for certain?* The Greeks do expresse this Mood, sometimes by the Indicative, and sometimes by the Optative Mood, and the participle 2v.

The Optative Moods of the Greekes.

Subjunctive.

The Subjunctive Mood hath evermore some Conjunction joyned with him; as, *Cum amarem, when I loved. And it is called the Subjunctive Mood, because it dependeth of another Verb in the same sentence, either going afore, or comming after: as, Cum amarem, eram miser: When I loved, I was wretched.*

The Subjunctive Mood doth not by it selfe perfect a sentence, unlesse it be subjected to another speech, or have another speech subjected unto it: as,

Si fueris felix, multos numerabis amicos:

Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris: So long as thou art happy, thou shalt have many friends: if the times be cloudie, thou shalt be alone.

Note

By the voyces therefore of the Tenses, these three Moods in all things (as hath been said) agree: being discerned by the signification and signs. For the Optative Mood hath alwaies some Adverbe of wishing: as, *Uti, am veniar aliquando tempus:* God grant the time do at the length come. But the Potentiall Mood hath neither any Adverbe, nor Conjunction joyned unto it. But the Subjunctive Mood hath alwaies some Conjunction joyned

joyned with it: as, *Si venero: If I shall come. Ut taceas: That thou be silent. Cum cenavero: When I shall sup.*

The Infinitive Mood signifieth to do, to suffer, or, to be, and hath neither Number nor Person, nor Dominative Case before him, and is knowne commonly by this signe, *to.* Also when two Verbs come together without any Dominative Case betwene them, then the latter shall be the Infinitive Mood: as, *Cupio discere, I desire to learne.*

The Infinitive Mood signifieth to do, or to suffer, without any certaine difference of Number and Person: as, *Malim probus esse, quam haberi: I had rather to be honest, then to be so accounted.*

There be moreover belonging to the Infinitive Mood, of Verbs, certaine voyces called Gerunds, ending in *di, do, and dum:* which have both the Active and Passive signification: as, *Amandi, of loving, or of being loved: amando, in loving, or in being loved: amandum, to love, or to be loved.*

Gerunds three, *di, do, dum.*

There be also pertaining unto Verbs, two Supines, the one ending in *um*, which is called the first Supine, because it hath the signification of the Verb Active: as, *Bo amatum, I go to love. And the other in u*, which is called the latter Supine, because it hath for the most part the signification Passive: as, *Dificilis amatu, hard to be loved.*

Supines two, *um, u.*

TENSES.

There be five Tenses or Times. The Present Tense, the Preterimperfect Tense, the Preterperfect, the Preterpluperfect, and the Future tense.

Tenses five.

The Present tense speaketh of the time that now is: as, *Amo, I love.*

The Present tense.

By the Present tense is signified, an action, now in doing: as, *Scribo, I write.*

The Preterimperfect tense, speaketh of the time not perfectly past: as, *Amabam, I loved or did love.*

The Preterimperfect tense.

By this Tense is signified something, to have been in doing before, and not to be now finished: as, *Virg. Hic templum Junoni ingens Sydonia Dido Condebat. Here Dido of sydon did build a very great temple to Juno. For, it was yet in hand.*

The Preterperfect tense speaketh of the time perfectly past, with this signe, *Have:* as, *Amavi, I have loved. By this Tense, an action perfectly past and finished, is signified. This Tense in Verbs Passives, Deponents and Communes, is double: and therefore is by a double circuntion declared. The one, whereby is expressed a thing but immediately past: as, *Præfatus sum I have dined. The other, whereby is declared a thing longer ago past: as, *Præfatus fui, I have dined long ago. For, if thou hast but now newly dined, thou canst not say fully and aptly: *Præfatus fui.****

The Preterperfect tense.

The Preterpluperfect tense speaketh of the time more then perfectly past, with this signe *Had:* as, *Amaveram, I had loved. By this Tense is signified an action, now long since past.*

The Preterpluperfect tense.

The Future tense.

The Future tense speaketh of the time to come, with this signification, a thing to be done in time to come. This is of some called the promissive Tense, because it seemeth to promise, or be willing to doe something: as, Ovid.

Promissive.

Ibimus & Nympha, monstrataque saxa petemus:
We will go on Nymphs, and resort to the stones shewed.

Exact.

Of this Tense, there is another kind, which they do call, Exact, as, *Videro*, I may hereafter see: *Abiero*, I may hereafter goe. *Teneas*, Si te aquo animo ferre accipit, negligentem facies: If he shall heare thou takest it well, thou maiest make him hereafter negligent. Which exact Future tense is also found in the Subjunctive Mood: as, *Ero securus dum legam*, statimque timebo quum legam. I shall be more secure whilst I read, and presently I shall tremble when I shall read.

OF FIGURE.

Figure.

Figure is double. Simple, as, *Eacio*, I doe: and compound, as, *Calefacio*, I make hot.

Verbs Compound, whose simples are growne out of use, as these: *Defendo*, I defend: *offendo*, I offend: *aspicio*, I behold: *aspicio* I see: *adipiscor*, I obtaine: *experior*, I probe: *comperior*, I find by diligent search: *expedio*, I dispatch: *impedio*, I hinder: *delicio*, I blot out: *imbuo*, I infect: *compello*, I compell: *appello*, I arrive: *incendo*, I set on fire: *accendo*, I kindle: *ingruo*, I invade: *infligo*, I inflict: *infligo*, I move: or pick forward: *impleo*, I fill: *compleo*, I fulfill: and the like. Some also seeme to come from the Greeks: as, *impleo*, I fill: of *πλην*, to fill: *percello*, I strike: of *πλην*.

Of the Species, or Forme.

Forme Primitive.
Derivative.

The Species is double. Primitive: which is the first position of the Verb: as, *Ferveo*, I am hot: and Derivative, which is deduced of the Primitive: as, *Ferveo*, I war heat.

Inchoative.

Of Derivatives there be five kinds: Inchoative, Frequentative, Desiderative, Diminutive, and Imitative.

A Verb Inchoative so called of Grammarians (which Verb calleth Inchoative, or rather Augmentative) endeth in *eo*: as, *Labasco*, I faine: *caleo*, I grow hot: *ingemisco*, I sigh and sob: *edormisco*, I take a nap. These Verbs either signifie inchoation, as, *lucet*, that is, it beginneth to be light: or increasing, and augmenting: as, with Virg. *Expleri mentem nequit*, and *scilicet* *tuenda*. The minde cannot be filled, and it kindleth in beholding: that is, it heatech more and more. The most of these are used for the present time: as, *Timeo*, I feare: *hisco*, I am silent.

Frequentative.

A Verb Frequentative endeth in *o*, *eo*, *eo*, or *tor*: as, *visito*, I visit: *affecto*, I affect: or earnestly desire: *scripso*, I write often: *pulso*, I knocke: *viso*, I go to see: *quasso*, I brandish: *nexo*, I knit often: *rexo*, I weave: *vexo*, I vex: *seco*, I follow: *seco*, I seek: *seco*, I inquire. And they signifie either a frequentative.

taine diligence: or endeavour: as, *Dicito*, that is, I speake often: *viso*, that is, I go to see.

Whereunto also appertaine these Verbs: *vellico*, I pluck: *sodico*, I pierce: *albico*, I make somewhat white: and such like: which of the Grammarians are wont to be called Apparatives.

Apparative.

A Verb Desiderative endeth in *urio*: as, *lecturio*, I desire to read: *parturio*, I am towards labour: *esurio*, I hunger: *cenurio*, I have an appetite to supper. These do adde to the signification of their Primitives, a certaine desire and appetite: as, *lecturio*, that is, I desire to read: *cenurio*, I desire to suppe.

Desiderative.

A Verb Diminutive endeth in *lo*, or *lo*: as, *sorbillo*, I sippe often: *cantillo*, I chirpe or chaunt: *pitillo*, I taste, or sippe by little and little: that is, *sorbeo*, *cano*, *bibo*, I sup, sing, and drinke, a little, and moderately.

Diminutive.

A Verb Imitative is that which betokeneth imitation: as, *Patrisso*, I resemble my father: *Atticisco*, I imitate the Athenian speech: *Platonisco*, I follow Plato. But the Latines do not so much delight in this forme: whereof, for, *Gracisco*, they use *Gracior*, I follow the Greeks in riot and bandie: as, *Cornicor*, I chat like a crow of *Hec Cornix*, *cornicis*, a Crow: *Vulpinor*, I play the foxe, of *Hec Vulpes*, *vulpis*, a Foxe: *Bacchor*, I imitate Bacchus in drunkenness and dissoluteness, of *Hec Bacchus*, *racchi*, the God of wine.

Imitative.

OF PERSONS.

There be also in Verbs three Persons, in both Numbers: as, Singulariter, *Ego amo*, I love: *Tu amas*, Thou lovest: *Ille amat*, He loveth. Pluraliter, *Nos amamus*, We love: *Vos amatis*, Ye love: *Illi amant*, They love. Persons three.

NUMBER.

There be also in Verbs two Numbers: the Singular, as, *Lego*, I read: and the Plurall, as, *Legimus*, We read. Numbers two.

CONJUGATION.

Verbs have four Conjugations, which be knowne after this manner. Conjugations four.

The first Conjugation hath a long before *re* and *ris*: as, *Amare*, To love: *Amaris*, Thou art loved.

The second Conjugation hath a long before *re* and *ris*: as, *Docere*, To teach: *Doceris*, Thou art taught.

The third Conjugation hath a short before *re* and *ris*: as, *Legere*, To read: *Legeris*, Thou art read.

The fourth Conjugation hath a long before *re* and *ris*: as, *Audire*, To heare: *Audiris*, Thou art heard.

Verbs in O, of the four Conjugations, be declined after these Examples.

A Mo, amas, amavi, amare: amandi, amando, amandum: amatus, amata: amans, amaturus. **To Love.**
 Doceo, doces, docui, docere: docendi, docendo, docendum: doctum, doctus: docens, docturus. **To Teach.**
 Lego, legis, legi, legere: legendi, legendo, legendum: lectum, lectus, legens, lecturus. **To Read.**
 Audio, audis, audiui, audire: audiendi, audiendo, audiendum: auditum, auditus: audiens, auditorus. **To Hear.**

Indicative Mood, Present Tense, Singular.

I love, Thou lovest, He loveth, We love, Ye love, They love.
 or *do love, dost love, doth love, do love, do love, do love.*

A Mo, amas, amat. **Pluraliter** Amamus, amatis, amant.
 Doceo, doces, docet. Docemus, docetis, docent.
 Lego, legis, legit. Legimus, legitis, legunt.
 Audio, audis, audit. Audimus, auditis, audiunt.

Preterimperfect tense, Singular, Amabam, Docebam, Legebam, Audiebam. *I loved, or did love.*
bas, bat. Plural. bamus, batis, bant.

Preterperfect tense, Singular, Amavi, Docui, Legi, Audiui. *I have loved.*
isti, it. Plural. imus, istis, erunt, vel erint.

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular, Amaveram, Docueram, Legeram, Audiveram. *I had loved.*
ras, rat. Plural. ramus, ratis, rant.

Future tense, Singular, Amabo, Docebo, Legam, Audiam. *I shall, or will love.*
bis, bit. Plural. bimus, bitis, bunt. es, et. Plural. erunt, eritis, erint.

Imperative Mood.

Love Love he, or Love we, or Love Love they, or
thou, let him love, let us love, ye, let them love.

Present tense, Singular, Ama, amec, Pl. amemus, Amate, ament.
 amato: amato. amatote: amant.
 Doce, doceat, Pl. doceamus, Docete, doceat.
 doceo: doceo. docetote: docent.
 Lege, legat, Pl. legamus, Legite, legant.
 legito: legito. legitote: legunt.
 Audi, audiat, Pl. audiamus, Audite, audiant.
 audito: audito. auditote: audiunt.

Optative

Optative Mood.

God grant I love.

Present tense, Singular, Vinam Amem, ames, amet. **Plural. amemus, ametis, amant.**
 Doceam, Legam, Audiam. *as, at. Plural. amus, atis, ant.*

Preterimperfect tense, Singular, Vinam Amarem, Docerem, Legerem, Audirem. *Would God I loved, or did love.*
res, ret. Plural. remus, retis, rent.

Preterperfect tense, Singular, Vinam Amaverim, Docuerim, Legerim, Audiverim. *I pray God I have loved.*
ris, rit. Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular, Vinam Amavissim, Docuissim, Legissim, Audivissim. *Would God I had loved.*
ses, set. Plural. semus, setis, sent.

Future tense, Singular, Vinam Amavero, Docuero, Legero, Audivero. *God grant I shall or will love.*
ris, rit. Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.

Potential Mood.

I may or can love.

Present tense, Singular, Amem, ames, amet. **Plural. amemus, ametis, amant.**
 Doceam, Legam, Audiam. *as, at. Plural. amus, atis, ant.*

Preterimperfect tense, Singular, Amarem, Docerem, Legerem, Audirem. *I might, would, should, ought, or could love.*
res, ret. Plural. remus, retis, rent.

Preterperfect tense, Singular, Amaverim, Docuerim, Legerim, Audiverim. *I might, would, should, or ought (to have loved).*
ris, rit. Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular, Amavissim, Docuissim, Legissim, Audivissim. *I might, would, should, or ought (to have loved).*
ses, set. Plural. semus, setis, sent.

Future tense, Singular, Amavero, Docuero, Legero, Audivero. *I may or can love hereafter.*
ris, rit. Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mood.

		When I love.	
Present tense, Singular. Cum	Amem, ames, amet.	Plural. amemus, ametis, amant.	
	Docem,	as, at. Plural. amus, atis, ant.	
	Legam,		
Preterimperfect tense, Sing. Cum	Audiam,		
	Amarem,	When I loved, or did love.	
	Docerem,	res, ret. Plural. remus, retis, rent.	
Preterperfect tense, Singular. Cum	Legerem,		
	Audirem,		
	Amaverim,	When I have loved.	
Preterpluperfect tense, Sing. Cum	Docuerim,	ris, rit. Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.	
	Legerim,		
	Audiverim,		
Future tense, Singular. Cum	Amavissim,	When I had loved.	
	Docuissim,	ses, set. Plur. semus, setis, sent.	
	Legissim,		
Future tense, Singular. Cum	Audivissim,		
	Amavero,	When I shall, or will love.	
	Docuero,	ris, rit. Plural. rimus, ritis, rint.	
	Legero,		
	Audivero,		

Infinitive Mood.

Present tense, and Preterimperfect,	Amare, to Love.	
	Docere, to Teach.	
	Legere, to Read.	
Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect tense	Audire, to Hear.	
	Amavisse, to have or had loved.	
	Docuisse, to have or had taught.	
Future tense,	Legisse, to have or had read.	
	Audivisse, to have or had heard.	
	Amatum esse, to love hereafter.	
Gerunds,	Dociturum esse, to teach hereafter.	
	Legiturum esse, to read hereafter.	
	Auditurum esse, to hear hereafter.	
Supines,	Amandi, of loving:	do, in loving: dum, to love
	Docendi, of teaching:	do, in teaching: dum, to teach
	Legendi, of reading:	do, in reading: dum, to read
A Participles of the Present tense,	Audiendi, of hearing:	do, in hearing: dum, to hear
	Amatu, to be loved.	Amans, loving.
	Docu, to be taught.	Docens, teaching.
A Participle of the Future tense,	Legu, to be read.	Legens, reading.
	Auditu, to be heard.	Audiens, hearing.

A Participle of the Future tense in rus, Amaturus, to love, or about to love.
Docurus, to teach, or about to teach.
Lecturus, to read, or about to read.
Auditurus, to hear, or about to hear.

Before we decline any Verbs in Or; for the supplying of many Tenses, lacking in all such Verbs; we must learn to decline this Verb Sum, in this wise following:
Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus: to be.

Indicative Mood, Present Tense, Singular.

Present tense, Singular,	Sum, I am: es, est. Pluraliter, sumus, estis, sunt.
Preterimperfect tense, Singular,	Eram, I was: eras, erat. Pluraliter, eramus, eratis, erant.
Preterperfect tense, Singular,	Fui, I have been: fuisti, fuit. Pluraliter, fuimus, fuistis, fuerunt, vel fuer.
Preterpluperfect tense, Singular,	Fueram, I had been: fueras, rat. Pluraliter, fueramus, ratis, rant.
Future tense, Singular,	Ero, I shall or will be: ris, rit. Pluraliter, erimus, ritis, erunt.

Imperative Mood.

Present tense, Singular,	Sis, Es, Est, be thou.	Sit, Est, Pl. Simus, Estote, Sinto.
--------------------------	------------------------	-------------------------------------

Optative Mood.

Present tense, Singular. Utinam	Sim, I pray God I be: sis, sit. Plur. utinam simus, sitis, sint.
Preterimperfect tense, Singular. Utinam	Essem, Would God I were: ses, set. Plur. utinam essemus, setis, sint.
Preterperfect tense, Singular. Utinam	Fuerim, I pray God I have been: ris, rit. Plur. utinam fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.
Preterpluperfect tense, Singular. Utinam	Fuissem, Would God I had been: ses, set. Plur. utinam fuissim, setis, sent.
Future tense, Singular. Utinam	Fuero, God grant I be hereafter: ris, rit. Plur. utinam rimus, ritis, rint.

Potential

Potentiall Mood.

Present tense, Singular,	Sim, I may or can be: sis, sit. Plural, simus, sitis.
Preterimperfect tense, Singular,	Essem, I might or could be: ses, set. Plural, essemus, setis, sent.
Preterperfect tense, Singular,	Fuissim, I might, could, should, or ought to have been: ris, rit. Plur. rimus, ritis, rint.
Preterpluperfect tense, Singular,	Fuissem, I might, could, should, or ought to have been: ses, set. Plur. femus, setis, sent.
Future tense, Singular,	Fuero, I may or can be hereafter: ris, rit. Plural, rimus, ritis, rint.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present tense, Singular, Cum	Sim, When I am: sis, sit. Plural, simus, sitis.
Preterimperfect tense, Singular, Cum	Essem, When I was: ses, set. Plural, essemus, setis, sent.
Preterperfect tense, Singular, Cum	Fuissim, When I have been: ris, rit. Plur. cum rimus, ritis, rint.
Preterpluperfect tense, Singular, Cum	Fuissem, When I had been: ses, set. Plural, cum femus, setis, sent.
Future tense, Singular, Cum	Fuero, When I shall or will be: ris, rit. Plural, cum rimus, ritis, rint.

Infinitive Mood.

Present tense, and Preterimperfect tense,	Esse, } Preterperfect tense, and Preterpluperfect tense, } Fuisse, } to have, or to be. } had been.
Future tense,	(Fore, vel futurum esse, to be hereafter.

Verbs in Or, of the four Conjugations, be declined after these Examples.

A Mor, amaris, vel amare: amatus sum vel fui, amari: amatus, amandus. **To be loved.**
 Doceor, doceris, vel docere: doctus sum vel fui, doceri: doctus, docendus. **To be taught.**
 Legor, legeris, vel legere: lectus sum vel fui, legi: lectus, legendus. **To be read.**
 Audior, audiris, vel audire: auditus sum vel fui, audiri: auditus, audiendus. **To be heard.**

Indicativ

Indicative Mood.

Present tense, Singular,	A Mor, amaris vel amare, amatur, Doceor, doceris vel docere, doceatur, Legor, legeris vel legere, legitur, Audior, audiris vel audire, auditur, } I am loved.
	amur, amini, amentur, emini, entur, imini, untur.

I was loved.

Preterimperfect tense, Singular,	Amabar, Docebar, Legebar, Audibar, } baris, vel bare, batur. Pl. bamur, bami- (ni), bantur.
----------------------------------	---

I have been loved.

Preterperfect tense, Singular,	Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus, } sum vel fui, } tus es vel fuisti, tus est vel fuit. Pl. ti sumus vel fuimus, ti estis vel fuistis, ti sunt, fuerunt vel fuere.
--------------------------------	---

I had been loved.

Preterpluperfect tense, Singular,	Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus, } eram vel fueram, tus eras vel fueras, tus erat vel fuerat Pl. ti eramus vel fueramus, ti eratis vel fueratis, ti erant vel fuerant.
-----------------------------------	--

I shall or will be loved.

Future tense, Singular,	Amabor, Docebor, Legar, Audiar, } beris vel bere, bitur. Pl. bimur, bimini, buntur. } eris vel ere, etur. Pl. emur, emini, entur.
-------------------------	---

Imperative Mood.

Thou	Let him	Let us be	Ye ye	Let them
loved.	be loved.	loved.	loved.	be loved.

Present tense, Singular,	Amare, amator, Docere, doceptor, Legere, legitor, Audire, auditor, } Ametur, amator, Doceatur, doceptor, Legatur, legitor, Audiatur, auditor, } Plur. Amemur, Doceamur, Legamur, Audiamur, } emini, eminator, emini, eminator, imini, iminator, imini, iminator, iuntur.
--------------------------	--

Optative Mood.

God grant I be loved.

Present tense, Singular, Utinam	Amer, eris vel ere, etur. Pl. Utin. emur, emini, entur. } Docer, aris vel are, atur. Pl. Uti. amur, amini, amuntur. } Legar, } Audiar, }
---------------------------------	--

K 2

Preterim-

Preterimperfect tense, Sing. Utinam	{ Amarer, Docerer, Legerer, Audirer,	Would God I were loved.	
		reris vel rere, retur. Pl. Uci. remur, re- (mini, remini)	
Preterperfect tense, Sing. Utinam	{ Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus,	I pray God I have been loved.	
		sim vel fuerim, tus sis vel fueris, tus si vel fuerit. Plural. Utinam, ti simus vel fuerimus, ti sis vel fueritis, ti sit vel fuerint.	
Preterpluperfect tense, Sing. Utinam	{ Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus,	Would God I had been loved.	
		essem vel fuisset, tus esses vel fuisset, tus esset vel fuisset. Plural. Utinam, ti essemus vel fuisset, ti essetis vel fuissetis, ti essent vel fuissent.	
Future tense, Sing. Utinam	{ Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus,	God grant I be loved hereafter.	
		ero vel fuero, eris vel fueris, tus e- ri vel fuerit. Plural. Utinam, ti erimus vel fuerimus, ti eritis vel fueritis, ti erunt vel fuerint.	

Potential Mood.

Present tense, Sin- gular.	{ Amer, eris vel ere, eatur. Pl. emur, emini, entur. Docer, eris vel ere, eatur. Pl. amur, amini, antur. Legar, eris vel ere, eatur. Pl. amur, amini, antur. Audiar, eris vel ere, eatur. Pl. amur, amini, antur.	I may or can be loved.	
Preterimperfect tense, Singular.	{ Amarer, Docerer, Legerer, Audirer,	I would, should, or ought to be loved.	
		reris vel rere, retur. Pl. remur, remini, re- (mini, remini)	
Preterperfect tense, Singular.	{ Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus,	I would, should, or ought to have been loved.	
		sim vel fuissim, tus sis vel fueris, tus si vel fuerit. Pl. ti simus vel fuerimus, ti sis vel fueritis, ti sint vel fue- rint.	
Preterpluperfect tense, Singular.	{ Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus,	I would, should, or ought to have been loved.	
		essem vel fuisset, tus esses vel fuisset, tus esset vel fuisset. Pl. ti essemus vel fuisset, ti essetis vel fuissetis, ti essent vel fuissent.	
Future tense, Singular.	{ Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus,	I may or can be loved hereafter.	
		ero vel fuero, tus eris vel fueris, tus e- ri vel fuerit. Pl. ti erimus vel fue- rimus, ti eritis vel fueritis, ti erunt vel fuerint.	

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mood.

		When I am loved.	
Present tense, Singular, Cum	{ Amer, eris vel ere, eatur. Pl. Cum, emur, emini, entur. Docer, eris vel ere, eatur. Pl. cum amur, amini, antur. Legar, eris vel ere, eatur. Pl. cum amur, amini, antur. Audiar, eris vel ere, eatur. Pl. cum amur, amini, antur.		
Preterimperfect tense, Sing. Cum	{ Amarer, Docerer, Legerer, Audirer,	When I was loved.	
		reris vel rere, retur. Pl. Cum remur, remi- (ni, remur).	
Preterperfect tense, Sing. Cum	{ Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus,	When I have been loved.	
		sim vel fuerim, sis vel fueris, sit vel fue- rit. Pl. Cum ti simus vel fuerimus, ti sis vel fueritis, ti sint vel fue- rint.	
Preterpluperfect tense, Sing. Cum	{ Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus,	When I had been loved.	
		essem vel fuisset, tus esses vel fuisset, tus esset vel fuisset. Pl. Cum ti essemus vel fuisset, ti essetis vel fuissetis, ti essent vel fuissent.	
Future tense, Sing. Cum	{ Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus,	When I shall or will be loved.	
		ero vel fuero, tus eris vel fueris, tus e- rit vel fuerit. Pl. Cum ti erimus vel fuerimus, ti eritis vel fueritis, ti erint vel fuerint.	

Infinitive Mood.

Present, and Preter- imperfect tense,	{ Amari, Doceri, Legi, Audiri,	{ To be To be To be To be	{ Loved. Taught. Read. Heard.
Preterperfect and Preter- pluperfect tense,	{ Amatum esse vel fuisse, Doctum esse vel fuisse, Lectum esse vel fuisse, Auditum esse vel fuisse,	{ To have To have To have To have	{ had been loved. had been taught. had been read. had been heard.
Future tense,	{ Amatum iri vel amandum esse, Doctum iri vel docendum esse, Lectum iri vel legendum esse, Auditum iri vel audiendum esse,	{ to be to be to be to be	{ loved taught read heard
A Participle of the Preterperfect tense,	{ Amatus, loved. Doctus, taught. Lectus, read. Auditus, heard.	{ To be To be To be To be	{ loved taught read heard

A Participle of the Future in dus, } Amandus, } To be } loved.
 } Docendus, } taught.
 } Legendus, } read.
 } Audiendus, } heard.

Of certain Verbs going out of Rule, which are declined and formed in manner following.

Possim, potes, potui, posse, potens : **To may, or can, or, to be able.**

Volo, vis, volui, velle, volendi, volendo, volendum ; Supinis careo, lens : **To will, or to be willing.**

Nolo, non vis, nolui, nolle : nolendi, nolendo, nolendum ; Supinis careo, lens : **To will, or to be unwilling.**

Malo, mavis, malui, malle : malendi, malendo, malendum ; Supinis careo, lens : **To have rather, or, to be more willing.**

Edo, edis vel es, edi, edere vel esse : edendi, edendo, edendum : esum, vel estum estu, edens, esurus, vel esturus : **To eat.**

Fio, fis, factus sum vel fui, fieri : factus, faciendus : **To be made, or Done.**

Pero, fers, tuli, ferre : ferendi, ferendo, ferendum : latum, laui : faciat, laturus : **To beate or suffer.**

Feror, ferris vel ferre, laus sum vel fui, ferri : laus, ferendus : **To be borne or suffered.**

Indicative Mood.

I may or can, or am able.

Present tense, Sing.	Possim, potes, potest.	Pluraliter.	Possimus, potestis, possunt.
	Volo, vis, vult.		Volumus, vultis, volunt.
	Nolo, non vis, non vult.		Nolumus, non vultis, nolunt.
	Malo, mavis, mavult.		Malumus, mavultis, malunt.
	Edo, edis vel es, edit vel est.		Edimus, editis vel estis edunt.
Present tense, Sing.	Fio, fis, fit.	Pluraliter.	Firmus, fitis, fiunt.
	Feror, fers, fert.		Ferimus, ferris, ferunt.
Preterimperfect tense, Singular.	Poteram, Volebam, Nolebam, Malebam, Fiebam, Ferebam.	Pluraliter.	Potueram, Volebam, Nolebam, Malebam, Fiebam, Ferebam.
	Potui, Volui, Nolui, Maleui, Fieui, Fereui.		Potui, Volui, Nolui, Maleui, Fieui, Fereui.

I was able.

Preterimperfect tense, Singular.	Poteram, Volebam, Nolebam, Malebam, Fiebam, Ferebam.	Pluraliter.	Potueram, Volebam, Nolebam, Malebam, Fiebam, Ferebam.
	Potui, Volui, Nolui, Maleui, Fieui, Fereui.		Potui, Volui, Nolui, Maleui, Fieui, Fereui.

Preterimperfect

I have been able.
 Potui, Malui, Edii, it. Plural. imus, istis, erant vel ere.
 Volui, Edii, Tuli, sum vel fui, es vel fuisti, est vel fuit. Plur. ti fueras vel fuimus, ti estis vel fuistis, ti fuisti fueram vel fuere.

I had been able.
 Potueram, Malueram, Edideram, Tuleram, Feceram, ras, ras. Plur. ramus, ratis, ratis.
 Volueram, Nolueram, Feceram vel fueram, tus eras vel fueras, tus erat vel fuerat. Plural. ti eramus vel fueramus, ti eratis vel fueratis, ti erant vel fuerant.

I shall or will be able.
 Potero, poteris, poterit. Plur. erimus, eritis, erunt.
 Volam, Edam, Nolum, Fiam, Malam, Feram, es, et. Plur. eris, eris, eris.
 Ferat, ferris vel ferris, ratur. Plural. remur, remini, remur.
 Possim, Volo, Malo, habet no Imperative Mood.

Imperative Mood.

Be thou unwilling. Be ye unwilling. or will ye.

Present tense, Singular.	Noli, nolito.	Pluraliter.	Nolite, nolite.
	Es, esto, ede, edico.		Edite, edite, editore.
	Fito u, fito.		Pl. fiamus, fitore.
	Fer, fertor.		Pl. feramus, fertore.
	Ferre, fertor.		Pl. feramur, ferimur.

Optative Mood.

God grant I be able.
 Possim, Nolim, Velim, Malim, is, it. Plural. Uinam imus, itis, ita.
 Edam, Fiam, Feram, as, at. Plur. Uinam amus, atis, ant.
 Ferat, raris vel rare, ratur. Plur. Uinam ramur, ramini, ratur.
Would God I were able.
 Possim, Ederem, Vellem, Nollem, Fierem, es, et. Plur. Uinam eris, eris, eris.
 Mallem, Ferrem, Ferrer, ferris vel ferris, ratur. Pl. Uinam remur, remini, remur.

Preter-

Singulariter. Optative. Utinam. Pluraliter.

God grant I love.	Present tense.
em es et.	emus eis ent.
eam	
am as at.	amus atis ant.
iam,	
Would God I loved.	Preterimperfect tense.
rem res ret.	remus retis rent.
I pray God I have loved.	Preterperfect tense.
rim ris rit.	rimus ritis rint.
Would God I had loved.	Preterpluperfect tense.
issens issent.	issimus issentis issent.
God grant I love hereafter.	Future tense.
to ris rit.	rimus ritis rint.

The Potentiall and Subjunctive Moods both in the Active and Passive voices, and also in all Verbs, Neuter, Deponent, and Commune, are in all Tenses like unto the Optative.

The Potentiall Mood is that, whereby we signifie, that a thing may, would, or ought to be done: and hath neither Verb nor Conjunction.

The Subjunctive Mood hath alwayes some Conjunction joyned with it: as, Si, if: Ut, that: Quum, whereas: Cum, when: &c.

In English, these Moods are thus expressed.

Potentiall Mood.	Infinitive Mood.
I may or can love.	Present tense, and Preterimperfect.
I might or could love.	a } to love.
I might, would, should, or ought to have loved.	e } to teach.
I might, would, should, or ought to have loved.	i } to read.
I might, would, should, or ought to have loved.	re } to hear.
I may or can love hereafter.	Preterperf. and Preterpluperf. tense.
	to have or had loved.
	to have or had taught.
	to have or had read.
	to have or had heard.
	Future tense.
	to love hereafter.
	to teach hereafter.
	to read hereafter.
	to hear hereafter.

Active, Neuter, Deponent, and Commune: Gerunds; Di, of loving: Do, in loving: Dum, to love.

Participles, Present tense, of Active and Neuter.	
Ans, } loving.	urus, to love, or about to love.
ens, } A Participle in rus	a,
iens, }	um,

Particip

Participles of Deponent and Commune.

Present tense, {	ans,	Preter tense, {	us,
	ens,		a,
	iens,		um,

Future in rus { urus, } Verbs Commune, have also a Participle of the Future tense in dus. { a, um.

Passive, Deponent, and Commune.**Singulariter. Indicative. Pluraliter.**

Present tense, I am loved.	a } an }
or, { ris, } tur.	e } mur, mini }
	i } un }
	i } iur.
Preterimperfect tense, I was loved.	
a } batis, } batur.	
e } ber } bare, } batur.	
i } batur.	
Preterperfect tense, I have bin loved.	i } sumus, estis, sunt.
us } sum, es, est.	
is } fui, isti, it.	i } fuimus, istis, erunt, &c.
Preterpluperf. I had been loved.	
us } eram, eras, erat.	i } eramus, eratis, erant.
is } fueram, fueras, fuerat.	i } fueramus, fueratis, fuerant.
Future, I shall or will be loved.	
a } bor, } beris, } bitur.	
e } bor, } bare, } batur.	
i } bor, } batur.	
or } eris, } etur.	
is } ere, } etur.	

Thou loved. Imperative. Present tense.

a } e }	e } a }
e } re }	e } mar, } mini }
i } re }	e } i }
i } re }	e } i }
	e } an }
	e } iur, }

Optative. Utinam.

Present tense.	
God grant I be loved.	
Amer, } eris vel }	etur.
	etur, emini, etur.

ar, $\begin{cases} \text{aris vel} \\ \text{are,} \end{cases}$ $\begin{cases} \text{atur.} \\ \text{Preterperfect tense.} \end{cases}$	amur, amini, antur.
Would God I were loved.	
er, $\begin{cases} \text{eris,} \\ \text{ere,} \end{cases}$ $\begin{cases} \text{eretur.} \\ \text{Preterperfect tense.} \end{cases}$	remur, remini, rentur.
I pray God I have been loved.	
us $\begin{cases} \text{sum vel sis,} \\ \text{rim, ris, rit.} \end{cases}$ $\begin{cases} \text{Preterperfect tense.} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{simus, sitis, sint.} \\ \text{rimus, ritus, rint.} \end{cases}$
Would God I had been loved.	
us $\begin{cases} \text{essem vel eses,} \\ \text{uissem, uisses, fuisset.} \end{cases}$ $\begin{cases} \text{Preterperfect tense.} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{essemus, essetis, essent.} \\ \text{uissemus, uissetis, fuissent.} \end{cases}$
God grant I be loved hereafter.	
us $\begin{cases} \text{ero vel eris,} \\ \text{fuero, fueris, fuerit.} \end{cases}$ $\begin{cases} \text{Future tense.} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{erimus, eritis, erunt.} \\ \text{fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.} \end{cases}$

Potential Mood.

Both these Moods are all one in use, with the Optative; as before.

Subjunctive Mood.

I may or can be loved.	When I am loved.
I would, should, or ought to be loved.	When I was loved.
I would, should, or ought to have been loved.	When I have been loved.
I would, should, or ought to had been loved.	When I had been loved.
I may or can be loved hereafter.	When I shall or will be loved.

Infinitive Mood.

Present, and Preterperfect tense.	Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect tense.	Future tense.
$\begin{cases} \text{a} \\ \text{i} \\ \text{iri} \end{cases}$ $\begin{cases} \text{ris,} \\ \text{to be loved.} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{to have or had been loved.} \\ \text{um esse vel fuisset.} \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} \text{To be loved hereafter.} \\ \text{um iri vel digni.} \end{cases}$

Participles of the Preterperfect tense.	$\begin{cases} \text{t} \\ \text{x} \end{cases}$ $\begin{cases} \text{us} \\ \text{a} \\ \text{um} \end{cases}$	Participles of the Future tense.	$\begin{cases} \text{andus.} \\ \text{endus.} \\ \text{icodus.} \end{cases}$
---	---	----------------------------------	--

Of Gerunds, Supines, and Participles, of Verbs Dependent and Commune, see before.

Most plaine briefe and profitable Rules of WILLIAM LILIE, concerning the Preterperfect tenses and Supines of the Verbs. And first of the common Preterperfect tense of simple Verbs, of the first Conjugation.

As in the Present tense is *avi* in the Preterperfect tense; *as, No, nas, navi, nare, natum, to swimme*: *Vocito, vocitas, navit, vocito, vocitatum, to call often*: *Except Lavo, lavas, lavi, lavare, lotum lotum and lavatum, to wash*: *Juvo, juvas, juvi, juvare, jutum to helpe*: *Nexo, nexas, nexui, nexare, nexum, to knit*: *Seco, secas, secui, secare, secum, to cut*: *Neco, necas, necui, necare, necum, to kill*: *Mico, micas, micui, micare, to shine often, to glister*: *Plico, plicas, plicui, plicare, plicatum, or plicum, to fold or plicat*: *Frico, fricas, fricui, or fricavi, fricare, frictum, to fold or plicat*: *Domo, domas, domui, or domavi, domare, domum, or domatum, to tame*: *Tono, tonas, tonui, tonare, tonitum, domum, or domatum, to tame*: *Sono, sonas, sonui, sonare, sonum, to sound*: *Sono, sonas, sonui, sonare, sonum, to sound*: *Crepeo, crepas, crepui, crepare, crepitum, to crack*: *Veto, vetas, vetui, or vetavi, vetare, vetitum, or vetatum, to forbid*: *Cubo, cubas, cubui, cubare, cubitum, to lie downe*: all which do seldome end in *avi*. *Do, das, dedi, dare, darum, to give*: *Sto, stas, steti, stare, statum, to stand*.

The common Preterperfect tense of Verbs of the second Conjugation.

Es, in the Present tense, is *ui* in the Preterperfect tense: *as, Nigreo, nigres, nigrui, nigrere, to wax black*: *Except, Jubeo, jubes, jussi, jubere, jussam, to command*: *Sorbeo, sorbes, sorbi, and sorpsi, sorbere, sorptum, to sup up*: *Mulceo, mulces, mulsi, mulcere, mulsum, to allwage*: *Luceo, lucet, luxi, lucere, to shine*: *Sedeo, sedes, sedi, sedere, sedum, to sit*: *Video, vides, vidi, videre, visum, to see*: *Prandeo, prandes, prandi, or pransum sum vel sui, prandere, to dine*: *Strideo, strides, stridi, stridere, to make a noise or whizzing*. These four do double the first syllable: *as, Pendeo, pendes, pependi, pendere, pensum, to hang, or to be hanging*: *Mordeo, mordet, momordi, mordere, mortum, to bite*: *Spondeo, spondet, spondi, spondere, sponsum, to promise*: *Tondeo, tondes, totondi, tondere, tonsum, to clip or sheare, to reape, or mowe*: *Suadeo, suadet, suasi, suadere, suasum, to counsell*: *Rideo, rides, risi, ridere, risum, to laugh*: *Ardeo, ardes, arsi, ardere, arsum, to burne, or to be hot*.

Geo, in the Present tense, having *i* or *r* before it, is turned into *u* in the Preterperfect tense: *as, Urgeo, urges, urxi, urgere, ursum, to urge*: *Mulgeo, mulges, mulsi, or mulxi, mulgere, mulsum, or mulxum, to milke*: *Frigeo, friget, frixi, frigere, to be cold*: *Lugeo, luges, luxi, lugere, luctum, to lament*: *Augreo, auget, auxi, augere, auxum, to increase*.

As, in the Present tense, is *avi* in the Preterperfect tense: *as, No nas, navi, nare, natum, to swimme*: *Vocito, vocitas, navit, vocito, vocitatum, to call often*: *Except Lavo, lavas, lavi, lavare, lotum lotum and lavatum, to wash*: *Juvo, juvas, juvi, juvare, jutum to helpe*: *Nexo, nexas, nexui, nexare, nexum, to knit*: *Seco, secas, secui, secare, secum, to cut*: *Neco, necas, necui, necare, necum, to kill*: *Mico, micas, micui, micare, to shine often, to glister*: *Plico, plicas, plicui, plicare, plicatum, or plicum, to fold or plicat*: *Frico, fricas, fricui, or fricavi, fricare, frictum, to fold or plicat*: *Domo, domas, domui, or domavi, domare, domum, or domatum, to tame*: *Tono, tonas, tonui, tonare, tonitum, domum, or domatum, to tame*: *Sono, sonas, sonui, sonare, sonum, to sound*: *Sono, sonas, sonui, sonare, sonum, to sound*: *Crepeo, crepas, crepui, crepare, crepitum, to crack*: *Veto, vetas, vetui, or vetavi, vetare, vetitum, or vetatum, to forbid*: *Cubo, cubas, cubui, cubare, cubitum, to lie downe*: all which do seldome end in *avi*. *Do, das, dedi, dare, darum, to give*: *Sto, stas, steti, stare, statum, to stand*.

Es is *ui* as *Nigreo, nigres, nigrui, nigrere, to wax black*: *Except, Jubeo, jubes, jussi, jubere, jussam, to command*: *Sorbeo, sorbes, sorbi, and sorpsi, sorbere, sorptum, to sup up*: *Mulceo, mulces, mulsi, mulcere, mulsum, to allwage*: *Luceo, lucet, luxi, lucere, to shine*: *Sedeo, sedes, sedi, sedere, sedum, to sit*: *Video, vides, vidi, videre, visum, to see*: *Prandeo, prandes, prandi, or pransum sum vel sui, prandere, to dine*: *Strideo, strides, stridi, stridere, to make a noise or whizzing*. These four do double the first syllable: *as, Pendeo, pendes, pependi, pendere, pensum, to hang, or to be hanging*: *Mordeo, mordet, momordi, mordere, mortum, to bite*: *Spondeo, spondet, spondi, spondere, sponsum, to promise*: *Tondeo, tondes, totondi, tondere, tonsum, to clip or sheare, to reape, or mowe*: *Suadeo, suadet, suasi, suadere, suasum, to counsell*: *Rideo, rides, risi, ridere, risum, to laugh*: *Ardeo, ardes, arsi, ardere, arsum, to burne, or to be hot*.

Pico,

These Simple Verbs, being compounded, do turn the first Vowel of the Present, and of the Preterperfect tense, into e: as, *Dampno, lacto, sacro, fulla, arcto, tracto, fatigor, pario, carpō, patro, scando, spargo, & pario*. The two Compounds of which *Pario*, have *peri*: as, *Comperio, & reperio*: but the other, as, *Aperio, & operio*, have *pe-*

These two Compounds of *P. sco*, *pau*; namely, *Com-p. sco*, & *dis. sco*, have *p. sci*: but the others, as, *Epi-sco*, do follow the Simple Verb.

These Verbs being compounded, do change the first vowel into i: namely, *Haber*, *habeo*, *salvo*, *salvatus*, *cadere*, *cado*, *lede*, *lento*, *pingo*, *having* *pigo*, *cano*, *guro* *cado*, *having* *cido*, *tango*, *agro*, *teno*, *taceo*, & *rapio*: as, *Rapio*, *rapui*, *ripio*, *eripui*.

The Compounds
of Cino, have viz;
as, *Concino, concin-*
nui

So of *Placeo*, comes
by composition,
displaceo: but *com-
placeo*, & *perplaceo*,
follow the Simple
Verb.

These four Compounds of Panze: that is, *Dejanze*,

gere, oppadum, to fasten, or joyn unto, to plant about : Circumpango, circumpangis, circumpangi, circumpangere, circumpadum, to fasten about with earth : and, Repango, repangis, reperi, repangere, repadum, to loose, or disjoyn.

These four Compounds, of Manco, manes, mansi, manere, mansum, to carry for; have minui: namely, Praeminco, prae-minis, prae-minui, to excell others: Eminco, emines, eminui, eminere, to appear before others, to passe others: Prominco, promines, prominui, prominere, to hang out in sight: and, Imminco, immines, imminui, imminere, to hang over. But the rest do follow the simple Verb.

The Compounds of Scalpo, scalpis, scalpis, scalpere, scalpum, to claw, or scratch, of Calco, calcas, calcavi, calcare, calcatum, to tread upon; and of Salto, saltas, saltavi, saltare, saltatum, to leap, or dance do turn a into u; as, Exculpo, exculpis, exculpis, exculperis, exculpum, to turn a into u; as, Inculco, inculcas, inculcavi, inculcare, inculcatum, to repeat often: and, Refulto, refultas, refultavi, refultare, refultatam, to re- sound.

The Compounds of Clau^{do}, claudis, clausi, cludere, clausum, to shut; of Quat^o, quat^{is}, quassⁱ, quere, quassum, to shake; and of Lavo^o, lav^{is}, lavⁱ, lavare, lotum, lautum, & lavatum, to wash, no reject : as, of Clau^{do}, occludo, occludis, ocludi, occludere, occlusum, to shut fast. Excludo, excludis, excludi, excludere, exclusum, to shut out; of Quat^o, percutio, percutis, perculi, percutere, percussum, to smite; Excuto, excutis, excutis, excutere, excussum, to smite out : and of Lavo^o, proluo, proluⁱ, proluⁱ, proluere, proslum, all to wash; Diluo, diluis, dilui, diluere, dilu^m, to purge with washing.

Verbs changing the first Vowell everywhere into *i*,
except in the Preterperfect tense.

These Verbs being compounded, do alwayes change the first
Howell of the Present tense into i; but neuer of the Preter
perfect tense: Ago, agis, agit, agere, adum; to Do: Emo, enis, emi, emere,
empum; to buy: Sedeo, sedes, sedi, sedere, sessum; to sit: Rego, regis, rexi,
regere, redum; to rule: Frango, frangis, fregi, frangere, fractum; to break:
Capio, capis, cepi, capere, captum; to take: Jacio, jacis, jeci, jacere, jac-
tum; to cast: Lateo, lares, laui, latere, latum; to be hidden: Lacio, la-
cis, laci; & laui, lacere, lectum, & lacticum; to allure: Specio, specis,
spexi, specere, speditum; to behold: And, Pemo, premis, pexi, peme-
pressum; to pesse: as, Frango, refingo, refingis, refeci, refingere, re-
fractum; to break open: and, Capio, incipio, incipis, incepti, incipere,
inceptum; to begin. But, Perago, peragis, peregi, peragere, peractum; to
finish: Satago, satagis, fategi, satagere; to be buſie or to do with speed
to endeavour: and, Cueno, cœnis, cucini, cucinare, cœnium; to
buy with other: do follow the simple Verbs.

And of Ago, dego, degis, hath degi, degere, to live: and, Cogo, cogis, hath coegi, coagere, coaum, to compell, or gather together. So also, of Rego, petgo, pergis, hath perexi, peigere, perexaum, to go forward: and, Surgo, surgeis, hath surrexi, urgere, surrexum, to arise: the middle Syllable of the Present tense being taken away.

Facio, facis, feci, facere, factum, to DO ; unrich nothing, unless it

oppango, circum-
pango, & repango,
do keep a itill.

These four Com-
pounds of *Maneo*,
manſe, have *mini*,
namely, *Pramiſeo*,
emineo, *promineo*,
& *inimino*. But
the reſt do follow
the Simple Verb.
The Compounds
of *Scalpo*, *calco ſal-*
to, do turn *a* into
u: as, *Exculpo*, *in-*
culco & *reſulto*.

The Compounds
of *Claudo*, *quatio*,
& *lavo*, do reject
a: as, of *Claudo*,
excludo, excludo; of
quatio, percutio, ex-
cutio; and of *lavo*,
proluo, diluo.

These Verbs, *Agro, emio, sedeo, rego, frango, capio: vivo, lateo, specio, & premo*, do ever in composition, change the first vowel of the Present tense into *z*; but never of the Preterperit. tense: as, *Frango, refingo, rego, refrego, & capio, incipio, accipio*. But *Perigo, & siccigo*, do follow the simple Verbs. And of *Agro, dago, haurio, deigo, & cogo, cogito*. So all of *rego, perigo*, hath *perrexi, & surge, surrexi*, the middle syllable of the middle syllable of the Present tense, being taken away.

be compounded with a Preposition: as, *Offacio, olfacio, olfecio, olfacere, olfactum, to smell: Calfacio, calfacio, calfecio, calfacere, calfactum, to make hot: and, Inficio, inficio, infeci, inficere, infectum, to infect, & to die with colours.*

*Lego, lego, legi, legere, lectum, to read; being compounded with se, per, pra, sub & trans, keepeth the vowel of the Present tense: but otherwise it is turned into i. of which, these three only have the i. in the Preterperfect tense, *lexi*; namely, *Intelligo, intelligis, intellexi, intellegere, intellegum, to understand: Diligo, diligis, dilexi, diligere, dilectum, to love: and, Negligo, negligis, neglexi, negligere, neglectum, to neglect: and all the rest legi.**

Of the Supines of Simple Verbs.

Bi. The Supines are formed of the Preterperfect tenses, & followeth. *Bi, in the Preterperfect tense, is sum, in the Supine: as, Bibo, bibis, bibi, bibere, bibitum, to drink.*

Ci. Di. *Ci is sum: as, Vinco, vincis, vici, vincere, victum, to overcome: Ico, icis, ici, icere, ictum, to smite: Facio, facis, feci, facere, factum, to do: Jacio, jacies, jeci, jacere, jactum, to cast. Di is sum: as, Video, vides, vidi, videre, visum, to see. Some do double the letter c: as, Pando, pandis, pandi, pandere, passum, to open: Sedo, sedes, sedis, sedere, sessum, to sit: Scindo, scindis, scidi, scindere, scissum, to cut: Fodio, fodis, fodi, fodere, fossum, to dig: Findo, findis, fidi, findere, fissum, to cleave.*

Here also is to be noted, that the first Syllable, which is doubled in the Preterperfect tense, is not doubled in the Supine: as, *Tondeo, tondes, tonendi, tondere, tonsum, to clip: Heat: Cado, cadis, cecidi, cadere, casum, to beat: Cado, cadis, cecidi, cadere, casum, to fall: Tendo, tendis, tetendi, tendere, tensum, & tentum, to bend: Tundo, tundis, tundi, tundere, tunsium, to knock: Pado, pedis, pepedi, pedere, pedisum, to fart: and, Do, das, dedi, dare, datum, to give.*

Gi. *Gi is sum: as, Lego, legis, legi, legere, lectum, to read: Pango, pangis, pegi, to join: and, pepigi, to bargain: pango, pangis, pangi, to break: Frango, frangis, fregi, frangere, fractum, to break: Tango, tangis, tetigi, tangere, tactum, to touch: Ago, agis, egi, agere, actum, to do: Pungo, pungis, pupugi, pungere, punctum, to prick: and, Fugio, fugis, fugi, fugere, fugitum, to flee.*

Li. *Li is sum: as, Sallo, salis, salii, fallere, falsum, to scold with salt: Pello, pellis, pepuli, pellere, pulsium, to drive out: Cello, cellis, ceculi, cellere, culsum, to smite, or break: Fallo, fallis, sefelli, fallere, falsum, to deceive: Vello, vellis, velli, vellere, vulsum, to pluck up: and, Fero, feris, tuli, ferre, latum, to bear, or suffer.*

Mi, ni. *Mi, ni, pi, qui, are tum: as, Emo, emis, emi, emere, emptum, to buy: Venio, venis, veni, venire, ventum, to come: Cano, canis, cecini, canere, cantum, to sing: Capió, capis, cepi, capere, captum, to take: Capió, capis, cepi, capere, captum, to begin: Rumpo,*

rumpe, rumpis, rumpere, ruptum, to break: Linquo, linquis, liqui, linquere, liqum, to leave.

rumpe, rumpis, rumpere, ruptum, to break: Linquo, linquis, liqui, linquere, liqum, to leave.

Ri. *Ri is sum: as, Verro, veris, verri, verrere, verum, to sweep, or brush: but Pario, paris, peperit, parere, partum, to bring forth young.*

Si. *Si is sum: as, Viso, visis, visi, videre, visum, to goe to see: Mitto, mittis, misi, mittere, hactum, the letter t being doubled, to send: But Fulcio, fulcis, fulsi, fulcire, hactum, to underprop: Haurio, hauris, hauri, haurire, hactum, to draw: Sarcio, sarcis, sarcis, sarcire, sarcum, to patch: Farcio, farcis, farci, sarcire, sarcum, to stuff: Uro, uris, uxi, urere, ustum, to burne: Gero, geris, gessi, gerere, gestum, to beare: Torqueo, torques, torxi, torquere, ortum, and tortum, to twist: and Indulgeo, indulges, indulxi, indulgere, indultum and indultum, to let much by, or to make too much of one.*

Pi. *Pi is sum: as, Scribo, scribis, scripsi, scribere, scriptum, to write: Except Cambio, cambis, campsi, cambere, which hath campsum, to exchange.*

Ti. *Ti is sum: as, Stas, stas, steti, stare, to stand: and Sisto, sistis, stiti, sistere, to make to stand, habere statum: except Verito, veritis, verti, vertere, which hath veritum to turne.*

Vi. *Vi is sum: as, Flo, flas, flavi, flare, flatum, to blow: Except Pasco, pascis, pavi, pascere, pastum, to feed: Lavo, lavas, lavi, lavare, lotum, lautum & lavatum, to wash: Poto, potas, potavi, potare, potum & potatum, to drink: Favco, faves, favi, favere, factum, to favour: Caveo, caves, cavi, cavere, cautum, to beware: Sero, seris, sevi, serere, satum, to sow: Lino, linis, lini, livi & sevi, linere, litum, to dabble, or smear over: Solvo, solvis, solvi, solvere, solutum, to loose: Volvo, volvis, volvi,olvere, volutum, to rotate: Singultio, singultis, singultivi, singultire, singultum, to sob: Vaneo, vaneis, vანი, vāniri, vāniri, vāniri, to be sold: and Sepelio, sepelias, sepelivi, sepelire, sepulchrum, to bury.*

Ui. *Ui is sum: as, Domo, domas, domui, domare, domitum, to tame. Except Verbis in uo, which turne ui into utum: as, Exuo, exuis, exui, exuere, exutum, to put off, or away: But Ruor, ruis, rui, ruere, hactum, to rush, or fall: Seco, secas, fecui, secare, factum, to cut: Neco, necas, necui, necare, nedum, to kill: Frico, fricas, fricui, fricare, frictum, to rub: Misco, misces, miscui, miscere, mistum, to mingle: Amicio, amicis, amicui, amicare, amictum, to cloath: Torreo, torres, torui, torere, tostum, to roast: Doceo, doceo, docui, docere, doctum, to teach: Teneo, tenes, tenui, tenere, tentum, to hold: Consulo, consulis, consului, consulere, consulum, to ask counsel: Alo, alis, alui, alere, alitum, & alitum, to nourish: Salio, salis, salui, salire, saltum, to scape: Colo, colis, colui, colere, cultum, to worship: Occulo, occulis, oculus, occulere, occultum, to hide close: Pingo, pingis, pinxi, pingere, pictum, to paint: Rapio, rapis, rapui, rapere, raptum, to snatch: Sero, seris, serui, serere, fertum, to approach, or put to: and Texo, texis, texui, texere, textum,*

But Rui of ruo, hactum, secui, sectum, necui, nectum, fricui, frictum, miscui, mistum, amicui, amictum, torui, tostum, docui, doctum, tenui, tentum, consului, consulum, alui, alitum, colui, cultum, & colui, cultum, pinxi, pictum, rapui, raptum, ol sero, fertui, fertum, & texui, textum.

Of Verbs having a double Preterperfect tense:

These Verbs have the Preterperfect tense of the Active and Passive voice both: *Amo, amavi, et amatus sum. Furo, furavi, et juratus sum. Pateo, patexi, et patius sum. Titubo, titubavi, et titubatus sum. Careo, carui & cassus. Prædo, prædavi, et prædatus sum. Pateo, patius, et passus. Placeo, placui, et placatus sum. Suffeo, suffexi, et suffusus. Veneo, to be sold, venivi, et venditus. Nubo, nupsi, or nupta. Mater, tæditi, et p-*

These Verbs have the Preterperfect Tense of the Active and Passive voice both: as, *Ceno, cenas, cenavi, o cenatus sum vel fui, cenare, cenatum, to sup:* *Juro, juras, juravi, o juratus sum vel fui, jurare, juratum, to swear:* *Poto, potas, potavi, o potus sum vel fui, potare, potum, to drink:* *Ticubo, ticubas, ticubavi, and ticubatus sum vel fui, ticubare, ticubatum, to stimulate:* *Careo, cares, carui, o cassus sum vel fui, carere, carium, & cassum, to want:* *Prandeo, prandēs, prandi, and pransus sum vel fui, prandere, prantium, to dine:* *Patco, patres, patiti, o passus sum vel fui, patere, passum, to lie open:* *Placeo, places, placui, & placius sum vel fui, placere, placitum, to please:* *Suesco, suefeci, fucus, and suetus sum vel fui suefere, suetum, to accustom:* *Venio, venis, venivi, and venditus sum vel fui, venire, venum, for vendor to be sold:* *Nubo, nubis, nupsi, and nupta sum vel fui, nubere, nuprum, to be married to a man:* *Mereor, mereris vel merere, merui, o meritis sum vel fui, mereri, meritum, to deserve:* *Libet, libebat, libuit, and libitum est vel fuit, it (thek) Liket, libebat, Libet, o licitum est vel fuit, it may, o it is lawful:* *Tæder, tædebat, tæduir, o pertæsum est vel fuit, it (thek) is Puder, pudebat, puduit, o puditum est vel fuit, it (thek) is Piger, pigebat, piguit, o pigitum est vel fuit, it (thek) is.*

A Verb Neuter
Passive is thus formed in the Preter-perfect tense.
*Guido, gavisus sum vel fui. Fido-
fusus. Audeo, ausus.
Fio, factus. Soleo,
solitus, & Mæreo,
mæsus. But with
Phorai, mæsus is a
Noun.*

Of the Preterperfect tenses of Neuter Passives.

A Verb Neuter Passive doth thus forme his Interpreter
tense: Gaudes, gaudes, gavisus sum vel fui, gaudere, gavisum,
to be glad: Fidis, fidis, fensus sum vel fui, fidere, fensum, to trust: Audeo, au-
des, ausus sum vel fui, audere, ausum, to be bold: Fio, sis, factus sum vel
fui, fieri, to be made or done: Soleo, soles, solitus sum vel fui, solere,
solutum, to be wont: Mæreo, mæres, mæstus sum vel fui, mærerem,
mestum, to be sad, or to mourne: But Phocas judgeth mæstus, sepius
sull, to be a Poone.

Of Verbs which do borrow their Preterperfect tense
of other Verbs.

Some Verbs do receive their Preterperfect tense of others: as, a Verb Inceptive, put for the Primitive, hath the Preterperfect tense of his Primitive: as, *Tepeſco* hath *ſepeſi*, of *tepeo*: *Ferveſco* *ſerveſi*, of *ſerveo*:

Some Verbs doe receive the Preterperfect tense from other Verbs: as, a Verb inceptive ending in *eo*, standing for the Primitive Verb, taketh the Preterperfect tense of the same Primitive Verb: as, *Tepefco*, *tepefciſ*, *tepu*, *tepeſcere*, to begin to be luke-warme, will have his Preterperfect tense of *Tepeo*, *tepe*, *tepu*, *tepe*, to be luke-warme: and *Ferveſco*, *fervefciſ*, *fervi*, *ferveſcere*, to begin to be hot, of *Ferveo*, *ferveſ*, *fervi*, *fervere*, to be hot: *Nigreſco*, *nigreſciſ*, *nigru*, *nigreſcere*, to begin to be black: of *Nigreo*, *nig*, *nigru*, *nigre*, to be made black: *Flaveſco*, *haveſciſ*, *flavi*, *haveſcere*, to begin to be yellow, of *Flaveo*, *flaveſ*, *flavi*, *flavere*, to be yellow.

Yloto; Erubescere, erubescis, erubui, erubescere, to begin to blush; of
 rubor, rubes, rubui, rubere, to blush; of Luceo, luceo, luceui, lucecere, to
 begin to be light; of Luceo, luceo, luxi, luere, to be light; Cerno,
 cernis, vidi, cernere, visum, to behold; of Video, vide, vidi, videre, visum,
 to see; Quatio, quatis, concussi, quater, concussum, to shake, of Con-
 cuto, concutis, concussi, concutere, concussum, to shake; Ferio, feris, per-
 cuti, ferire, to strike, of Percutio, percutis, percussus, percutere, percussum,
 to strike; Meo, meis, minxi, mium, to yll; of Mingo, mingis,
 mui, mingere, mium, to yll. Sido, sidi, sedi, sidere, ssum, to pitch
 down, or alight; of Sedo, sedes, sedi, sedere, ssum, to sit; Tollo, tollis,
 seduli, tollere, sublatum, to lift up; of Suffero, suffers, sustuli, sufferere, sub-
 latum, to bear; Sum, es, vixi, esse, to be; of Fuo, fuisti, fui, fuere, sumum, to
 be; Per, fers, tuli, ferre, laudum, to bear; of Tulo, tulus, tuli, tulere, to bear;
 sisto, sistis, sidi, sistere, statum, to stand; of Sto, stas, steti, stare, statum, to
 stand; Furo, furis, insanivi, furere, to be made; of Insano, insanus, insa-
 nisi, insanire, insanitum, to be mad; Vefcor, vefceris, vel vefcere, passus
 sum vel fui, vefci, to eat, of Pascor, pasceris, vel pascere, passus sum vel
 fui, pasci, to be fed; Medeor, mederis vel medere, medicatus sum vel
 fui, mederi, to heal, of Medico, medicaris vel medicare, medicatus sum
 vel fui, medicari, to be healed; Liquor, liquaris, velliquare, liquefactus
 sum vel fui, liquari, to be melted, of Liqueo, liqueis, liquefactus sum
 vel fui, liquefieri, to be melted; and, Reminiscor, reminisceris vel re-
 miniscere, recordatus sum vel fui, reminisci, to remember, of Recordor,
 recordaris vel recordare, recordatus sum vel fui, recordari, to remember,
 or call to minde again.

OF Verbs, wanting the Preterperfect tense.

These Verbs do want the Preterperfect tense: as, *Vergo, vergis, vergere, to bend*: *Ambigo ambigis, ambigere, to compass*: *Gifico, gificis, gificare, to desire greatly*: *Fanico, fanicis, fanicere, to think*: *Polleo, polles, pollere, to be able*: *Nideco, nides, nidere, to shine*. **A**ll Verbs Inceptive: as, *Puerasco, puerascis, puerascere, to begin to be a child*: *Sylvesco, sylvelcis, sylvescere, to begin to be woody*: or bulgy: *Frutesco, frutescis, frutescere, to begin to spring into stalks, or shrubs*: *Stercileco, stercilecis, stercilecere, to begin to be barren*: *Diesco, diecis, diescere, to begin to be day*. And Verbs Passives, whose Actives want the Supines: as, *Metuor, metues, vel meture, metui, to be feared*: *Timeor, timeris, vel timere, timeri, to be feared*. With all Verbs Appellatives, except *Parturio, parturis, parturi, parturire, parturitum, to bring forth*, or to be towards labour: and, *Esurio esuris, esurivi, esurire, esurium, to hunger*. And Delectatives: as, *Micurio, micuris, micurire, to have a desire to pisse*: *Scripturio, scripturis, scripturire, to desire to write*: *Iturio, ituriris, iturire to have a desire to go*: and, *Cacaturio, cacaturis, cacaturire, to lust to go to stool*.

Verbs seldom admitting the Supine.

These Verbs seldom or never have the Supines: Lambo, lambis, lambi, lambere, to lick: Mico, micas, micul, micare, to shine with intermissions: Rudo, rudis, rudl, rudere, to bray like an ass: Scabo, scabis, Scabi, scabere, to claw: Parco, parci, peperci, parcere, to spare.

Cerno, trid, of uide-
do: Quatio, rone-
cussu, of conuicio:
Ferio, percussu, of
percussio: Meis,
mixtu, of mingo:
Sido, sedu, of Sado-
do: Tello, suffulu,
uol suffero: Sum,
fui, of suo: Fero,
tuli, of tulo: Fes-
so, signifying com-
ely to stand, Feci,
of fto: Fingo, in-
stantui, of insto-
no: Vesto, passus
sum uel fui, of
pascor: Medeor,
medicatus sum uel
fui, of medicor:
Liquor, liquefactus
sum uel fui, of Li-
quesco: and, Remed-
uiscor, recordatus
sum uel fui, of re-
cordor.

These Verbs do want the Preter-perfect tense : *Vargo, ambigo, glisco, furisco, pulso, nideo.* Also, Verbs Inceptive ; as, *Puerasco.* And Verbs Passives, whose Actives want the Supines ; as, *Mentor, timeor.* With all Verbs Meditative, except *Parturio, & esurio.*

These Verbs seldom or never have the Supines :
Lambo, mico, rudo, scato, parco, peperci,

Impersonals of
of the Active
voice.

Impersonals therefore are of two sorts: of the Active voice, and of the Passive. Impersonals of the Active voice, are three; and such like: Est, it is: Incertum, it is profitable: Refert, it is expedient: Placet, it pleaseth: Liber, it contenteth: Ponitur, it is put: Teder, it wearieth: Accidit, it falleth out: Comingit, it happeneth: Evenit, it chanceth: Expediit, it is expedient: Liqueat, it appeareth: Licet, it is lawful: Solec, it is wont: Vacat, it is superfluous: Praestat, it is better: Restat, it remaineth: Decet, it becometh: Oportet, it behooveth: Potest, it may: Juvat, it helpeth: Constat, it is evident: Conducit, it is profitable: Misceat, it mixteth: Piget, it irketh: Pudet, it shameth.

Further, there is almost no Verb Personall, which may not become Impersonall, and contrariwise. Notwithstanding some Impersonals are used sometimes personally: as, Virum placet probis, Virtue pleaseth honest men: Pecunia omnia potest, Money may do all things: Ars juvat egenos, Art helpeth the needy.

But some Impersonals do alwayes so remain: as Pudet, Ponitur, Oportet: though we may read in Terence, Quae ad solent, quae oportet signa ad salutem esse, huc omnia esse video: I see that he hath all the signes which are wont and which ought to be to health.

Impersonals be declined throughout all Moods and Tenses, in the voice of the third person Singular onely: as, Delectatur, delectatur, delectatur, delectatur, delectatur: Decet, decebat, decebit, decebit, decebit: Sudebat, sudebat, sudebat, sudebat, sudebat: Studium est vel fuit, studium erat vel fuerat, studium erit, studium erit, studium erit: It becometh not, non decessit.

Of Liqueat, it appeareth, there is no Preterperfect tense extant. Teder, it seareth, hath in the Preterperfect tense Tedit, & perit, sum est vel fuit, Miseret, & miserebit, it pitieth: habet Misericordiam, & misericordiam est vel fuit. These Preterperfect tenses also are in use: Placitum est vel fuit, of placet, it pleaseth: Libitum est vel fuit, of Liber, it contenteth: Pudicitum est vel fuit, of pudet, it shameth: Licitum est vel fuit, of licet, it is lawful: Pigetum est vel fuit, of piget, it irketh.

Impersonals of the Passive voice, are made of all Verbs Actives and Neuters: as, Curritur, it is runned: Turbatur, it is troubled.

Impersonals do want the Supines, and the Gerunds.

OF GERUNDS.

Gerunds may be called participiall voices, because they are like unto Participles: as we call those proverbiall sayings, which are like unto Proverbs. Wherefore, because we saw that Grammarians doe hardly agree amongst themselves; while the Gerunds too more properly belong to Verbs or unto Participles: here betwixt these two parts, we leave it to their choice, to follow which side they will.

Moreover, they doe receive from a Noun, Case: and from a Verb the signification of doing, or suffering, or of neither.

And because they receive by distinct voices, neither difference of Tenses or times, neither do admit Number, or Person: they can neither be right Verbs, nor Participles.

The

Gerunds.

Terminations of Gerunds are three: Vi, of the Genitive Case: Do, of the Dative and Ablative: and Dum of the Nominative and Accusative.

But that for the most part, Gerunds have an Active signification, there is no doubt: although sometimes also, they signify Passively: Whereof, these shall be examples, Athenas quoque missis erudiendi causa: sent also to Athens for the cause of being instructed; that is, that he might be instructed. Unique videndo femina: and the woman burneth by being seen; that is, while she is seene. Satis ad cognoscendum illustria: cleare enough to the being knowne: that is, that it may be knowne. Ars ad discendum facilis: an art easie to the being learned: that is, that it may be learned: or, to be learned.

OF SUPINES.

Supines also are worthily called Participiall voices, and have all things common with the voices of Gerunds. And the former Supine both end in um: the latter in u: as, Visum, to be seene. And the former doth most commonly signify actively; but the latter passively.

Of a PARTICIPLE.

Participle is a part of speech derived of a Verb, and taketh part of a Noun, as, Gender, Case, and Declension; and part of a Verb, as, Tense and Signification: and part of both, as, Number and Figure.

Things belonging to a Participle.

When things do belong to a Participle: Case, Gender, Declension, Time, Signification, Number, and Figure. Concerning Gender, Case, and Declension, they are the same, whereof we have spoken before in the Noun.

OF TIME.

The Times of Participles are four: one, There be four kinds of Participles: one of the Present Tense, another of the Preter Tense; and one of the Future in du, and another of the Future in du.

A Participle of the Present Tense hath his English ending ing: as, Loving: and his Latine in ans, or ens: as, Amans, doctus: and it is formed of the Preterimperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood, by changing the last syllable into ns: as, Amamus, Audiebamus, Audiebam, Audiebam, Auxiliabar, auxiliabam, Poteram, potens.

But the Participle iens, going, of eo, to go: is seldom read, simple in the Dominative Case: but, eundis, eunt, eunt, eunt, in the oblique Cases.

But the Compounds thereof have the Dominative ending in, iens: but the Genitive in untis: as, Abiens, going away; abeuntis, rediens, returning; redeuntis. Except onely, Ambiens, going about, &c.

(N)

And

Terminations of
Gerunds.

Supines.

A Participle.

The Accidents of
a Participle.

The Times of
Participles four.

Present Tense.

The Compounds
in untis.

NUMBER.

Numbers in Participles.

There is also Number in Participles, as in a Noun: Singular, as, Legens, he, or thee reading: Plural, as, Legentes, they reading.

OF FIGURE.

The Figure of Participles. Participles made Nouns Participles.

Figure is double: Simple, as Spirans, breathing: Compound, as, Respirans, taking breath. Participles do sometimes become Nouns Participles: either when they governe another Case then their Verb: as, Abundans, plentiful of milke. A. eni appetens, greedy of that which is another mans. Patiens inedia, patiently enduring hunger. Fugiens, fleeing strife. Or, when they are compounded with other words, then these Verbs may be compounded with: as, Infans, young. Indoctus, unlearned. Innocens, innocent. Ineptus, foolish. Or, when as they are compared: as, Amans, loving. Amantior, more loving. Amantissimus, most loving. Doctus, learned. Doctior, more learned. Doctissimus, most learned. Or, when as they doe not become any time: as, Expectem, qui me nunquam visurus abisti, may I looke for thee, which departedst never to see me more: that is, with purpose never to see me more. Nullam mentionem fecit contrarium, nil praetermissurus, siquid explorati haberet: he made no mention of the contrary, to omit nothing whereof he could have good proofe, that is, being minded to pretermitt no such thing. Amatus est doctissimus quisque: Every most learned man is to be loved, that is, is worthy, or ought to be loved. Vita laudata, a life praised; that is, commendable. Ejicienda est haec mollicies animi: this nicenesse of minde is to be cast off: that is, ought to be cast off.

Participles of the Present tense made Nouns.

Participles of the Present Tense doe oftentimes become Nouns Substantives. Sometimes in the Masculine Gender: as, Hic oriens, orientis, the East: Hic occidens, occidentis, the West: Hic Profluens, profluentis, a river: Hic confluens, confluentis, a place where two rivers meet together. Sometimes in the Feminine Gender: as, Haec Consonans, consonantis, a Consonant. Haec Continens, continens, Continent, sober. Sometimes, in the Neuter Gender: as, Hoc Contingens, contingens, contingent, that may be, and not be. Hoc Accidens, accidentis, an accident, or a thing happening by chance. Hoc antecedens, antecedentis, an antecedent, which hath a Relative, also the first part of an argument. Hoc consequens, consequentis, a consequent, that which rightly followeth upon premises. And sometimes in the Common Gender for Verbs in tor or trix: as, Hic & haec appetens, appetentis, greedy: Hic & haec diligens, diligens, diligent: Hic & haec sciens, scientis, that is, this & that. Hic & haec indulgens, indulgentis, indulgent, coddling, letting mitch by. Animans, animantis, any living creature; is sometimes the Feminine, and sometimes the Neuter Gender.

OF AN ADVERB.



An Adverb is a part of speech, joyned to the Verbs, to declare their signification.

An Adverb is a part of speech undeclined, which being added to the Verb, doth perfect, and declare the sense thereof.

It doth sometimes also explyne a Noun: as, Homo egregie impudens: a man egregiously impudent. Ne parum scio: that he be not a small dawd. Nimum philosophus: a very great philosopher. And sometimes even an Adverb: as, Parum honeste se gerit: he behaved himselfe scarce honestly.

Things befalling to an Adverb.

There belongeth to an Adverb, Signification, Comparison, Species, and Figure. The variety of signification is to be gathered from the circumstances of the words, or Verbs.

Adverbs some be of place: as, Ubi, where: Ibi, there: Hic, here: Illic, there: Illuc, thither: Intus, within: Foris, without: Ubiqum, any where: Nusquam, no where: Ubique, every where: Ubicunq, where-sover: Ubiliber, wheresoever you will: Utrobique, on both sides: Ubivis, in what place you will: Ubilubi, wheresoever: Alibi, elsewhere: Alicubi, somewhere: Necubi, least in any place, no where: Scubi, wheresoever, if in any place: Ibi, even there: Ibidem, there, in the same place: Inferius, lower: Superius, above, before.

These Adverbs do signifie to a place: Huc, hither: Illuc, thither: Illuc, thither: Intro, within: Alio, to another place: Quo, whither, from whence: Aliquid, any whither: Nequid, not any whither: Quoquid, whithersoever: Siquid, if any whither: Eo, thither: Eodem, to the same place: Quoaliber, whither you will: Quovis, whither you please: Quocunq, whithersoever: Foras, without: Hic, abroad: Hic, hitherward: Aliorsum, to some other place: Dextrorsum, on the right hand; Sinistrorsum, on the left hand; Sursum, upward: Deorsum, downward: Uterque, to both sides, on places: Neutrò, to neither part, neither way: Quoquoque, on every side, every way.

These, from a place: Hinc, from hence: Illinc, from thence: Intus, from within: Foras, out of the doors: Inde, from thence: Unde, from whence: Aliunde, from some other place: Aliunde, from some place: Sicunde, if from any place: Necunde, least from any place: Indidem, from the same place: Undeliber, whence thou wilt: Undevis, whence thou wilt: Undecunq, from what place soever: Superne, from above: Inferne, from beneath, below: Coelitus, from heaven: Funditus, from the foundation to utter destruction.

Finally, these, by a place: Hic, by this place, that way: Illuc, on that side, that way: Illic, this way: Quocunq, what way soever: Eo, that way: Eadem, the same way: Alio, by another way, Aliqua, by some way, Siquid, if any way, Nequa, least any way. Quacumq, what way soever.

Some be of Time;
as, Hodie, cras, heri,
perendie, olim, ali-
quando, nuper,
quando.

Some be of Time: as, Hodie, to day: Cras, to morrow: Heri, yesterday: Perendie, the next day after to morrow, the third day after, to morrow next: Olim, in times past: Aliquando, sometimes: Nuper, lately: Quando, when: Dum, when, whiles: Quam, when, whereas: Quamdiu, how long: Dudum, ere while: Quamdudum, how lately, how long ago: Jamdudum, even now: Quampridem, long before, how long: Jampridem, now lately: Utiq, until: Quousque, how long: Toties, so oft: Quoties, as oft as, how often: Aliquoties, at some times: Pridie, the day before: Postridie, the day after: Mane, early in the morning: Vespere, in the evening: Nudiustertius, the day before yesterday, the third day before: Nudiustertius, four days ago: Nudiustertius, five days ago: Nudiustertius, six days ago, &c. Diu, long time: Noct, in the night: Interdiu, in the day time: Nunc, now: Jam, now: Alas, another time: Item, also: Pridem, late, long ago: Tantisper, so long as: Paulisper, a little while: Parumper, a little while: Sepe, often: Raro, seldom: Subinde, forthwith, anon: Identidem, effordens: Plurimum, oftentimes: Quotidie, daily: Quotannis, every year: Nunquam, never: Unquam, any time, ever: Adhuc, till now, yet: Enim, for, Adhuc, even then, even as yet: Hactenus, hitherto thus far: In dies, daily: In horas, hourly: Ut primum, as soon as: Quum primum, as soon as: Simulac, incontinent as: Simulacque, as soon as: Plurimumque, for the most part: Utiq, until, well nigh, continually; it is an Adverb of time, and place both: as, Utiq, sub obscurum noctis, until a little before dark night: Ab Ethiopia est utiq, hec, this is nigh Ethiopia. It is also put some times for temper, always; or for continué, continually: as, Utiq, metu in evere hinc, the hollownesse of the water banks, glided continually with fear.

Some be of Num-
ber; as, Semel, bis,
ter, quater, iterum.

Some be of Number: as Semel, all at once: Bis, twice, double: Ter, thice: Quater, four times: Iterum, et soon, again, the second time: Quinquies, five times: Septies, seven times: Vigies, twenty times: Trigies, thirty times: Quadragies, forty times: Quinquagies, fifty times: Septuagies, seventy times: Octogies, eighty times: Centies, an hundred times: Milies, a thousand times, very often: Infinites, an infinite sort of times.

Some be of Or-
der; as, Inde, de-
inceps, denique, po-
stremo.

Some be of Order: as, Inde, from thence, next after: Deinceps, afterward, furthermore, secondly: Denique, to conclude at length, only: Postremo, finally, never after: Hinc, after this: Deinceps, secondly: Deinceps, henceforth, consequently: Novissimò, last of all: In primis, first of all, chiefly: Primò, first, at the first sight: Jam primum, even now, never before: Demum, at the length, only then: Tandem, at the last, when all cometh to all, notwith- standing I pray you: Ad summum, at the most.

Some be of Ask-
ing or doubting;
as, Cur quare, unde,
quoniam, num,
numquid.

Some be of Asking or doubting: as, Cur, wherefore: Quare, wherefore: Unde, from whence, whereof: Quoniam, to what end: Num, whether: Numquid, whether: Quamobrem, why: Quomodo, how: Ecquid, what thing, why: Quin, for cur non why not: Quid, ita, why so: Quid, whither: Quantum, how much?

Some be of Cal-
ling; as, Heus, ô,
hodie.

Some be of Calling: as, Heus, hœ, what Sir, heark Sir: ô, oh you: Ehodum, hee sirra: Eho, hœ sirra.

Some be of Deny-
ing; as, Non, haud,
ne, minime, neuti-

Some be of Denying: as, Non, no, noz, not: Haud, not, no, in no wise: Minime, no, at no hand: Neutiquam, not, in no wise, not by any

nothing: Nequaquam, no, not: Ne, for Non, not; and such like.

Some be of Affirming: as, Certe, certainly: Ne, then, therefore: Profedo, in very deed, truly: Sane, yea, certainly, truly: Scilicet, that is to wit, surely, moreover: Licet, be it so: Ego, put the case that it is so, let it be granted: Etiam, yea, also, moreover: Sic, yea, it is so: Quid ni, what else, wherefore not, why not: Prior, hereby, surely: Nempe, certainly, indeed, yea, even so: Nimirum, I wis, doubtless, surely, in faith: Adeo, surely, yea, rather, undoubtedly: Plane, certainly, indeed, clearly, without fail, quite and clean.

Some be of Swearing: as, Pol, by Pollux: Adepol, by Pollux his Temple: Hercle, by Hercules, in faith, truly: Medius fidius, so the Son of Jupiter: Iove me, by the faith of God, by the God of faith: Mehercule, by Hercules: Dias fidius, so God help me: Castor, by Castor: Ecastor, by my fay.

Some be of Exhorting: as, Eia, eih, well, go to, what lost: Age, go to, take heed: Agite, go to, take heed (this is spoken to many): Aedum, well, go to yet: Sodes, on good fellowship, of all love, I pray thee, as ever thou wilt do me a good turn: Ehodum, when we make one attentive, or when we say, hœe sirra.

Some be of Flattering: as, Sodes, I beseech thee: Amabò, of all love.

Some be of Forbidding: as, Ne, no, not: Non, no, not.

Some be of Wishing: as, Utinam, Would to God, or God grant: Si, if I might: ô, ô, if I might or could: ô, oh I could wish.

Some be of Excluding: as, Modò, only: Dummodò, so that: Tantummodò, only: Solummodò, alone: Tantum, only: Solùm, only: Duntaxat, only: Demum, only.

Some be of Gathering together: as, Simul, together, at once: Unà, together, both: Pariter, together: Non modò, not only: Non solùm, not only: Populatum, together, through all the people, wholly: Universim, universally, generally, altogether: Conjunctim, jointly, together, &c.

Some be of Parting: as, Seorsim, a part, other wise: Sigillatim, to every one, peculiarly: Vicatim, in villages or streets, street by street, hillage by hillage: Gregatim, in flocks, routs, or companies: Aggre, excellently, very much, nobly, principally: Nominatim, by name, especially: Viratim, man by man, from man to man, particularly: Oppidatim, town by town: Privatim, privately, peculi- arly: Speciatim, specially, particularly: Bifariam, two ways, in two parts: Trifariam, three manner of ways: Omnifariam, all manner of ways, of every kinde: Plurifariam, Divers ways: Ollatim, from door to door, one after another.

Some be of Diversity: as, Aliter, other wise, contrariwise, else: Secus, otherwise, ill.

Some be of Choosing: as, Potius, rather: Imo, yea rather: Potissimum, rather chiefly: Satis, better.

Some be of Increasing: as, Valde, very much, earnestly, very well: Nimis, too much, excess in much or little: Nimum, too much, too far, greatly: Immodicè, out of measure, immoderately: Impendio, much, more and more, exceedingly: Impense, greatly, largely, ambitiously, passing well: Profus, in any wise, surely.

(O 2)

quam, nequaquam.
Some be of Af-
firming; as, Certe,
ne, profedo, sane,
scilicet, licet, &c.

Some be of Swear-
ing; as, Pol, ade-
pol, hercle, medius
fidius.

Some be of Ex-
horting; as, Eia,
age, age, age-
dum.

Some be of Flate-
ring; as, Sodes, I
beseech thee.

Some be of For-
bidding; as, Ne.
Some be of W. sh-
ing; as, Utinam, si,
ô, ô, ô.

Excluding.
Some be of ga-
thering together;
as, Simul, unà, pa-
riter, non modò,
non solùm.

Some be of Part-
ing; as, Seorsim,
sigillatim, vicatim.

Some be of Cho-
osing; as, Potius,
imo, &c.

Some be of Deny-
ing; as, Non, haud,
ne, minime, neuti-

Diversity.
Some be of
Choosing; as, Po-
tius, imo.

Increasing.
Some be of In-
creasing; as, Valde,
nimis, &c.

in any wise, alway, generally, well and truly, straight towards a place: Penitus, deeply, far off, utterly, wholly: Funditus, from the foundation, for ever, to utter destruction: Radicibus, from the root, or up to the very root, wholly, utterly: Omnino, wholly, thoroughly, alway, in any wise, no more, to be short.

Remitting, or diminishing.

Some be of Remitting: as, Vix, scarcely, with much ado, not: Aere, sickly, with great pain or difficulty, hardly, against ones will: Paulatim, by little and little, leisurely, a little: Senfim, by little and little, leisurely: Pederentim, by little and little, fair and softly.

Granting.

Some be of Granting: as, Licet, be it so: Etsi, be it, or suppose it be, put the case that it is so: Demum, grant we it: Sit ita, let it be so: Sit sane, let it be truly.

Denying the solidity of any thing.

Some be of denying a thing to be onely, or alone: as, Non solum, not onely, not alone: Non tantum, not onely, not so much: Non modo, not onely: Nedum, not onely, much less, much more.

Some be of a thing not finished; as, Pene, fere, prope, vix, modo non.

Some be of a thing not finished: as, Pene, almost: Fere, almost, nigh, for the most part, alway: Prope, near at hand almost: Vix, scarcely: Modo non, almost, in a manner: Ferme, almost, for the most part: Prope modum, almost: Tantum, onely: Tantum non, almost.

Some be of Shewing; as, Ecce, ecce, behold: Sic, sic, thus.

Some be of Shewing: as, Ecce, behold: Sic, sic, thus, as, when we say Sic scribit, write thou thus, or so.

Some be of Doubting; as, Forfan, fortasse, fortassis, it may be: Fortasse, it may be done, perhaps.

Some be of Doubting: as, Forfan, peradventure: Fortitan, perhaps: Fortassis, it may be: Fortasse, it may be done, perhaps.

Some be of Chance; as, Fortis, by hap: Fortuna, by fortune.

Some be of Chance: as, Fortis, by hap: Fortuna, by fortune.

Some be of Likeness; as, Sic, sic, likewise: Sicut, as, like as, even as, as it were: Quasi, as if it were, as though: Cui, as it were, even like as: Tanquam, as it were, like, even like, as if: Vel, like, like as: Sicuti, as like as, as it were: Ita, so, yea, even so, such: Item, also, likewise, in like manner, and also: Eadem, after the same sort, seemably so: Tanquam, as it were, even like, as if: Ut, that, as to the end that: Velut, like, like as.

Some be of Likeness: as, Sic, sic, likewise: Sicut, as, like as, even as, as it were: Quasi, as if it were, as though: Cui, as it were, even like as: Tanquam, as it were, like, even like, as if: Vel, like, like as: Sicuti, as like as, as it were: Ita, so, yea, even so, such: Item, also, likewise, in like manner, and also: Eadem, after the same sort, seemably so: Tanquam, as it were, even like, as if: Ut, that, as to the end that: Velut, like, like as.

Some be of Quality; as, Bene, male, doctè, fortiter.

Some be of Quality: as, Bene, well, happily, very much: Male, ill, unhappily, scarcely, doctè, learnedly, cunningly, subtly: Fortiter, strongly, manfully, stoutly, constantly, patiently: Pulchre, goodly, beautifully, much, wisely, lustily: Gravior, gravely, wisely, painfully, rigorously, greatly.

Some be of Quantity; as, Multum, parum, minimum, maximum, plurimum.

Some be of Quantity: as, Multum, much, a great while, long before, very far, earnestly: Parum, a little, scarce, not, nothing, not well: Minimum, at the least, so little, as nothing can be less: Plurimum, a little, very little, somewhat: Maximum, very much, most, of the greatest part, at the uttermost: Minime, no, in no wise, not, nothing, least of all, at the least: Maxime, most of all, very much, passing well, especially, yea verely: Summum, most: Adsum, at the most, and such like.

Some be of Comparison; as, Tam, quam, magis, minus, ut, utinam.

Some be of Comparison: as, Tam, as well, as, so, so much the more: Quam, as rather then, as much: Magis, more, rather: Minus, less, not, not yet: Maxime, most of all, so far as, passing well, especially, yea verely: Minime, no, in no wise, not, least of all, at the least: Aque, justly, even as well, willingly, so, equal.

Some

Some be of Explaining: as, Id est, that is to say: Hoc est, that is to say: Quasi dicas, as if thou wouldst say: Puta, that is to say: Utopia, that is to say, or wit: Utopia, seeing that it is so, because as, so much as, considering that.

Some be of Explaining.

COMPARISON.

Certain Adverbs be compared: as, Doctè, doctius, doctissime. Fortiter, fortius, fortissime. Propè, propius, proximè. Likewise also certain others: as, Bene, well: Melius, better: Optime, best: Male, ill: Pejus, worse: Pessime, worst: Sæpe, oft: Sæpius, oftner: Sæpissime, ofttest: Nuper, late: Nuperime, latest. And such like.

Comparison.

Doctè, learned.

Doctius, more

learned. Doctissi-

me, most learned.

Fortiter, strongly.

Fortius, more

strongly. Fortissi-

me, most strong-

ly. Propè, near.

Propius, nearer.

Proximè, nearest.

Adverbs coming of Nouns Adjectives, are both compared, and do also govern the Cases of the Comparative and Superlative degree: as, Doctè, learned: Doctius illo, more learned than he: Doctissime omnium, most learned of all.

The SPECIES.

The Species is double: Principall; which hath the original of it self: as, Hec, yesterday: Cras, to morrow. And Derivative; which cometh from some other: as, Furim, by stealth, of furor, furaris vel furare, furatus sum vel fui, furari, to steal: Stridim, dille, lightly, of Stringo, stringis, strinx, stringere, stridum, to declare dille, to touch lightly: Humaniter, after the fashion of men, of Humanus, humana humanum, humane, belonging to man.

The Species or kinds of Adverbs.

Sometimes Adjectives of the Neuter Gender, do become Adverbs, after the manner of the Greeks: as, Recenter, for Recenter, lately, newly, lately: Totum, for Totum, wholly, grimly, sternly.

Nouns made Adverbs.

FIGURE, or Form.

Figure is double: Simple; as, Prudenter, wisely: And Compound; as, Imprudenter, unwisely.

Figure.

Of a CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is a part of Speech, that joyneth words and sentences together.

A Conjunction.

Things belonging to a Conjunction.

There belongeth to a Conjunction, Figure, Power, and Order.

The Accidents of a Conjunction.

FIGURE, or Form.

Figure is double: Simple; as, Nam, for: And Compound; as, Namque, for.

Figure.

POWER.

Power, that is, Signification, is Divers. For of Conjunctions, some be Copulatives: as, Et, and: Que, and: Quoque, also: Ac, and:

Of Conjunctions, some be Copula-

(O 3)

Commune.

To conclude, they are called Conjunctions Commune, which are indifferently set either in the beginning, or after the beginning of a sentence; as almost all the rest of the Conjunctions besides the former: as, Equidem, truly: Ergo, therefore: Igitor, they fore: Saltem, at the least: Tamen, notwithstanding: Quamquam, although, &c.

Of a PREPOSITION.

A Preposition.



Preposition is a part of speech, most commonly set before other parts, either in Apposition: as, Ad patrem, (to the father:) or else in Composition: as, Indoctus, (unlearned.)

A Preposition is a part of speech underlining, which is set before other parts, either in Composition, or in Apposition. In Apposition: as, Christus sedet ad dextram Patris: Christ sitteth at the right hand of the Father. In Composition: as, Adactum juramentum, adhibendum admonuit: he counselled to use an oath of compulsion.

Prepositions put after their Cases.

Certaine Prepositions are set after their Cases: Cum, with. Quibuscum, with whom. Tenus, up to. Pube tenus, up to the twill. Versus, towards. Angliam versus, towards England. Usque, untill. Ad occidentem usq; unto the West.

There note that Versus is set after his casuall word: as, Londinum versus, towards London: and likewise may Pene be used also.

If the casuall word joyued with Tenus be the Plurall Number, it shall be put in the Genitive Case, and be set before Tenus: as, Aurium tenus, up to the eares. Genium tenus, up to the knees.

Note also that the voices of Prepositions, being set alone without their Casuall words, or forming the degrees of Composition, be not Prepositions, but are changed into Adverbs.

Things belonging to a Preposition.

The Accidents of a Preposition.

To a Preposition there belongeth the government of Case, & Construction.

Secundum.

But in the same Cases, there is a marvellous varietie of signification, which is to be learned, not so much by rules, as by continual use of reading and writing: as for example. This Preposition Secundum, after, significeth one thing, when I say: Secundum aurem vulnus accepit: he received a wound nigh to the eare, but as other thing here, Secundum Deum, parentes amandi sunt, thy parents are to be loved next unto God. And another thing in this speech: Secundum quidem, satis mihi felix visus sum, in rest I thought myselfe happy enough.

These Prepositions following do serve to the Accusative Case.

Ad to. Apud, at.

Ad Calendas Gracas, at the Greek calends, that is, never. At bene apud meioris veteris stat gratia facti, but the reputation

An old deed, continueth very much to such as be thankfull.

Horat. — dicique beatus

Ante obitum nemo, supremamque funera debet: No man may be said to be happy before his death, and last end. Ne Hercules quidem adversus duos: Hercules may not strive against two. Cis Thamesum ita est Atonia: Aton is on this side the Thames. Horat.

Est modus in rebus, sunt certi denique fines, Quos ultra citraque nequit consistere rectum: there is a meane in things, and to conclude, certaine ends beyond, or on this side thereof, the right cannot consist. Ovid.

Credemhi bene qui laetit, bene vixit, & intra fornam debet quique manere suam. Welfare me, he which hath been well obscure, hath lived well, and every one ought to keepe within his estate. Plin M. Extra omnem ingenii aleam posuit Cicero. Cicero set without all hazard of wit.

It is locall: as, Circum montem, about the hill: Circa forum, circa viginti annos: about the court, about twenty yeares. It significeth time and number: as, Circiter horam decimam, about the tenth houre. Caesar. Circiter duo millia desiderati sunt, about two thousand were slain. Ne contra stimulum calces hicke nor against the prick.

Principes erga populum clemens, a prince gentle towards the people. Horat. Multa cadunt inter calicem, supremamque labra: many things fall out between the cup, and the lip. Terent. Quem ego infra omnes infimum esse puto, whom I thinke to be beneath all the basest.

Julius. Dux hostium cum exercitu supra caput est, the captaine of his enemies is with an army above his head.

Terent. Cum lucubrando iuxta ancillas lanam faceret, when he carded wool by candle light nigh, or by the maide servants.

Fada mors ob oculos versabatur: Cruell death was before his eyes. Horat. Impiger extremos currit mercator ad Indos, Per mare pauperiem fugiens, per saxa, per ignes:

The diligent merchant flying poverty runneth to the uttermost Indians, through the sea, by rocks, and through lightnings. Propè urbem, nigh the citie. Propè mortem, neare death.

Ter. Ita fugias ne prater casam, so flee as it be not beside the cabine. Aliquid mali propter vicinum malum, some evil for the next evil. Horat. O cives cives, quærenda pecunia primum est, Virtus post nummos. O citizens citizens, money is first to be sought, vertue after money. Ovid. Me penes est unum vasti cunodi mundi, the prison of the wide world is in the power of me being but one.

Hor. Cælum non animum mutant, qui trans mare currunt: They change their aire, not their mind which saile beyond the sea.

These Prepositions following do serve to the Ablative Case.

Terent. A me nulla tibi orta est injuria: from me no injury doth arise unto thee. Ab is set before nouns. Minus, Ab alio expectes, alteri quod feceris: look for from another, that which thou dost to one. Terent. Abs quovis homine beneficium accipere, cum opus est, gaudeas: be glad to receive a benefit of any man, when it is needfull. Ter. Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus: without Ceres and Bacchus, i. bread and wine, uncleane lust cooleth. Terent. Abique

Ante, before. Adversus, Adversus, against. Cis, citra, on this side. Ultra, beyond. Intra, within. Extra, without. Circum, about. Circa, about. Circiter, about. Contra, against. Erga, towards. Inter, betweenes. Infra, beneath. Supra, above. Juxta, beside, or nigh to. Ob, for. Per, by or through. Propè, nigh. Prater, beside. Propter, for. Secundum, after. Post, after. Penes, in the power. Trans, on the side, ther side. Pore, behind. Usque, untill. Secus, by. Versus, towards.

A ab, abs, from or fro. Sine, absque, without.

Cum, with.
Clam, privily.
Coram, before, or
in presence.
De, ex, of or fro.

Pro, for.
Pro, before or in
Comparison.
Tenus, untill, or
up to.
Palam, openly.

In with this signe
to, to the Accusa-
tive Case, as, *in ur-
bem*, into the City.
In, without this
signe to, to the Ab-
lative Case, as, *In
respectu*, My hope
is in thee. *Sub no-
ctem*, a little before
night. *Sub iudice*
lis est, the matter is
before the judge.
Super lapidem, up-
on a stone. *Super
viridi fronde*, up-
on green leaves.
Subter terram,
under the earth.
Subter aquas, un-
der the water.

An Interjection.

Some are of
Mirth, as, *Eux*,
vah.

Some are of Sor-
row, as, *Hui*, *hei*.

Some are of
Dread, as, *Atat*.

eo esse: it might have been without him. Absque pecunia miser-
vivitor: a man liveth miserably without money.
Mimus. Dammum appellandum est cum mala fama lucrum: gainst
with an ill name is to be termed losse. *Clam* patre, hid from his
father, and *Plautus*, *Clam* patrem. *Coram* senatu res acta est: the mat-
ter was pleaded before the senate. *Sophiste* rixantur de lana capri-
na: *Sophisters* doe scold about, or of goats haire, that is, for no-
thing. *Qui falsum testimonium dixisse convictus erat*, & saxo *Tarpeo*
dejectus: he which was found to have uttered false witness, was
cast downe from the rocke of *Tarpeius*. *Ex malis moribus bonae le-*
ges natae sunt: of evill manners do come good lawes. *Mimus*, Comes
facundus in via, pro vehiculo est: a pleasant companion in the way,
is for, or in stead of a coach. *Ter*. *Huic* aliquid *prae manu dederis*:
thou mightest have given this fellow something before thy hand,
or, which thou hadst at hand. *Virg.* — *capuloque tenuis ferrum impo-*
nit ira: in his anger he thrust his sword up to the hilt.

These Prepositions following doe serve to both Cases.

These four, *In*, *sub*, *super*, *subter*, require both cases, but for the
most part in a Divers signification.
Terent. In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum: I came
in time, which is the chiefest thing of all, without motion.
Ovid. Inque domos superas scandere cura fuit: he had a care to climb
up into the highest houses, or roomes. It implyeth after a sort,
motion. *Virg.* Sub lucem exportant calathis: that is, a little before day
they carry out in baskets. *Idem.* — *Vasto vidisse sub antro*, to have
seen before the waite cave. *Virg.* Super ripas Tyberis, upon the
banks of Tyber. *Virg.* Denis subter tellure casus, under the thicke
target of chance.

There are also Prepositions which are never found without
composition: as, *Am*, in Ambio, to compass: *Di*, in Diduco, to
vide, or pull a sunder: *Dis*, in Distraho, to pluck away: *Re*, in re-
pio, to take: *Se*, in Sepono, to put by: and *Con*, in Condoneo, to for-
give. But *Con* loseth n, if it be compounded with a word which
beginneth with a *C* or *Q*, as, *Coagmento*, to joyne together: *Coctus*,
to buy with another: *Coinquino*, to soile or stain: *Cooperio*, to cover.

Of an INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is a part of speech which betokeneth
a sudden passion of the mind, under an imperfect voice.
And there are so many significations of Interjecs-
tions, as there are motions of a troubled mind.

Some are of mirth: *Eux*, a voice of joy, as, *hoïda*: *Vah*, a voice
of wondering, and sometimes of rejoycing: *Plaut.* *Eux*, jurgio
tandem uxorem at egi: *Vah*, I have at the last driven away my wife
with scolding.

Some are of sorrow: *ag*, *Heu*, a voice of weeping, and lament-
ing: *Hei*, *ah*, *alas*: *Hoi*, a voice of crying: *ô*, *oh*, *alas*: *Ah*, a
voice of sorrowing, as, *oh*, *alas*. *Ter.* *I intro hui*, *hei*: go in, *ah*, *alas*
Virg. *O dolor*, atque decus magnum! *O* griefe and great honour.

Some are of dread: as, *Atat*, *aha*, *aha*: *Hei*, *ah*. *Ter.* *Hei*, vere-
or ne quid *Andria* apporet mali: *Ah*, I feare lest *Andria* do bring
some ill newes.

Some are of marvelling: as, *Papè*, a voice of admiration.
Ter. *Papè*, nova figura oris. *O* strange, a new forme of a mouth.
Some are of disdainning: as, *Hem*, *oh*, what, for, see: *Vah*, *he*.
Some are of humming: as, *Apagè*, *he*, *he*, away: *Apagè*, it is
too much, get thee hence, away if thou wilt: *Ter.* *Apagè*, *egon*,
formidolosus: *he*, away, I false-hearted?
Some are of praising: as, *Euge*, *heida*, well done: *Mar.* *Cito*,
nequiter, euge, beate; quickly, laudly, *heida*, happily.
Some are of scorning: *Hui*, *fo*. *Ter.* *Hui*, tu mihi illam laudas?
fo, dost thou praise her unto me?
Some are of calling: as, *tho*, *hoyra*: *Oh*, *oh*, *to*, *oh*. *Ter.* *O*, qui
vocaris? *oh*, who to be called?

Some are of apprehending suddenly: as, *Aiat*. *Ter.* *Atat*, data
hæc mihi sunt verba; *Aha*, words truly are given unto me.

Some are of exclamation: as, *Proh*, *oh*, *oh*: *Proh* nefas, *Oh* the
wickednesse. *Senec.* *Oh* paupertas felix! *Oh* happy poverty.

Some are of cursing: as, *Væ* malum, *he* upon him, in the de-
vils name. *Malum*, a mischief take him. *Terent.* *Quid hoc* (malum)
what is this in the devils name? it is of infelicity, or hard hap.
Some are of laughing: as, *Ha*, *ha*, *he*. *Terent.* *Ha*, *ha*, *he*, defensa
jam misera sum te ridendo. *Ha*, *ha*, *he*, I miserable wretch am even
leary with laughing at thee.

Some are of silence: as, *Au*, *hiss*. *Ter.* *Au*, ne comparandus hic quidem
ad illum est. *Hiss*, this man truly is not to be compared to him.

This is here to be noted, that *Adverbs* also and *Verbs* are
sometimes put in the stead of an Interjection: as, in *Virg.* *Navibus*,
infandum, amissis. The ships, *O* horrible chance not to be spoken of,
lost. *Cicero.* *Sed* a magno re, cura. But I pray thee of all love, have a
care. *Pæa*, any part of speech signifying a confused affection of
the mind, may supply the place of an Interjection.

And thus much truly of the Etymologie of the eight parts of
speech, though rudely, hath bene delivered to children, as
abundantly sufficient in our opinion, so long as they exercise in
school, ordinary studies and tasks under the rod. And if any
please to search out any thing more deeply, and exactly, we send
him to read and turne over the workes of Grammarians. Of
whom though there be many, and of sufficient learning, yet we
know not any, who, either for excellencie of learning, and teach-
ing, or for lightnesse and eloquence, may be compared, much
lesse preferred, to our *Linacher*.

Of the Construction of the eight parts of speech, called SYNTAXIS.

Hitherto of the eight parts of speech, and of their
formes, so far as concerneth Etymologie: now
we will intreat of them, so far as concerneth
Syntaxis, called construction.
Syntaxis therefore is a due composition & con-
nexion of the parts of speech one with ano-
ther, according to the right order of Grammar.
And it is the same, which the most approved ancients have
used both in writing and speaking.

Some are of mar-
velling: as, *Papè*.
Some are of
Disdaining: as,
Hem, *vah*.
Some are of
Shunning: as, *Apagè*.
Some are of
Praising: as, *Euge*.
Some are of
Scorning: as, *Hui*.
Some are of
Calling: as, *Eha*,
oh, *fo*.

Some are of ap-
prehending sud-
denly, as, *Atat*.
Some are of Ex-
clamation: as, *Proh*
Deum atque homi-
nium fidem.

Some are of
Cursing: as, *Væ*
malum.

Some are of
Laughing: as, *Ha*,
ha, *he*.

Some are of si-
lence, as, *Au*, and
such others.

Other parts of
speech do become
Interjections.

What Construc-
tion is.

The Concor-
dance of Gram-
mar.

But before we speake particularly of the construction of the parts of speech, some things are to be considered generally, and a few words, touching the three Concordances of Grammar. For the due joyning of words in construction, it is to be understood, that in the Latine speech there be three Concordances. The first between the Dominative Case & the Verb. The second between the Substantive and the Adjective. The third between the Antecedent and the Relative.

The first CONCORD.

The first Concord.

When an English is given to be made in Latine, look out the principall Verb. If there be no Verbs then one in a sentence: the first is the principall Verb, except it be the Infinitive Mood, or have before it a Relative: as, *That, Whom, Which, &c.* Conjunction: as, *Ut, That, Cum, When, Si, If, &c.* or such others.

When you have found the Verb, ask this question *Who or what* and the word that answereth to the question shall be the Dominative Case to the Verb: except it be a Verb Impersonall, which will have no Dominative case. And the Dominative case shall in making and construing Latine be set before the Verb, except a question be asked, and then the Dominative Case is set after the Verb, or after the signe of the Verb: as, *Amas tu? Lovest thou? Venitne rex? Doth the king come? Likewise, if the Verb be of the Imperative Mood: as, Amatu. Love thou: Amato ille: Let him love. And sometime when this signe is: *It or There cometh before the English of the Verb: as, Est liber meus: It is my book. Venit ad me quidam. There came one to me.**

And that shall word which cometh next after the Verb, and answereth to this question, *Whom or What, made by the Verb, shall commonly be the Accusative case, except the Verb do properly govern another Case after him, to be construed withall. as, Si cupi placere magistro, utere diligentia, nec sis tantus cessator, ut calcibus indigeas, If thou covest to please thy Master, use diligence, and be not so slack, that thou shalt need spurs.*

A Verb personall agreeth with his Dominative case, in Number and Person: as, *Præceptor legit, vos vero negligitis, The Master readeth, and ye regard not. Nunquam fera est ad bonos mores via, The way is never late to good manners. Fortuna nunquam perpetuo est bona, Fortune is never alwayes good.*

Where note that the first Person is more worthy than the second, and the second more worthy than the third.

The Dominative case of the first or second person, is seldom expressed, except it be for discretion sake: as, *Vos damnastis, Ye have condemned: as if one would say, None else: or for Emphasis sake, as Terent. Tu es pater, tu pater; si deseris tu, perimus, Even thou art our patron, even thou our father; as if one would say, Thou chiefly, and before all others: If thou forsakest, as if he would say, If thou, of all others, forsakest us, we perish. Ovid. Tu dominus, tu vir, tu mihi frater eris, When thou (of all others) shalt be unto me a lord, an husband, a brother.*

In Verbs, whose signification belongeth unto men onely, the Dominative case of the third person is often understood: as, *Est, he is: Fertur, he is reported: Ferunt, they report: Dicunt, they say:*

Aunt.

And they say: Prædicant, they tell it abroad: Clamitant, they cry abroad; and such like: as, *Terent. Fertur atrocis flagitia designasse, It is reported to have committed heinous offences. Ovid. Tæque sumitur poenituisse tua, And they report thee to have repented of thine anger.*

A casuall word is not alwayes the Dominative case to the Verb, but sometimes the Infinitive Mood of a Verb: as, *Mentiri non est meum, To lye is not my property. Plautus. Sometimes a reason, clause foregoing, or some member of a sentence: as,*

Ovid. Adde quod ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes,

Emollit mores, nec finit esse ferus: Adde herewith, that

to have learned faithfully the Liberrall Sciences, doth make more gentle the manners, neither suffereth them to be fierce. Dicitur surgere, saluberrimum est, To rise betimes in the morning, is the most wholesome thing in the world. Multum scire vita jucundissima, To know much, is the most pleasant (or sweetest) life of all. And sometimes an Adverb with a Genitive case: as, Partim virorum ceciderunt in bello, Part of the men were slain in war. Partim signorum sunt combusta, Part of the Ensignes were burnt.

Verbs of the Infinitive Mood, will have before them an Accusative case for a Dominative: as, *Te rediisse incolam gaudeo, I am glad thee to have returned safe. Te fabulam agere volo, I will thee to play the Comedy. And it may be resolved by Quod and Ut, in this manner: Quod tu redisti in columis, gaudeo, That thou hast returned safe I am glad. Ut tu fabulam agas, volo, I will that thou play the Comedy.*

Many Dominative cases Singular, with a Conjunction Copulative coming between them, will have a Verb Plurall: which Verb Plurall shall agree with the Dominative case of the most worthy person: as, *Ego & tu sumus in tuto, I and thou are in safeguard. Tu & pater periclitamini, Thou and thy father are in jeopardy. Pater & præceptor accersunt te, Thy father and thy master have sent for thee.*

When a Verb cometh between two Dominative cases of divers Numbers, it may indifferently accord with either of them, so that they be both of one person: as, *Amanum iræ amoris redintegratio est, The falling out of Lovers, is the renewing of love. Quid enim nisi vota supersunt? For what remaineth, saving one's prayers? Pectora percussit, pectus quoque robora sunt, She smote her breasts, and her breasts turned into Oke also. Virg. Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt, Nothing but verses do here want.*

Verbs Impersonals have no Dominative case before them: as, *Tædet me vita, It irketh me of my life. Periculum est conjugii, I am weary of wedlock.*

A Noun of multitude of the Singular Number, is sometimes joyned to a Verb Plurall: as, *Pars abiit, Part went away. Uterque deluduntur dolis, Both are mocked with deceits.*

The second CONCORD.

When you have an Adjective ask this question, *Who, or What?* and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the Substantive to it.

The Adjective, whether it be Pronoun or Participle, agreeth

(P 3)

An Infinitive Mood, Nominative case to the Verb.

The first Exception.

The second Exception.

The second Concord.

agreeth with his Substantive in Number, Case and Gender, as, *Homo armatus*, A man armed. *Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur*, A sure friend is tryed in a doubtfull matter. *Ager colendus*, A field to be tilled. *Hic vir*, This man. *Meus herus est*, It is my master. *Juvenal*, *Rara avis in terris, nigroque similis cygno*, A rare bird in the earth, and most like unto a white Swan. *Ovid*, *Donc eris felix, multos numerabis amicos*, Whilst thou shalt be happy, thou shalt number many friends. *Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes*, No friend will go to lost riches. *Senec*, *Non hoc primis pectora vulnus mea senserunt, graviora tui*, My breasts have not felt this wound, now the first time, I have suffered more grievous things.

Where note, that the Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter.

Many Substantives Singular, having a Conjunction Copulative coming between them, will have an Adjective Plural; which Adjective shall agree with the Substantive of the most worthy Gender: as, *Rex & Regina beati*, The King and the Queen are blessed.

Sometimes a Clause is in stead of the Substantive to the Adjective: as, *Audiro regem Doroberniam proficisci*, It being heard the King to go to Canterbury.

The third CONCORD.

When ye have a Relative, ask this question, *Who, or What?* and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the Antecedent to it.

The Antecedent most commonly is a word that goeth before the Relative, and is rehearsed again of the Relative.

The Relative agreeth with his Antecedent, in Gender, Number and Person: as, *Vir sapiens qui pauca loquitur*, The man is wise that speaketh few things, or words. — *Vir bonus est quis?* Who is a good man? *Qui consula patrum, qui leges juraque servat*, He which keepeth the statutes of his fathers, and their laws & ordinances.

Many Antecedents Singular, having a Conjunction Copulative between them, will have a Relative Plural: which Relative shall agree with the Antecedent of the most worthy Gender: as, *Imperium & dignitas quae petiunt*, The rule and the dignity which thou hast required.

But in things not apt to have life, the Neuter Gender is most worthy: yea, and in such case, though the Substantives of Antecedents be of the Masculine, or of the Feminine Gender, and none of them of the Neuter: yet may the Adjective of Relative be put in the Neuter Gender: as, *Arcus & calami sunt bona*, The bow and arrows be good: *Arcus & calami quae fregisti*, the bow and arrows which thou hast broken.

Sometimes a Relative hath for his Antecedent, the whole reason that goeth before him, and then it shall be put in the Neuter Gender, and sing. Number: as, *In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum*, I came in time, which is the chiefest thing of all.

But if the Relative be referred to two clauses or more, then the Relative shall be put into the Plural Number: as, *Tu multum dormis, & saepe potas, quae ambo sunt corpori inimica*, Thou sleepest much, and drinkest often, which both are naught for the body.

Quem

When this English, *That*, may be turned into this English, *Which*, it is a Relative; otherwise it is a Conjunction, which in Latin is called *Quod*, or *Ut*: and in Latin making, it may elegantly be put away, by turning the Nominative case into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mood: as, *Gaudeo quod tu bene vales*: *Gaudeo te bene valere*; I am glad that thou art in good health: I am glad thee to be in good health. *Jubeo ut tu abeas*, I bid that thou go hence: *Jubeo te abire*, I bid thee to go hence.

When a Relative cometh between two Antecedents of Substantives of divers Genders or Numbers, it may indifferently accord, either with the former: as, *Avis quae passer appellatur*, The bird which is called a Sparrow. *Est ne ea Lucteria, quam nos Parisios dicimus?* Is not that called Lucteria, which we do call Paris? *Parisiis dicimus*, *Senatus assiduam stationem eo loci peragebat, qui hodie senaculum appellatur*, The Senate made their daily meeting in that place, which is now called the Council chamber. *Non procul ab eo flumine, quod Saliam vocant, non far from that River, which they call Salia*. *Cicero*, *Propius a terra Jovis stella fertur, quae Phaeton dicitur*, The Star of Jupiter, which is called Phaeton, is carried not far off from the earth. Or with the latter: as, *Avis qui passer appellatur*, The bird which is called a Sparrow. *Est ne ea Lucteria, quos nos Parisios dicimus?* Is not that called Lucteria, which we do call Paris? *Homines videntur illum globum, quae terra dicitur*, Men do defend that globe or round thing, which is called the Earth. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur*, There is a place in the prison, which is called Tullianum, or a dungeon. *In coelestibus, quod interlunium vocant*, In the Conjunction of the Sun and Moon, which they call the space between the old Moon and the New.

Sometimes a Relative, and sometimes a Pronoun Adjective, answereth the Primitive, which is understood in the Possessive: as, *Tertius*, *Omnes omnia bona dicere, & laudare fortunas meas, qui solum habebam tali ingenio praeditum*; All men did speak all good things, and commended my good hap, who had a Son induced with such a good nature. *Ovid*, — *Nostros vidisti flexis ocellos*, Thou hast seen our eyes, of me weeping.

When there cometh no Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative case to the Verb: as, *Miser est qui nummos admiratur*, Wretched is that person, which is in love with Money. *Beatus, Felix qui potuit boni fontem visere lucidum*, He is happy, which could go to see the clear fountain of goodness. But when there cometh a Nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be such Case as the Verb will have after him: or shall be governess of some other word joynd with the Verb in the same sentence: as, *Felix quem faciunt aliena pericula cantum*, Happy is he whom other mens harms do make to beware. *Ovid*, *Gratia ab officio quod mora tardat abest*, Favour is absent from that duty, which lagging delayeth. *Virg*, *Cujus numen adoro*, Whose Deity I worship. *Quorum optimum ego habeo*, The best whereof I have. *Cui similem non vidi*, To whom I have not seen the like. *Quo dignum te judicavi*, Whereof I have thought thee worthy. *Quo melius nemo scribit*, When whom, no man writeth better. *Quem* videndo

Note.

An Exception.

The case of the Relative.

The third Concord.

videndo obstupuit. In seeing of whom, he was amazed. *Legō Virgilium prae quo ceteri poetae sordent.* I read Virgil, in comparison of whom, the rest of the Poets are of small account.

The Relative therefore is not alwayes governed of the Verb that he cometh before, but sometimes of the Infinitive Word that cometh after the Verb: as, *Quibus voluisti me gratias agere.* To that persons thou wiltdest me to thank, I have thanked.

Sometime of a Participle: as, *Quibus rebus adductus fecisti.* With what things moved didst thou it?

Sometime of the Gerund: as, *Quae nunc non est narrandi locus.* Which things at this present, is no time to tell.

Sometime of the Preposition set before him: as, *Quem in locum deducta res fit, vides.* Unto what state the matter is now brought, thou seest.

Sometime of the Substantive that he doth accord withall: as, *Senties qui vir siens.* Thou shalt perceive what a fellow I am. Albeit in this manner speaking, *Qui* is an Indefinite, and not a Relative.

Sometimes of a Noun Partitive or Distributive: as, *Quorum rerum veram minus velim.* non facere possum exstimare, Of which two things, whether I would with less will have, I cannot easily esteem.

Sometime it is put in the Genit. case, by reason of a Substantive coming next after him: as, *Ego illum non novi, cujus causa hoc incipis.* I know him not, for whose cause thou beginnest this matter.

Sometime it is otherwise governed of a Noun Substantive: as, *Omnia tibi dabuntur, quibus opus habes.* All things shall be given thee, which thou hast need of.

Sometime of an Adverb: as, *Cui utrum obviam procedam, nondum scitavi.* Althow, whether I will go to meet with, I have not yet determined.

Sometime it is put in the Ablative case, with this sign. *Than* and is governed of the Comparative degree coming after him: as, *Utere virtute, qua nihil est melius.* Use the Vertue, than the which nothing is better.

Sometime it is not governed at all, but is put in the Ablative case absolute: as, *Quantus erat Julius Caesar, quo imperante, Romani primum Britanniam ingressi sunt?* How worthy a man was Julius Caesar, under whose conduct the Romans first entred into Britain?

Also, when it signifieth an instrument wherewith a thing is to be done, it is put in the Abl. case: as, *Perum habuit, quo se occideret.* He had a knife, wherewith he would have slain himself.

As the Relative may be the Dominative case to the Verb, so it may be the Substantive to the Adjective that is joyned with him, or that cometh after him: as, *Divitias amare noli.* quod omnium est sordidissimum, Do not thou love riches, which is do, is the most beggarly thing in the world.

Nouns Interrogatives and Indefinites, do follow the rule of the Relative: as, *Quis, who: Uter, whether of the two: Quis, what manner of: Quotus, how great: Quotus, how many, &c.* which evermore come before the Verb, like as the Relative doth: as, *Hei mihi, qualis erat? talis erat, qualem nunquam vidi.* Alas me, what manner of one was he? such an one, as I never saw.

The construction of a Noun Substantive.

When two Substantives betokening divers things, doe so come together, as that the later seemeth, in some sort, to be possessed of the former: the later shall be the Genitive Case: as, *Facundia Ciceronis*: the eloquence of Cicero. *Opus Virgilli*: the worke of Virgil. *Amator studiorum*: a lover of studies. *Dogma Platonis*: the opinion of Plato. *Juvenal: Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit*: the love of money increaseth, as much as the money it selfe increaseth. *Rex pater patriae*: the King is the father of the Countrey. *Arma Achillis*: the weapons of Achilles. *Cultor agri*: a tiller of the ground.

Therefore this Genitive Case is oftentimes turned into an Adjective Possessive: as *Patris domus*: the house of my father: *Paterna domus*: my fathers house. *Hen filius*: the son of my Master: *Herilis filius*: my Masters sonne. And sometimes it is turned into the Dative Case: as, *Luc. de Cat.* *Vbi pater est, Vbiq; maritus*: he is a father to the City, and an husband to the City.

But if they belong both to one thing, they shall by Apposition, be put both in one Case: as, *Pater meus vir, amicus meum*: my father being a man, loveth me a child. *Ovid. Effodiantur opes irritamenta malorum*: riches being provocations of evils, are digged out of the earth. *Virg. Ignavam fucos pecus a praesepibus arcent.* they drive the Drovers a sluggish cat-tell from their Dives.

When the English of this word, *res*, a thing: is put with an Adjective, ye may put away *res*, and put the Adjective in the Nenter Gender like a Substantive: as, *Multa me impediant*: many things have letted me. And being so put, it may be the Substantive to an Adjective: as, *Pauca his similia*: a few things like unto these. *Nonnulla hujusmodi*: many things of like sort.

An Adjective in the Nenter Gender put alone without a Substantive, standeth for a Substantive: and may sometimes have a Genitive Case after him, as if it were a Substantive: as, *Multam lucri*: much gaine: *Quantum negotii*: how much businesse. *Id operis*: that worke. *Paululum pecuniae*: a little money. *Hoc noctis*: this night. *Catul. Non videmus manica, quod intergo est*: we see not the part of the Mallet, which is on the backe: *Juvenal.*

Quantum quisque sua nummorum servat in arca. Tantum habet & fidei: so much money as every one keepeth in his chest, even so much credit he hath.

Sometimes the Genitive Case is put alone, the former Substantive being understood, by an Eclipsis: as, in these speeches: *Ter. Vbi ad Dianam veneris, ito ad dextram*: when thou comest to the Temple of Diana, goe on the right hand. *Ventum erat ad Vestam*: he came to the Temple of Vesta. For in both places the word *Templum*, Temple, is understood. *Virg. Hectoris Andromache*: *Andromache* the wife of Hector. *Sophoc. wife* is understood. *Idem: Deiphobe Glauci*: *Deiphobe* the daughter of Glaucus. *Idem: filia, daughter*, is understood.

The construction of the Noun Substantive.

The varying of a Substantive into an Adjective.

An exception. Apposition.

Praise, or dis-
praise.

Opus, and Uſus.

Opus, put Adjec-
tively.

The Genitive
Caſe.

Verbals, in ax.

derſtood. Ter. Hujus video Byrrhiam : I ſee Byrrhia, this man ſervant. ſor, ſervum, ſervant, is underſtood.

Words importing indument of any quality or property, as the praiſe or diſpraiſe of a thing; coming after a Noun Subſtantive, or a Verbe Subſtantive may be put diversly, but moſt commonly in the Ablative, or Genitive Caſe: as Puer bona indole: or Puer bonæ indolis: a child of a good to wardneſſe. Puer boni ingenit: or Puer bono ingenio: a child of a good wit. Vir nulla fide: a man of no credit. Ovid. Ingeni vultus puer, ingenuique pudoris: a boy of a comely countenance, and honeſt baithfulneſſe.

Opus and uſus, ſignifying neede, require an Ablative caſe, as, Opus eſt mihi tuo iudicio: I have neede of thy judgement. Viginti minis uſus eſt filio: my ſonne hath neede of twenty pounds. Cicero. Authoritate tua nobis opus eſt: we have neede of thy authority. Pecuniam qua ſibi nihil eſſet uſus, ab iis quibus ſciret uſui eſſe, non accepit: he receiv'd not money, whereof he had no neede, of them whom he knew had uſe for it. Cel-
lius.

But Opus, neede, ſeemeth ſometimes to be put Adjectively, for, neceſſary: and is conſtrued diversly: as, Cicero. De nobis & author opus eſt: a Captaine and a Governour is neceſſary for us. Idem. Dicis nummos mihi opus eſſe ad apparatus triumph: thou ſayeſt that money is neceſſary for me, for the preparation of the triumph. Trent. Aliaque opus ſunt para: provide other things which are neceſſary. Cicero. Sulpitii ope-
ram intelligo ex tuis literis, tibi multum opus non fuiſſe: I underſtand by thy letters, that the helpe of Sulpitius was not very neceſſary for thee:

The conſtruction of Adjectives.

Adjectives that ſignifie deſire, knowledge, remembrance, and the contrary, as ignorance, forgetting, and ſuch like, require a Genitive caſe: as, Cupidus auri: covetous of money. Peritus belli: expert of warfare. Ignarus omnium: ignorant of all things. Fidens animi: bold of heart. Dubius men-
tis: doubtfull of minde. Memor præteriti: mindfull of that is paſt. Reus furti: accuſed of theft. Plinius. Eſt natura hominum novitatis avida: the nature of man is greedy of newes. Silius. Non ſum animi dubius, ſed devius æqui: I am not doubtfull of minde, but ſwarving from right. Virg. Mens ſummi præſcia: a minde foreknowing that which is to come. Idem. Memor eſto brevis ævi: be mindfull of thy ſhort time. Cicero. Græcarum literarum rudis: ignorant of the Greek tongue.

Verbiall Adjectives in ax, will alſo have a Genitive caſe: as, Tempus edax rerum: time is the conſumer of things. Ovid. Audax ingenii: adventurous of nature. Seneca. Virtus eſt vi-
tiorum ſagax: vertue is the abandoner of vices. Horat. Vili-
um ſagax: quick in ſpying profitable things. Idem. Pro-
poſiti tenax: ſtiſſe in his purpoſe. Virg. Tam ſidi praviq; te-
nax, quam nuncia veri: as well a keeper of a lie, and that
which is naught as a teller of the truth. Plaut. Pecuniarum po-
-ax, &c. an asker of money, and ſo forth. Many other Ad-
jectives

alſo being ſubject to no certaine rules, will have a Genitive caſe, Linacher and Deſpanterius have gathered at
-ax, and with which thou mayeſt be ſufficiently acquaint-
ed by continuall reading.

Nounes Partitives, or partitively put, and certaine In-
terrogatives, with certaine Nounes of Number, will have a
Genitive caſe, from which they have their Gender: as, Aliquis,
ſome body: Uter, whether of the two: Nemo, neither of the two:
Nemo, no body: Nullus, none: Solus, alone: Unus, one: Medius the
middle: Quisq; every man: Quicumq; whoſoever: Quidam, a
certaine man: Quis, for aliquis, ſome body: or Quis, who? an
Interrogative: as, Unus, one: Duo, two: Tres, three: Primus,
the firſt: Secundus, the ſecond: Tertius, the third, &c. as Ali-
quis poſtrum, ſome of us: Primus omnium, the firſt of all. Ci-
ceron. Quanquam te Marce fili annum jam audientem Cratippum
ideq; Athenis, abundare oportet præceptis inſtitutiſq; Philo-
ſophia: propter ſummam & doctoris authoritatem, & Urbis, quo-
rum alter, te ſcientia augere poſſet, altera exemplis: Although,
ſome Marcus, it becometh thee, hearing Cratippus, now a yeare,
and that at Athens, to abound with precepts and inſtructi-
ons of Philoſophie: for the ſingular authority, both of the
teacher, and alſo of the City: whereof the one may enrich
thee with knowledge, the other with examples. Utrum ho-
rum mavis, accipe: take which of theſe two thou wilt. Ovid.
Quisq; ſuit ille Deorum: whoſoever of the Goddes hee was.
Ter. An quiſquam hominum eſt æquè miſer, ut ego? Is any man
ſomiferable as I? Virg. Divum promittere nemo auderet: none
of the gods durſt promiſe. Tres fratrum: three of the brothers.
Quatuor iudicum: four of the Judges. Sapientum octavus quis
fuerit, nondum conſtat: of the wiſe men who was the eighth, it
is not yet agreed upon. Primus regum Romanorum fuit Romu-
lus: the firſt of the Kings of the Romans was Romulus.

But in another ſenſe they require an Ablative caſe with a
Propoſition: as, Primus ab Hercule, the firſt from Hercules.
Tertius ab Ænea, the third from Æneas.

And in another ſenſe, a Dative: as, Virg. Nulli pietate ſe-
cundus: ſecond to none in godlineſſe. And they are uſed alſo
with theſe Propoſitions: e, de, ex, inter, ante: as, Ovid. Eſt
Deus tibi vobis alter: the one of you is a God. Idem. Solus de ſu-
peris: he alone of the Gods above. Virg. Primus inter omnes:
the chiefe amongſt them all. Primus ibi ante omnes, magna
comitante caterva,

Laocoon ardens ſumma decurrit ab arce: the chiefeſt amongſt
them all, Laocoon chaſting, ranne downe from the top of
the Tower.

When a queſtion is asked, the anſwer in Latine, muſt be
made by the ſame caſe of a Noun, Pronoun, or Partici-
ple, and by the ſame Genſe of a Verbe, that the queſtion is
asked by: as, Cuius eſt fundus? whole ground is it? Vicini:
my neighbours. Quid agitur in ludo literario? what doe they
in the Schoole? Studetur: they ſtudy. Quarum rerum nulla
eſt ſatietas? of what things is there no ſatiety? Divitiarum?
of riches. Quid rerum nunc geritur in Anglia? what buſineſſe
is now a doing in England? Conſultur de religione: they
conſult

A diverſe con-
ſtruction of
Nounes.

An Interrogat.

An exception.

1.

2.

3.

Comparatives,
and SuperlativesThe construction
of Comparatives.Profit, or dis-
profit.

consult of Relsigton. Except a question be asked by Cuius, cuium: as, Cuius est sententia? whose sentence is it? Ciceronis: the sentence of Cicero. Cuium pecus? whose cattle? Laniorum: the Butchers. Or by a word that may govern divers Cases: as, Quanti emisti librum? for how much hast thou bought the booke? Parvo: for a little. Fortine accusas an homicidii, an utroque? dost thou accuse of theft, or of manslaughter, or of both? Or except I must answer by one of these Possessives: Meus, mine: Tuus, thine: Suis, his: Noster, our: Vester, your: as, Cujus est domus? whose house is it? Non vestra, sed nostra: not yours, but ours. Cujus est hic codex? whose booke is this? Meus, mine.

Names of the Comparative degree, which respect two things; and of the Superlative, which respect more things: being put partitively; which is to say, having after them this English, or, or among: require a Genitive Case, when of they have their Gender: as, Aurum mollior est sinistra: of the ears, the left is the softer: Cicero oratorum eloquentissimus: Cicero the most eloquent of Orators. Manuum fortior est dextera: of the hands, the right hand is the stronger. Digitorum medius est longissimus: of the fingers, the middle finger is the longest. Virgilius poetarum doctissimus: of, or among the Poets, Virgil is the most learned.

Names of the Comparative degree, having, than, or, by, after them: doe cause the word following to be the Ablative Case: as, Frigidior glacie: more cold then Ice. Doctior multo: better learned by a great deale. Uno pede altior: higher by a foot. Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum: poorer is baser then gold, gold then vertue. They will have also another Ablative Case, signifying the measure of exceeding: as, Cicero. Quanto doctior es, tanto te geras submissius: by how much thou art more learned, by so much behave thy selfe more humbly.

Tanto, by so much: Quanto, by how much: Multo, by much: Longe, by farre: Etate, by age: Natu, by birth: are used with both the degrees: as, Catul. Tanto pessimus omnium poeta, quanto tu optimus omnium patronus: by so much thou art the worst Poet, by how much thou art the best Patron. Erasmus. Nocturne lucubrationes longe periculosissimae habentur: night studies are counted by farre most dangerous. Longe ceteris peritior es, sed non multo melior tamen: by farre thou art more learned than the rest, but yet not much better. Juvenal. Omne animi vitium, tanto conspectius in se.

Crimen habet, quanto major, qui peccat, habetur: every vice of the minde hath in it selfe a fault by so much more apparent, by how much he is counted greater, which offendeth. Major & maximus etate: greater and greatest by age; that is, elder and eldest. Major & maximus natu, elder and eldest by birth.

The Dative Case.

Adjectives, that betoken profit or disprofit, likeness, unlikensse, pleasure, submitting, or belonging to any thing, require a Dative Case, as, Labor est utilis corpori: labour is profitable

profitable to the body. Aequalis Hectori: equal to Hector. In hoc bello: fit for warre. Jucundus omnibus: pleasant to all persons. Parenti supplex: suppliant to his father. Mihi proprium: proper to me. Virg. Sis bonus o felixque tuis: Oh be thou good and favorable to thy friends. Marcial. Turba gravis paci, placidaque inimica quieti: the troublesome rout being grievous to peace, and enemy to pleasant rest. Est finitimus, oratori poeta: a Poet is of a very great affinity with an Orator. Ovid. Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo: the colour which was white, is now contrary to white. Marcial. Jucundus amicis: pleasant to his friends. Omnibus supplex: lowly to all men. Horat. Si facis ut patriae, sit idoneus, utilis agro: If thou canst that he may be fit for the Countrey, profitable for the ground.

Likewise, Adjectives compounded with this Preposition, Con: as, Contubernalis, a Chamber-fellow: Commilito, a fellow Soldier: Conservus, serving together, a fellow servant: Cognatus, kinsman, &c.

Some Adjectives betokening likeness, have a Genitive Case: as, Lucanus: Quem metuis par huius erat: hee whom thou fearest was like this man. Terent. Patres aequum esse censent, nos jamjam a pueris illico nasci senes, neque illarum affines esse rerum, quas fert adolescentia: fathers thinke it to bee a meet thing, that we even lately from children, should become by and by old men, and not to be partakers of those things, which youth bringeth. Idem. Domini similis es: thou art like thy master. Aufon. Mens conscia recti: a minde knowing the right. Virg.

Præterea regina tui fidiissima dextra Occidit ipsa sua: further the Queene her selfe most true to thee, is dead by her owne right hand.

Communis, common: Alienus, another mans: Immunis, exempt: serve to divers Cases: as, Cicero. Commune animalium omnium est conjunctionis appetitus, procreandi causa: the desire of conjunction for procreation sake, is common to all living creatures. Mors omnibus communis: death is common to all men. Hoc mihi tecum commune est: this thing is common to me and thee. Salust. Non aliena consilii: not unmeet for the purpose. Seneca. Alienus ambitioni: farre from ambition. Cicero. Non alienus a Scævola studiis: not estranged from the studies of Scævola. Ovid. — vobis immunibus huius esse malidabitur: it shall be granted to you to be free from this evil. Plinius. Caprificus omnibus immunis est: the wilde fig-tree is free for all. Immunes ab illis malis sumus: we are cleare from those evils.

Natus, borne: Commodus, profitable: Incommodus, unprofitable: Vtilis, profitable. Inutilis, unprofitable: Vehemens, earnest: Apus, fit: will sometimes also have an Accusative Case, with a Preposition: as, Cicero: Natus, ad gloriam: borne to glory.

Verbals Adjectives of the Passive signification in, bilis: and Participles, or rather Participles, in dus: will have a Dative Case: as, Flebilis, lendus omnibus: to be lamented of all men. Formidabilis, formidandus hosti: to be feared of his enemies.

Adjectives compounded with Con.

Likensse.

A diverse construction of certain Adjectives.

In bilis, & dus.

SYNTAXIS.

enemies, Martial: *O mihi post-nullos Juli memorande sodales*.
Julius, worthy to be remembered of me, after none of the
fellowes. Statius: — nulli penetrabilis astro, Lucus erat: the
wood was to be pierced through by no starre.

The Accusative Case.

Measure.

The measure of length, breadth, or thickness of any thing
 is put after Adjectives in the Accusative Case: as, *Turris*
alta centum pedes: a Tower of an hundred foot high. Ar-
bor lata tres digitos: a tree three fingers broad. Gnomon sep-
tem pedes longus, umbram non amplius quatuor pedes longam
reddit: the pinne of the Diall seven foote long, maketh a sha-
dow no more then foure foote long. And sometimes in the Ab-
lative Case: as, Liber crassus tres pollices, vel, tribus polli-
bus: a booke three inches thicke. Columella: Fons latus pedis
bus: tribus, altus triginea: A well broad three foote, deepe the-
ty foote. O. Genitive: as, Columel: In morem horti arci-
latus pedum dentem, longas pedum quinquagenam facio:
make thou the floores broad ten foote a piece, long fifty foote
a piece.

The Ablative Case.

Fulnesse, empti-
nesse.

Adjectives signifying fulnesse, emptinesse, plenty, or want-
 ing, require an Ablative Case: and sometimes a Genitive:
 as, *Copius abundans: abounding with plenty. Vacuus ira, ira;*
ab ira: boyde of anger. Nulla epistola inanis re aliqua: no epi-
stle of noide of something. Divitiis agri: richest of grounds.
Stultorum plena sunt omnia: the world is full of foolles. Qui
nisi mentis inops, oblatum respuit aurum? who, unless hee be
boide of wit, doth refuse gold being offered? Integer viti-
scelerisque purus, Non eget Mauri jaculis, nec arcu: hee that is
upright of life and pure from offence, needeth not the arrowes
nor bow of Maurus. Expers omnia: boide of all things. Cor-
pus inane animæ: a body without a soule. Amor & melle & fel-
le est fecundissimus: Love is very full, both of honey and gall.
Plautus. Horat. Dives agris, dives positus in scenore nummis
rich in lands, rich in money, put to usury. Virg. At festæ multa
referunt se nocte minores, Cura Thymo plena: but the lesser
Bees wearied, doe retorne home, late in the night, their
shankes full with thyme. Idem. Quæ regio in terris nostri non
plena laboris? what Countrey in the earth is not full of our
labour? Idem. Dives opum, dives pictæ vestis & auri: rich in
substance, rich in emboidered raiment, and gold. Persus,
O curvæ in terras animæ, & celestium inanes! O. soules whol-
ly bent towards the earth, and without heavenly things! Ex-
pers fraudis: without fraud. Gratia beatus: rich in good
will.

Diversity.

Nounes of diversity will have an Ablative Case with a
 Preposition: as, *Virg. Alter ab illo: divers from him. Ali-*
ud ab hoc: divers from this thing. Diversus ab isto: differ-
ent from this man. And sometimes a Dative: as, Huius di-
versum: different from this thing.

Adjectives will have an Ablative Case, signifying the
 cause:

SYNTAXIS.

as, *Pallidus ira: pale with anger. Livida armis bra-*
ta: armes black and blue with armoir. Incervus senectute:
wrinkled with old age. Trepidus morte futura: trembling for
death to come.

The forme or manner of a thing is put after Nounes, in
 the Ablative Case: as, *Facies miris modis pallida: a face pale*
after a wonderfull manner. Nominæ Grammaticus, re Barba-
rus: a Grammarian in name, barbarous indeed. Cicero. Sum-
tibi natura parens, præceptor consilii: I am to thee a father
bynature, a master by counsels. Virg. Trojanus origine Cæsar:
Cæsar a Troyane by descent. Spe dives, re pauper: rich in hope,
poore indeed. Syrus natione: a Syrtian by his Countrey.

The cause of a
thing.The forme of a
thing.

Dignus, &c.

Dignus, worthy: Indignus, unworthy: Præditus, endued:
 Captus, taken: Contentus, content: Extorris, a banished man:
 and such others, will have an Ablative Case: as, *Dignus ho-*
nore: worthy of honour: Captus oculis: blinded. Virtute præ-
ditus: endued with vertue: Paucis contentus: content with a
few things. Ter. Dignus odio: worthy of hatred. Qui filium
haberem tali ingenio præditum: which had a sonne endued with
such a wit. Virg. Atque oculis capti fodere cubilia talpæ: and
the Moles being blinded have digged their nests. Idem. Sorte
tu contentus abi: go thy wayes content with thine estate.
And sometimes a Genitive: as, Ovid. Militia est operis altera
digna tui: It is a second warfare becomming thy labour. Virg.
Descendam magnorum haud quaquam indignus avorum: I will
come downe at no time unworthy of my noble Progeni-
tors.

Where note, that Dignus, indignus, and contentus: may fit
 stand of the Ablative Case, have the Infinitive Mood of a
 Verb: as, *Dignus laudari: worthy to be praised. Contentus in*
pæce vivere: content to live in peace.

The construction of a Pronoun.

These Genitive Cases of the Primitives, *Mei, of me: Tui,*
of thee: Sui, of him: Nostri, of us: Vestri, of you: be used
 when the suffering or passion is signified: as, *Amor mei: the*
love of me. Languet desiderio tui: he languisheth for the desire
of thee. Ovid. Parsque tui latitat corpore clausa meo: and part
of thee lieth hid being shut up in my body. Imago nostri: the
image of us. But when action or possession of a thing is sig-
nified: Meus, mine: Tuus, thine: Suis, his: Noster, ours: Vester,
yours: be used: as, Ars tua: thine Art. Imago nostra:
our image: that is, which we doe possesse. Favet desiderio
tuo: he labourerth thy desire.

Pronounes
Primitives.

These Genitive Cases *Nostrium, of us: Vestrum, of you:*
 be used after Distributives, Partitives, Comparatives, and
 Superlatives: as, *Nemo vestrum: none of you. Aliquis no-*
strum: some of us. Unusquisque vestrum: cheryone of you. Ma-
jor nostrum: the elder of us. Maximus natu nostrum: the eldest
of us. Ne cui vestrum sit mirum: let it be no marvell to
any of you.

Pronounes.
Derivatives.

These Possessives, *meus, tuus, suus, noster, and vester,* doe
 require after them these Genitives: *Ipsius, of him: Solus, of*
one

Pronounes.
Possessive.

SYNTAXIS.

one alone : Unius, of one : Duorum, of two : Trium, of three : Quatuor, of four : Quingentorum, of five : Sexcentorum, of six : Septingentorum, of seven : Octingentorum, of eight : Nongentorum, of nine : Milium, of ten : Milia, of more : Paucorum, of a few : Cujusque, of every one. And the *Sentitive Cases* of the *Participles*, which are referred to the *Sentitive Case* of the *Nominative*, included in the *Possessive* : as, Ex tuo ipfius animo conjecturam feceris : thou hast conjectured by thine own mind only. Cicero. Dico mea unius opera rempublicam esse liberatam : I affirm the Common-wealth to have been delivered by my only helps. Idem. Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest : my sinne alone cannot be amended. Erasmus. Nolite duorum evenus ostentat utra gens sit melior : the event of us two may shew whether of the Countreys is better. In sua cujusque laude praestantior : better in every ones own praise. Nostra omnium memoria : in the memory of us all. Brutus ad Ciceronem. Vestris paucorum responderet laudibus : and wereth to your few praises. Horat. — scripserat Cum mea nemo legat vulgo recitare timens : feeling that none readeth the writings of me fearing to recite them to the common people.

Sui, of him : and Suus, his : are reciprocates : that is, have relation alwayes to that which went before, in the same sentence : as, Petrus nimium admiratur se : Peter lets too much by himselfe. Parcat erroribus suis : hee spareth his owne errors. *Idem* are joyned by a *Copulative* : as, Magnopere Petrus rogat, ne se deserat : Peter doth very much intreat, that thou dost not forsake him.

Ipse, he : onely of all the *Personnes*, doth represent the signification of all the three *Persons* : as, Ipse vidi : I have seen : Ipse videris, looke thou to it. Ipse dixit : hee hath said. And it is joyned as well to *Personnes* as to *Personnes* : as, Ipse ego : I my selfe. Ipse ille : even he. Ipse Hercules : Hercules himselfe.

Idem, the same : may also be joyned to all the *Persons* : as, Ego idem adsum : I, even the same am here. Ter. Idem has nuptias perge facere : go thou on to make up this marriage. Virg. — idem jungat vulpes, & mulgeat hircos : let him couple the Foxes, and milke the he Goats.

These *Demonstratives* : Hic, this man : Ille, he : Ille, that man : are thus distinguished. Hic noteth the nearest to me : Ille, him that is with thee : and Ille, him that is from us both.

Ille, is then used, when as we shew any thing, for the excellencie : as, Alexander ille magnus : that same Alexander the great. But, Ille, when we mention any thing with contempt : as, Ter. Istum amulum, quoad poteris, ab ea pellito : drive away this coapes-mate from her as farre as thou canst.

Hic, and Ille, when they are referred to two *Personnes* going before. Hic, is properly and most usually referred to the latter and nearer : and Ille, to the former, and furthest off : as, Colum : Agricola contrarium est pastoris propositum : ille, quam maxime subactio, & puro solo gaudet : hic, novali graminofoque : ille, fructum e terra sperat : hic, e pecore : the husbandmans purpose is contrary to the shepheards : he, delighteth most of all, in a well tilled and pure soile : this, in a new

SYNTAXIS.

105

and broken, and fresh pasture full of grasse : hee looketh for him from the earth : this from his sheep. Per contrarium, Hic, is sometimes referred to the further : and Ille to the nearer.

The construction of the Verbe, and first of the Nominative Case after the Verbe.

Verbes Substantives, as, Sum, I am : Forem, I might be : Fio, I am made : Existo, I am named : Appello, I am called : Dicor, I am said : Vocor, I am called : Nuncupor, I am named : and such like : as Scribor, I am written : Salutor, I am saluted : Videor, I am seen, Habeor, I am counted : Existimor, I am esteemed, will have such Case after them, as they have before them, that is, of each side commonly a *Nominative Case* : as, Fama est malum, fame is an evil thing, Malus cultura fit bonus, an evil person by due ordering of governance is made good. Caelus vocatur dives : Caelus is called rich. Horatius salatur Poeta : Horace is saluted by the name of Poet. Male te divitem esse, quam haberi : I had rather thou were rich indeed, then to be accounted. Deus est summum bonum : God is the chiefe good. Perpusilli vocantur nani, very little men are called dwarves. Fides religionis nostrae fundamentum habetur : faith is counted the foundation of our religion.

Also Verbes that betoken bodily moving, going, resting, or doing, which be properly called Verbes of *Figure* : as, Ego, I goe : Incedo, to goe : Curro, to runne : Sedeo, to sit : Appareo, to appear : Bibo, to drinke : Cubo, to lye downe : Studeo, to studie : Dormio, to sleepe : Somnio, to dreame : and such other like : as they have before them a *Nominative Case*, of the doer or sufferer, so may they have after them a *Nominative Case* of a *Person* or a *Participle*, declaring the manner of circumstance of the doing or suffering : as, Incedo claudus, I go lame. Petrus dormit securus : Peter sleepeth void of care. Tu cubas supinus : thou liest in bed with thy face upward. Somnias vigilans : thou dreamest waking. Studeo itans : study thou standing. Malus Pastor dormit supinus : an evil Shepheard sleepeth void of care. Lactantius. Homo incedit erectus in cælum : a man goeth bolt upright towards heaven. And likewise in the *Accusative Case* : as, Non deoer quengnam mejere currentem aut mandentem. It becommeth not any man to pisse running or eating.

And generally when the word that goeth before the Verbe, and the word that cometh after the Verbe, belong both to one thing, that is to say, have respect either to other, or depend either of other : they shall be put in one Case, whether the Verbe be transitive or intransitive of what kind soever the Verbe be of : as, Loquor frequens, I speake often. Taceo multum, I hold my peace much. Scribo epistolas rarissimas, I write letters very seldome. Ne assuescas bibere vinum jejunos : accustom not thy selfe to drinke wine, next thy heart, or not having eaten somewhat afore.

The Infinitive Mood also, hath like Cases on both sides :

A Nominative before, and after the Verbe.

A general note.

The construction of the Infinitive Moode.

finde: especially in Verbes of wishing, and such like: as, Hypocrita cupit videri iustus: hypocrite desireth to seeme just. Hypocrita cupit se videri iustum: an hypocrite desireth himselfe to seeme just. Malo dives esse quam haberi: I had rather be rich, then to be accounted. Malo medivitem esse, quam haberi: I had rather my selfe to be rich, then so to be accounted. Claudian. Vivitur exiguo melius natura beatis Omnibus esse dedit, si quis cognoverit uti: men live better with a little. Nature hath granted to all men to be happy, if any know how to use it. Martialis. Nobis non licet esse tam disertis, vel disertis: we may not be so eloquent. Terent. Expedit bonas esse vobis: it is expedient for you to be good. Ovid. Quo mihi commissio non licet esse piam: which fact if it had bene committed, I could not be a loyall wife. Though in these last examples, the Accusative cases before the Infinitive Moode, are understood: as, Nos esse disertos: that, we should be eloquent. Vos esse bonas: that, yee should be good. Me esse piam: that I should be loyall.

The Genitive Case after the Verbe.

Possession, duty, &c.

This Verbe, Sum, I am, when it betokeneth or importeth possession, owing, or otherwise pertaining to a thing, as a token, property, duty, or guilt: it causeth the Noun, Pronome, or Participle following, to be put in the Genitive Case: as, Hæc vestis est patris: this garment is my fathers. Insipientis est dicere, non putaram: it is the property of a fool, to say, I had not thought. Extremæ est dementia dicere dedicenda: it is extreme folly to learne things which are to be unlearned againe. Orantis est nihil nisi coelestia cogitare: it is the duty of a man that is saying his prayers, to have minde of nothing but heavenly things. Virg. — Pecunia est Melibœi, he cattell is Melibœus. Cicero. Adolescentis est majores nam revereri: it is the duty of a strpling to reverence his elders. Virg. — regum est pacere subjectis, & debellare superbos: it is the duty of Kings to spare the meeke subjects, and to keepe downe the proud. Except that these Pronounes, Meus, mine: Tuus, thine: Suus, his: Noster, our: Vester, your: humanum, humane: Bellum, heall: and such like: shall in such manner speaking be used in the Dominative Case: as, Hic codex est meus: this booke is mine. Hæc domus est vestra: this house is yours. Non est mentiri meum: it is not my guilt (or property) to lie. Non est injuriam non inferre: it is our parts not to doe wrong. Tuum est omnia juxta pati: it is thy part or duty to suffer all things alike. Humanum est irasci: it is a property belonging to man, to be angry. Non est meum contra auctoritatem Senatus dicere: it is not my part to speak against the authority of the Senate. Terent. Bona haud vestrum est iracundus esse: what? dost, it is not your part to be angry. But here the word officium, that is, duty, seemeth to be understood, which is sometimes also expressed: as, Ter. Tuum est officium has bene ut adimales nuptias: it is thy duty, that in good sort thou dost make a shew of this marriage.

Verbes

Verbes that betoken to esteeme or regard, require a Genitive Case, betokening the value: as, Parvi ducitur probitas: honesty is reckoned little worth. Maximi penditur nobilitas: noblenesse of birth is very much regarded. Plurimi putant se pecunia: money is every where very much esteemed. Parvi penditur: shamefastnesse is little set up. Nihil, vel pro nihilo habentur literæ: learning is esteemed as nothing, or for nought. Horat. Pluris opes nunc sunt, quam pristini temporis annis: riches are of more value now, then in the yeeres of ancient time. Aestimo, I esteeme, will have a Genitive, or an Ablative Case: as, Valerius Maximus: Non hujus æstimo: I esteeme thee not thus much. Magno ubique virtus æstimanda est: vertue is every where of great price.

Flocci, of a Locke of Wooll: Nauci, of a Nut-shell: Nihil, of nothing: Pili, of an haire: Assis, of a farthing: Hujus, of thus much: Terentii, of three ounces, are peculiarly used with these Verbes: Aestimo, I weigh: Pendo, I make reckoning of: Facio, I make: as, Ego illum flocci pendo: I esteeme him as naught. Nec hujus facio, qui me pili æstimat: neither doe I regard him thus much, who esteemes me as an haire. Hæc be speciall phrases: Aequi bono consulo: I take in good part. Aequi bono facio: I take in good part.

Verbes of accusing, condemning, warning, purging, quitting, or assolling, and such like: will have a Genitive Case of the crime, or of the cause, or of the thing, that one is accused, condemned, or warned of: as, Hic furti se alligat: this man accuseth himselfe of theft. Admonuit me erratum: he admonished me of my fault. Qui alterum inculcat probum, ipsum se intueri oportet: it behoveth him to looke to himselfe, which accuseth another of dishonesty: Plant. Cicero. Sciam sceleris condemnare generum suum: likewise he condemneth his sonne in law of wickednesse: Parce tuum vatem sceleris damnare Cupido: Cupid forbear to condemne thy Father of wickednesse. Admoneto illum pristina fortuna: admonish him of his former estate. Furti absolutus est: hee is acquitted of felony.

This Genitive is sometimes turned into the Ablative, either with a Preposition, or without: as, Hic furti se alligat: this man accuseth himselfe of theft. admonuit me errati: hee hath warned me of mine error. De pecuniis reperundis damnatus est: he was condemned of extortion, or of money unjustly taken, in the time of his office or magistracie. Cicero. Si in me iniquus es index, condemnabo eodem ego te crimine: (I against me thou beest an unjust Judge, I will condemn thee for the same crime. Gellius uxorem de pudicitia graviter accusavit: hee accused his wife grievously of her dishonesty. Cicero. Putavi ea de re admonendum esse te: I thought that thou wast to be admonished of that matter.

Uterque, both: Nullus, none: Alter, another: Neuter, neither of the two: Alius, another: Ambo, both: and the Superlative degree, are not used with these kinde of Verbes, but in the Ablative Case: as, Accusas furti, an Aupri, an auroque? or, de utroque? ambobus? or, de ambobus? Neutro?

Verbes of seeming.

Verbes of accusing.

02. de neutro? Doest thou accuse of theft, 02 whozedomest of both? 02 of neither? De plurimis simul accusaris: thou art accused of very many things at once.

Satago, &c.

Satago, I am huffe, 02, I doe with speed: Misereor, I have pittie on: Misereor, I have compassion on: requira Gentive Case: as, Is rerum suarum satagit: he hath enough to doe about his owne businesse. Ter. Misere mei Deus: have mercie upon me O God. Virg. — oro misere laborum

Misereor, &c.

Tantum, misere animi non digna ferentis: I pray thee take pittie on to great labours, have compassion upon a minde suffering unworthy things. Statius. Et generis miserece tui: have compassion upon thine owne stocke. But Misereor, and Miserece, are sometimes read with a Dative Case: as, Seneca. Huic succurro, huic misereor: I helpe this man, I pittie this man. Boetius. Dilige jure bonos, & miserece malis: Of right love thou good men, and have pittie on the bad.

Reminisceor, &c.

Reminisceor, I remember: Obliviscor, I forget: Recordor, I call to minde: Memini, I remember: Will have a Gentive Case: 02 an Accusative: as, Reminisceor historiam: I remember the history. Obliviscor carminis: I forget the verse. Recordor lectionem: I call to minde my youth. Obliviscor lectionem: I forget the lesson. Memini tui, 02 te: I remember thee. Memini de hac re, de armis, de te: I speake of this matter, of the weapons, of thee: 02 made mention. D. te fidei reminiscitur: hee remembereth his promise. Proprium est stulticia, aliorum vicia cernere, oblivisci suorum: It is the property of foolishnesse, to espye the faults of others, to forget her owne. Ter. Faciam ut meique, ac hujus diei, ac loci, semper memineris: I will cause that thou shalt ever remember both me, and this day, and place. Plautus. Omnia quæ curant senes memineunt: old men remember all things, whereof they have care.

Potior.

Egeo, I neede: Indigeo, I neede: and Potior, I obtaine: Will have a Gentive Case, 02 an Ablative Case: as, Egeo, 02 Indigio tui, 02 te: I have neede of thee. Potior urbis: I conquer the City. Potior voto: I obtaine my desire. Plaut. Romani signorum, & amorum potiti sunt: the Romanes obtained the ensignes and the weapons. Virg. Egressi optata Trois potiuntur arena: the Troians gone out of their ships, enjoy the wished shoare.

The Dative Case after the Verbe.

Verbes of getting.

All manner of Verbes put acquisitevely, that is to say, with these tokens, to, 02, for, after them: will have a Dative Case, of that thing to which any thing is by any means procured 02 gotten; as, Non omnibus dormio: I sleepe not to all men. Huic habeo, non tibi: I have it for this man, and not for thee. Plaut. Mihi istic nec feritur, nec metiur: neither is there sowing nor mowing there for me. Virg. Nescio quis teneros oculus mihi fascinat agnos: I know not what eye bewitcheth unto me the young Lambs.

To

To this rule belong divers kinds of Verbs.

Verbs that betoken to profit 02 disprofit, do governe a Dative Case: as, Commodo, I profit: Incommodo, I disprofit: Noceo, I hurt, as, Virg. Illa seges domum votis respondera vari Agricola: that eared corne at the last contents the desires of the covetous husbandman. Non potes mihi commodare nec incommodare: thou canst not profit, neither disprofit me. Virg. — validis incumbite remis: labour earnestly with your strong Dares. Suam eruditionem tibi acceptam fert: he acknowledgeth his learning to be received of thee. Some of these Verbs will have an Accusative Case: as, Cicero. Unum studetis omnes, unum sentitis: you doe all desire one thing, ye thinke one thing. Plautus. Si ea memorem quæ ad ventris victum conducunt, mora est: If I should call to minde those things, which are profitable to the feeding, it were tedious. Cicero. In hæc studia incumbite: Labour earnestly in these studies. Naturæ plus ad eloquentiam conferat, an doctrina: Whether nature or instruction availe more to eloquence. Festum quies plurimum juvat: rest delighteth very much the wearied man.

To profit or disprofit.

Verbs that betoken to compare, doe governe a Dative Case: as, Comparo, I compare: Compono, I compare: Confero, I compare: as, Virg. Sic parvis componere magna solebam: so was I wont to compare great things to little. Fratri se & opibus, & dignatione adæquavit: he made himselfe equal to his brother, both in riches and dignity. Sometimes they have an Accusative Case with a Preposition: as, Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est: If he be compared to him, he is nobody. And sometimes an Ablative with a Preposition: as, Comparo Virgilium cum Homero: I compare Virgil with Homer.

To compare.

Verbs that betoken to give 02 restore, will have a Dative Case: as, Dano, I give: Reddo, I restore: Refero, I give againe: as, Fortuna multis nimium dedit, nulli satis: fortune hath given to many too much, to none enough. Ingratus est, qui gratiam bene merenti non reponit: he is unthankfull which layeth not up for him, that deserbeth well.

To give, or restore.

These Verbes have a diverse construction: as, Dano tibi hoc munus: I give unto thee this present: Dano te hoc munus: I present thee with this present. Cicero. Huic rei aliquid temporis impertias: bestow some time upon this thing. Terent. Plurima salute Parmenonem summum suum impertit Gnato: Gnato greets Parmeno his singular good friend, with many salutations. Asperit mihi labem: he sprinkled a spot on me: Asperit me labe: he sprinkled me with a spot. Instravit equum penula: he spread his cloak upon his horse: Instravit equum penula: he spread his horse with his cloake. Ovid. Ut piger infido consuluisset viro: how it grieves me to have consulted, 02 provided for a faithlesse man. Lucan. Rectoremque raris de cunctis consulit astris: and he asked the master of the ship counsell, concerning all the starres. Consule salutis tuæ: provide for thy health. Ter. Pessimè istuc in te, atque in illum consulis: thou dost determine the thing very ill against thy selfe.

A diverse construction.

Q 3

selfe, and against him. *Metuo, timeo, formido tibi, &c.* I am carefull for thee. *Metuo, timeo, formido te, &c.* I feare lest thou hurt me.

To promise, or
to pay.

Verbes that betoken to promise or to pay. *Doe gubernare a Dative Case: as, Promitto, I promise: Polliceor, I promise: Solvo, I pay: as, Cicero. Hæc tibi promitto, ac recipio san-* *ctissime esse observandum: these things I promise thee, and* *doe undertake most devoutly to observe them. Cicero. Aes-* *alienum mihi numeravit: he hath paid the debt unto me.*

To command, or
to shew.

Verbes that betoken to command, or shew, require a Dative Case: as, *Impero, I command: Indico, I shew: Mono-* *stro, I shew: as, Horat. Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia* *cuique: money hoarded up commandeth or serveth every* *man. Idem. Quid de quoque viro, & cui dicas, sæpe caveo:* *take heed oftentimes what, and to whom thou speakest of* *any man.*

To trust.

Cite say, Tempero, I ruse: Moderor tibi & te: I doe mo- *derate thee, Refero ad Senatum: I shew, or make relation to* *thee. Also, Refero ad Senatum: I propose, or write to the* *Senate. Mitto tibi, & ad te: I send unto thee. Do tibi li-* *ras: I give thee letters to carry to another. Do ad teliceras:* *I give, or send thee letters, that thou maist read them.*

To obey, or to
be against.

Verbes that betoken to trust, will have a Dative Case: *as, Fido, I trust: Confido, I trust: Fidem habeo: I have* *fath, or trust: as, Horat. — vacuis committere venis, Nil* *nisi lene decet: It is meet to commit nothing but that which* *is pleasant to taste, to the empty vessels. Mulieri ne credas,* *nemortuus quidem: beleeve not a woman, no not being dead.*

Verbes that betoken to obey or to be against, require a Dative Case: as, *Obedio, I obey: Adulo, I flatter: Re-* *pugno, I resist: as, Semper obtemperat pius filius patri: a god-* *ly sonne doth alwayes obey his father. Quæ homines arant,* *navigant, ædificant, virtuti omnia parent: all things obey ver-* *tus, which men plow for, saile for, build for. Ipsum huic* *orabo, huic supplicabo: I will intreat this very man. I will* *beseech him. Persus. — venienti occurrere morbo: prevent* *the disease comming. Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat: for-* *tune resisteth stormy prayers.*

But some of these are coupled with other cases: as, *Ad* *amorem nihil possit accedere: nothing could come to love.* *Hoc accessit meis malis: this came to my evils. Illud constat* *omnibus, or inter omnes: that is evident to all men. Ter.* *Hæc fratri necum non conveniunt: these things sadge not well* *to my brother and me. Juvenal. — Sævis inter se convenit u-* *sis: there is an agreement to the savage Beares amongst* *themselves. Ausculto tibi: id est, obsecro: I listen to thee;* *that is, I obey. Ausculto te: id est, audio: I heed thee: that* *is, I heare thee. Adamas dissidet magnæ, seu, cum magnæ:* *the Adamant disagreeeth to, or, with the loadstone. Certat* *cum illo, or after the Greeke phrase, illi: he striveth with him,* *or to him. Noli pugnare duobus, id est, contra duos: fight not* *to two; that is, against two. Virg. Tu dic mecum quo pigro-* *re certes: tell me what wager thou wilt contend with me* *for.*

Verbes

Verbes that betoken to threaten, or to be angry with, doe require a Dative Case: as, *Minor, I threaten: Indignor, I* *am: Irascor, I am angry: Utrique mortem minatus est: hee* *threatned death to both. Ter. Adolescenti nihil est quod lue-* *scat: there was no cause that he should be angry with the* *youth.*

To threaten, or
to be angry
with.

Sum, I am, with his Compounds, except, Possum, I can, *doth require a Dative Case: as, Rex pius est Republicæ orna-* *mentum: a godly King is an ornament to the Common-* *wealth. Mihi nec obest nec prodest: neither is it against me,* *neither doth it profit me. Horat. Multa petenubus defunt mul-* *ta: many things are wanting to these, which desire many* *things.*

Compound
Verbes.

Also, Verbes compounded with, *Satis, Bene, and Male,* *will have a Dative Case: as, Satisfacio, I satisfie: Benefa-* *cio, I doe well: Malefacio, I doe ill: finally, certaine* *Verbes compounded with these Prepositions: Præ, ad, con,* *sub, ante, post, ob, in, and inter: require a Dative Case: as,* *Præluco, I light before one: Adjaceo, I lie by: Condoneo, I* *forgive: Suboleo, I smell somewhat: Antestor, I excell: Post-* *habeo I set lesse by: Objicio, I object: Insulto, I rebound:* *Interfero, I mingle: as, Præ: Cicero. Ego meis majoribus* *virtute præluxi: I have excelled mine ancestors in vertut-* *But, Præco, I go before: Pro vinco, for I erect: Præcedo,* *I go before: Præcurro, I runne before: Prævertor, I prevent:* *are joyned to an Accusative Case.*

Ad. Albo gallo ne manum admolariis: lay thou not thy *hand upon the white cocke.*

Con. Conducit hoc tux laudi: this maketh for thy praise. *Convixit nobis: he lived together with us.*

Sub. Ter. Subolet jam uxori, quod ego machinor: already *my wife hath some perceiving of the matter which I go a-* *bout.*

Ante. Cicero. Iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero: *I preferre most unjust peace, before the most just warre.*

Post. Posthabeo, postpono, famæ pecuniam: I esteeme mo- *ney lesse then a good name. Virg. Postposui tamen illarum mea-* *ria ludo: I have made lesse account of my serious affaires,* *then of their pastime. Terent. Qui suum commodum posthabet* *præ meo commodo: who made small reckoning of his owne* *commodity, in comparison of my benefit.*

Ob. Terent. Quum nemini obtrudi potest, iur ad me: when *he could be thrust upon none, they come to me.*

In. Impendet omnibus periculum: danger hangeth over all *mens heads.*

Inter. Cicero. Ille huic negotio non interfuit modo, sed *etiam præfuit: he was not onely present at this business, but* *also had the chiefe stroke therein.*

A few of these Verbes doe sometimes turne this Dative Case, into some other Case: as, *Quintil. Præstat ingenio a-* *lius alium: one man excelleth another in wit. Multos viro-* *rum anteit sapientia: he excelleth many men in wisdome. Ter.* *In amore hæc insunt vitia: these vices are in love. Plinius. In-* *terdico tibi aqua & igni: I forbid thee water and fire.*

A diverse con-
struction.

This

This Verbe, *Sum es fui*, to be, may oftentimes be set to *Habeo*, I have: and then the word that seemeth in the English to be the Nominative Case, shall be put in the Dative Case, and the word that seemeth to be the Accusative Case shall be the Nominative: as, *Est mihi mater*: I have a mother. *Non est mihi argentum*: I have no money. *Persius Velle suum cuique est, nec voto vivitur uno*: every one hath his own liking, neither doe they live after one lozt. *Virg. Est mihi amque domi pater, est injusta noverca*: I have at home a father, I have an unjust step-mother. But if *Sum*, be the Infinitive Mood, this Nominative shall be turned into the Accusative: as, *Scio tibi non esse argentum*: I know thou hast no money. And so likewise, of *Suppetit*, it is sufficient: as, *Horat. Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppetit usus*: for he is not poor, in whom there is sufficient use of things.

Suppetit.

Also, when, *Sum*, hath after him a Nominative Case and a Dative, the word that is the Nominative Case, may be put also into the Dative: so that, *Sum*, may in such manner speakings be construed with a double Dative Case: as, *Suo tibi præsidio*: I am to thee a safeguard. *Hæc res est mihi voluptati*: this thing is to me a pleasure. *Exitio est avidis maris nautis*: the sea is a destruction to greedy Mariners. And not only, *Sum*, but also many other Verbes may in such manner speaking, have a double Dative Case, one of the person, and another of the thing: as, *Do tibi vellem pignori*: I give thee my garment to pledge. *Verro hoc tibi vitio*: I impute this to thee, as a vice. *Hoc tibi laudi ducis*: thou thinkest this a praise unto thee. *Speras tibi laudi fore, quod mihi vitio venis*: thou dost hope that it will be a praise to thee, which thou accountest a fault to me? *Nemo sibi Mimos accipere debet favori*: no man ought to receive unto himselfe scoffers into favour.

These Datives, *tibi*, *sibi*, and *mihi*, are sometimes added for pleasure and not for necessity: as, *Ego tibi hoc effecum dabo*: I will dispatch this for thee. *Ter. Expedi mihi hoc negotium*: dispatch me this business. *Suo sibi hunc jugulo gladio*: I stab this man with his owne sword.

The Accusative Case after the Verbe.

Verbes Transi-

Verbes Transitives are all such, as have after them an Accusative Case of the doer or sufferer, whether they be Active, Commune, or Deponent: as, *Ufus promptos facit: ille maketh men prompt*. *Femina ludificantur viros*, women mock men. *Largitur pecuniam*: he giveth money. *Horat. Percontatorem fugito, nam garrulus idem est: avoyde thou a busle inquirer after matters, for he is a chattering babler*. *Idem. Nec retinent patula commissa fideliter aures*: open eares keep not surely things that are heard. *Virg. Inprimis venerare deos: first of all worship the Gods*. *Aper agros depopulatur*: the Boie spoyleth the fields.

Nenter Trans-

Also Verbes Nenters though otherwise Transitives and Absolute, may have an Accusative Case of their owne signification: as, *Endimionis somnum dormis*: thou sleepest the sleep

of Endimion, *Gaudeo gaudium*: I rejoyce. *Vive vitam*: I live: *Cicero. Tertiam ætatem hominum vivebat Nestor*. *Nestor lived three mens ages*. *Virg. — longam incommutatam videtur Ire viam*: she seemeth to go a tedious way without company. *Plautus. Duram servit servitutem*: he serves an hard bondage.

Authors oftentimes doe turne this Accusative into the Ablative: as, *Plaut. Diu videor vita vivere*: I seeme to live long. *Ire recta via*: to go the straight way. *Suetonius. Morre obiit repentina*: he died of a sudden death.

Sometimes these Verbes have an Accusative Case figuratively: as, *Virg. — nec vox hominem sonat, O Dea certe: nescit thy voce doth shew thee to be a woman, O Goddess then verily*. *Juvenal. Qui Curios simulat, & Bacchanalia vivunt*: who counterfeit sober men, and like Bacchus Drunks, live in riot and banquetting. *Horat. Passillos Rufillus oler, Gorgonius hircum*: Rufillus smelleth sweet dalls, Gorgonius ramusly like a Goat.

Verbes of asking, teaching, or araying, will have two accusative Cases: one of the sufferer, and another of the thing: as, *Rogo te pecuniam*: I aske thee money. *Doceo te literas*: I teach thee letters. *Quod te jamdudum hortor*: which thing long since I exhort thee. *Exuo me gladium*: I put off my sword. *Tu modo posce Deum veniam*: now crave thou pardon of God. *Dedoceo te istos mores*: I will instruct thee those manners. *Ridiculum est tene admonere istud*: it is ridiculous for thee to admonish me that thing. *Ter. Induit se calceos, quos prius exuerat*: he put on his shoes, which he had put off before.

Verbes of asking doe sometimes change one of the Accusative Cases into the Ablative: as, *Virg. Ipsum obtestemur, veniamque oremus ab ipso*: let us humbly beseech him, and aske pardon of him. *Ter. Suspicionem istam ex illis quere*: get that suspicion of them.

Verbes of asking
Two Accusative
Cases.

Verbes of araying, doe sometimes turne one of the Accusative Cases into the Ablative or Dative: as, *Induo te tunicam, vel tibi tunicam*: I put on thee thy coat.

The Ablative Case after the Verbe.

All Verbes require an Ablative Case of the instrument, put with this signe, *with*, before it, or of the cause, or of the manner of doing.

The instrument: as, *Ferit eum gladio*: hee strikes him with a sword. *Dæmona non armis, sed morte subegit Iesus*: Iesus subdued the Devils, not with weapons, but by death. *Horat. Naturam expellas furca licet usque recurrat*: though thou expellest nature with a forke, it will returne againe. *Virg. Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis*: these strive to defend with arrows, they with stones.

The cause: as, *Taceo metu*, I am silent for feare. *Terent. Gaudeo (ita medi ament) gnati causa*: I am glad (as God shall helpe me) for my sonnes sake. *Vehementer ira excaudat*: hee was

was very pale with anger. Horat. Invidus alterius rebus ma-
crefcit opimis: the envious man waxeth leane at the prosperi-
ty of another.

The manner of doing: as, Summa eloquentia causam egit:
he pleaded the cause with very great eloquence. Mira celeri-
tate rem peregit: he finished the matter with marvellous ex-
pedit. Juvenal. Vigilare viri, tacito nam tempora gressu Dis-
giunt, nulloque sono convertitur annus: O men, bee watchfull,
for the seasons passe away speedily with a still going on, and
the yeare is gone about with no noise. Ovid.

Dum vires annique sinunt, tolerate laborem:

Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede: so long as strength
and yeares doe suffer, indure labour, crooked old age will
presently come with a sic foot.

An exception.

To the Ablative Case of the cause, or of the manner of do-
ing, is added sometimes a Preposition: as, Baccharis præe-
brietate: thou ragest like a madde man with drunkenness.
Summa cum humanitate tractavit hominem: he entertained the
man with very great humanity.

The word of
price.

The word of price is put after Verbes in the Ablative
Case: as, Vendidi auro: I sold for gold. Empus sum argente:
I bought for money. Teruntio seu vitiosa nuce non eme-
rim: I would not buy it for a dodkin, or a rotten nut. Livius.
Multo sanguine ac vulneribus, ea victoria fecit: that victory cost
much blood and wounds.

Vili, &c.

Vili, of no value: Paulo, for a little: Minimo, for as little
as may be: Magno, for much: Nimio, for over-much: Pluri-
mo, for very much: Dimidio, for halfe: Duplo, for double are
often put without Substantives: as, Ter. Redime te caprum
quàm queas minimos: buy thy ransom for as little as thou canst:
Vili vanit triticum: wheate is sold for a little. Seneca. Con-
stat parvo fames, magno fastidium: hunger costeth but a little,
disdaine much.

An exception.

Except these Genitives, when they be put alone without
Substantives: Tanti, for so much: Quanti for how much:
Pluris, for more: Minoris, for lesse: Tantius, so great as you
list: Tantidem, for so much: Quantiliber, as great as may be:
Quancunque, how great soever: as, Quanti mercatus es
hunc equum? for how much dost thou buy this horse? Cene
pluris quàm vellem: truly for more than I would. Cicero.
Tanti eris aliis, quanti tibi fueris: thou shalt be of such price to
others, as thou shalt be to thy selfe. Non vendo pluris quàm
alii, fortasse etiam minoris: I sell not for more than others,
yea, peradventure for lesse. Ovid. Vix Priamustanti, totaque
Troja fuit: Priamus scarcely was worth so much and all Troy.
But if their Substantives be added, they are put in the Ab-
lative Case: as, Aul. Gel. Tanta mercede docuit, quanta haecenus
nemo: hee taught for so great a price, as hitherto no man
else. Minori precio vendidi, quàm emi: I have sold for a lesse
price than I have bought. Saving that after Verbes of
price, we shall alwayes use these Adverbes: Carius, dearer:
Vilius, of a lower price: Melius, better: and Pejús, worse: in
stead of their Casualls. Valeo, is sometimes joynd with an
Accusative Case: as, Varro. Denarii dicti, quod denos zris
valebant:

Valeo.

valebant: quinarii, quod quinos: they are called ten penny pie-
ces, because they were in value worth ten pieces of money:
five penny pieces, because five pieces.

Verbes of plenty, or scarceness, filling, emptying, load-
ing or unloading, will have an Ablative Case: as, Attilius
opibus: thou aboundest with riches. Cares virtute: thou want-
est vertue. Expleo te fabulis: I fill thee with fables. Spoliavit
me bonis omnibus: hee spoyled mee of all my goods. Oneras
stomachum cibo: thou loadest thy stomacke with meate. Le-
vabo te hoc onere: I will ease thee of this burden. Terent.
Amore abundas Antipho: thou exceedest with love Antipho.
Malo virum pecunia, quàm pecuniam viro indigentem: I had
rather see a man want money, than money wanting a man.
Salust. Sylla omnes suos divitiis explevit: Sylla hath filled all
his shouldiers with riches. Terent. Hoc te crimine expedi:
discharge thy selfe of this crime. Cicero. Homines nequissimi,
quibus te onerant mendaciis: with what lies doe most wicked
men burden thee? Virg. Ego hoc te fasce levabo: I will ease
thee of this bundle. Salust. Aliquem familiarem suo sermone
participavit: he made some familiar friend acquainted with
his speech.

Verbs of plenty.

Some of these Verbes will have sometimes a Genitive
Case: as, Virg. Quàm dives nivei pecoris, quàm lactis abun-
dant: how rich was he of cattell as white as snow, how full
of milke? Terent. Quasi tu hujus indigeas patris: as though
thou stoodst in neede of this father. Quid est quod in hac causa
defensionis egeat? what is there in this matter which need-
eth defence? Virg. Impletur veteris Bacchi pinguique ferinz:
they are filled with old wine, and fat venison. Idem. Post-
quam dextra fuit cædis saturata: after that his right hand
was filled with slaughter. Cicero. Omnes mihi labores leves
hære præterquam tui carendum quod erat: all paines were easie
to me, saving that I must needs want thy company. Pater-
num servum sui participavit consilii: he hath acquainted his
fathers man with his counsell.

Fungor, I doe a duty: Fruor, I enjoy: Uor, I use: Potior, Fungor.
I obtaine: Lætor, I rejoyce: Gaudeo, I am glad: Dignor,
I boughscape: Muto, I change: Munero, I reward: Commu-
nico, I impart: Afficio, I move affection: Prosequor, I fol-
low after: Impertio, I bestow: Impertior, I bestow: and the
like, are joynd to the Ablative Case: as, Cicero. Qui adipisci
veram gloriâ volunt, justitiæ fungantur officiis: they which will
get true glory, let them execute the duties of justice. Opti-
mum est aliena frui infanta: it is the best thing that is, to make
profit of anothers dotage. In re mala animo si bono utare
juvat: in a bad matter it is a good helpe if thou canst bee of
a good courage. Virg. Aspicte venturo lætentur ut omnia feclo:
behold how all things are glad, for the age to come. Cesar. Qui
sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur: who did glory so proud-
ly in their victory. Horat. Diruit, ædificat, mutat quadrata ro-
tundis: he pulseth downe, he buildeth, he changeth houses for
moneys. Vescor carnibus: I feede on fleshy. Virg. Haud e-
quidem tali me dignor honore: verily I boughscape not my selfe
such honour: Terent. Ut malis gaudeat alienis: that hee may
rejoyce

rejoyce at other mens harmes. Plaut. Exemplorum multitudine superfedendum est : we must leave off the multitude of examples. Macrobius. Regni cum societate numeravit : he accounted him in the fellowship of his Kingdome. Plaut. Communicabo te semper mensa mea : I will alwayes give thee meat at my table.

Prosequor, A. f. f. e. o.

Mereor.

Prosequor te amore, laude, honore, &c. I love, praise, and honour thee. Afficio te gaudio, supplicio, dolore, &c. I chide, punish, and grieve thee.

Mereor, I deserv : with these Adverbes, bene, well ; Male, ill ; Melius, better ; Pejus worse ; Optime, best ; Pessime, worst hath an Ablative Case with the Preposition. De : as. De me nunquam bene meritus es : thou didst never deserve well of me. Erasmus de lingua Latina optime meritus est : Erasmus hath deserved best of the Latine tongue. Catilina pessime de Republica meruit : Catiline hath deserved worst of the Commonwealth.

Verbs of receiving.

Verbs of receiving, distance, or taking away, will have an Ablative Case, with a Preposition, as, A, ab, e, ex, or de ; as, Accipit litteras a Petro : he received letters from Peter. Audi ex nuncio : I heard by the messenger : Longè distat a nobis : it is farre distant from us. Eripui te a malis : I delivered thee from the evils. Ituc ex multis jam pridem audiveram : I have heard that of many long since. Luc. A trepido vix abstinui ira magistro : the anger hardly abstaineth from their trembling ship-mistake. Nasci a principibus fortunatum est : to be borne of Princes is a thing that seldom faileth out. Procul abest ab urbe Imperator : the Emperour is farre distant from the City.

And this Ablative Case after Verbs of taking away is turned sometimes into the Dative : as, Subtraxit mihi cingulum : he tooke my girdle from me. Eripuit illi vitam : he tooke from him his life. Horat. Vivere si rectè nescis, discede penitus : if thou knowest not how to live orderly, goe thy ways to them that have skill. Ovid. Est virtus placidis abstinuisse bonis : it is a vertue to abstaine from delightfull good things. Virg. Heu fuge nate Dea, tæque hanc ait eripe flammis : shee said O thou that art borne of a Goddess, alas ! be packing, and carrye thy selfe quickly from these flames.

Verbs of comparing.

Verbs of comparing, or exceeding, may have an Ablative Case, of the word that signifieth the measure of exceeding : as, Praefero hunc multis gradibus : I preferre this man by many degrees. Paulo intervallo illum superat : hee is beyond the other but a little space. Deforme existimabar, quos dignitate praefaret, ab iis virtutibus superari : hee thought it a very unseemely thing to be overcome of those in vertues, whom hee called in authority.

An Ablative Case absolute.

A Noun or Pronoun Substantive joyned with a Participle, expressed or understood, and having no other word, whercof it may be governed : shall be put in the Ablative Case absolute : as, Rege veniente, hostes fugerunt : the King coming, the enemies fled. Me duce, vinces : I being Captaine, thou shalt overcome. Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus : Augustus reigning, Christ was borne : Imperante Tibe-

ri, crucifixus : Tyberius reigning, he was crucified. Juvenal. Credo pudicitiam Saturno regè moratam, In terris : I thinke chastity staid on earth, when Saturne was King. Nil desperandum Christo duce, & auspice Christo : we must despair in nothing, Christ being our Captaine, and Christ being our Leader. Jam Maria audio Christum venisse : currebat : when it was heard that Christ was come already, Mary ranne. And it may be resolved by any of these words : Dum, cum, quando, si, quanquam postquam, : as, Rege veniente : the King coming : that is, Dum veniret rex : whilst the King came. Me duce : I being Captaine : that is : Si ego dux fuero : if I bee Captaine.

To certaine Verbes is added an Ablative Case by a Synecdoche : and poetically, an Accusative : as, Aegrotat animo magis quam corpore : he is sicke in minde, rather than in body. Cauder dentes : his teeth are white. Rubet capillos : hee hath red haire.

Synecdoche.

Per some of them have a Genitive Case : as, Absurdè facis, qui angas te animi : thou doest foolishly to torment thy selfe in minde. Examinatus pender animi : he that is amazed doubteth in his minde. Despiebam meatis : I doted in minde. Plant. Diceret animi, quia ab domo abeundum est mihi : I am troubled in minde, because I must goe from home.

One and the same Verbe may in divers respects, governe diverse Cases : as, Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te praesente, propria manu : hee gave him his garment to pledge, thou being present, with his owne hand.

Diverse Cases.

The construction of Verbes Passives.

A Verbe Passive will have after him an Ablative Case with a Preposition, or sometimes a Dative of the doer : as, Virgilius legitur a me : Virgil is read of me. Tibi fama petatur : let a good name be chosen of thee. And the same Ablative or Dative shall be the Nominative Case to the Verbe, if it be made by the Active : as, Ego lego Virgilium : I doe read Virgil. Petas tu famam : chuse, or seeke thou a good name. Horatius. — laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis : he is praised of those, blamed of them. Cicero. Honesta bonis viris, non occulta petuntur : honest things, not unknowne, are desired of good men.

Passives.

But the Participles of these Verbes Passives have more usually a Dative Case : as, Virg. Nulla tuarum audira mihi, nec visa sororum : none of thy sisters was heard or seene of me. Horat. Oblitusque meorum, obliviscendus & illis : both forgetting mine, and to be forgotten of them.

The other Cases doe remaine in the Passives, which were of the Actives : as, Accusaris a me furti : thou art accused of theft by me. Habebis ludibrio : thou shalt be made a laughing stocke. Dedoceberis a me istos mores : thou shalt of me be taught those manners. Privaberis magistratu : thou shalt be deprived of thy magistracie.

Vapulo, I am beaten : Veneo, I am sold : Liceo, I am passed : Exulo, I am banished : Fio, I am made : being Neuter passives.

The construction of Neuter passives.

passives have a Passive construction: as, A preceptore vulabaris: thou shalt be beaten of thy master. Malo a cive spoliari, quam ab hoste venire: I had rather be spoiled by a Citizen, then sold by an enemy. Quid fiet ab illo? what will become of him? Virtus parvo pretio licet omnibus: virtue is prized at a low rate of all men. Cur a conviviis exulat Philosophia? what is the cause that Philosophy is banished from banquets?

The Infinitive
Moode.

The Infinitive Moode is commonly put after certaine both Verbes and Adjectives: as, Virg. — Juvat ulque morari, & conferre gradum: It delighteth to stay a while, and then to goe. Ovid. Dicere quæ puduit, scribere iussit amor: I am commanded to write those things which I was ashamed to speake. Marcial. Vis fieri dives Pontice? Nil cupias: Ponticus, wilt thou be maderly? Covet nothing. Virg. — & erat tum dignus amari: and he was then worthy to be loved. Horatius. Audax omnia perpeti Gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas: mankinde fool-hardy to endure all things, runneth headlong through mischiefes forbidden.

The Infinitive Moode is sometimes put figuratively, and absolutely: as, Hæcine fieri flagitia? Is it meete that such wickednesses should be committed? for here is understood: Decet, is it fit? Oportet, ought it? Par est: is it convenient? Aequum est: is it just? or such like. Virg.

Criminibus terrere novis, hinc spargere voces
In vulgum ambiguas, & querere concius arma.

We made them afraid with new crimes, hereupon hee cast abroad doubtfull speeches amongst the common people, and being guilty, did seeke weapons. For, terrere, to make afraid, spargere, to cast abroad, and querere, to seeke: being the Infinitive Moodes, are put for the Preterimperfect tense of the Indicative Moode: terrebat, he did make them afraid: spargebat, he did cast abroad: and querebat, he did seeke.

The construction of the Gerunds.

Gerunds.

Gerunds and Supines will have such Cases, as the Verbs that they come of: as, Otium scribendi literas: I desire to write letters. Ad consulendum tibi: to give thee counsell. Auditum poetas: to heare the Poets. Cicero. Effror studio videndi parentes: I am carried away with a desire to see my parents. Ovid. Utendum est ætate, cito pede præterit ætas: we must use our age, our age passeth away with a speedy pace. Virg. — scitatum oracula Phæbi Mitimus: we send to inquire of the oracles of Apollo.

Di.

When the English of the Infinitive Moode cometh after any of these Nounes Substantives: studium, causa, tempus, gratia, otium, occasio, libido, spes, oportunitas, voluntas, modus, ratio, gestus, satietas, potestas, licentia, consuetudo, consilium, vis, norma, amor, cupido, locus, and others like: if the Verbe should be of the Active voyce, it shall be made by the Gerund in di: as, Virg. Et quæ tanta fuit Romam tibi causa videndi? and what so great cause hadst thou to see Rome? Idem. Cæropias innatus apes amor urget habendi: a naturall love

of having honey urgeth the Athenian Bees. And the same Gerund in di, is used also after certaine Adjectives: as, Cupidus visendi: Desirous to goe to see. Certus eundi: sure to goe. Peritus jaculandi skillfull in shooting. Ignarus bellandi ignorant in warre. Virg. Aeneas celsa in puppi jam certus eundi: Aeneas already in the tall ship castle, is fully determined to goe.

Veritally the Infinitive Moode is put in stead of this Gerund: as, Peritus medicari: cunning in healing. Virg. — studium quibus arva cœri: who have a desire to behold their fallowes. Sometimes the Genitive Case plurall also, is elegantly added to these Gerunds: as, Quum illorum videndi gratia me in forum convulsidem: when I had gone into the market to see them. Terent. Date crescendi copiam novarum: grant leave for new playes to grow. Concessa est discipuli pomorum atque obsoniorum licentia: liberty is granted to snatch apples and victuals.

Note.

When you have the English of the Participle of the Present Tense, with this signe of, or with, coming after a Nounie Adjective: it shall in Latine making, be put in the Gerund in do: as, Defessus sum ambulando: I am weary of walking.

Do.

Also, the English of the Participle of the Present Tense coming without a Substantive, with this signe in, or by: before him: shall in Latine making, be put in the Gerund in do: as, Cæsar dando, sublevando, ignoscendo, gloriam adeptus est: Cæsar got glory by giving, by helping, by pardoning. In apparando totum hunc consumunt diem: in trimming they consume this whole day.

And the same Gerund in do, is used either without a Preposition, or with one of these Prepositions: à, ab, abs, de, è, ex, cum, in, pro: as, Deterrent a bibendo: they discourage from drinking. Ab amando: from loving. Cogitat de edendo: he thinketh of eating. Ratio bene scribendi, cum loquendo conjuncta est: the means of writing well is joyned with speaking. Cicero. Ignavi à discendo citò deterrentur: idle hopes are soone discouraged from learning. Amor & amicitia, utrumque ab amando dictum est: love and friendship both of them are derived of loving. Cicero. Ex defendendo, quam ex accusando, uberior gloria comparatur: more plentifull glory is gotten by defending, then by accusing. Consultatur de transendo in Galliam: they doe consult of passing over into France. Plaut. Pro vapulando ab hoste mercedem petam: I will require recompence of the enemy, for being beaten. Without a Preposition: as, Virg. — alium vitium, crescitque regendo: a vice is nourished, and increaseth by covering it. Scribendo discis scribere: by writing thou shalt learne to write.

The English of the Infinitive Moode coming after a reason, and shewing the cause of the reason: may be put in the Gerund in dum: as, Dies mihi ut satis sit ad agendum, vereor: I feare that a whole day will not be enough for me to doe my business.

Dum.

The Gerund in dum, is used after one of these Prepositions: onz:

ons; ad, ob, propter, inter, ante: as, Ad capiendum hostes: to take the enemies. Ob (vel propter) redimendum captivos: to redeem the captives. Inter cenandum, in supper while. Ante damnandum: before condemning. Inter cenandum hilares esse: be ye merry at supper time. Virg. — ante. domandum, Ingentes tollent animos: they will take haughty courages before they be tamed. Cicero. Locus ad agendum amplissimus: a very large place to plead in. Idem. Ob absolvendum munus ne acciperis: take not a reward to discharge them. Veni propter te redimendum: I came to ransom thee.

And when ye have this English, must, or ought, in a reason, where it seemeth to be made by this Verbe, oportet: it may be put in the Gerund in dum, with this Verbe (est) set impersonally: and then the word that seemeth in the English to be the Dominative Case, shall be put into the Dative: as, Abeundum est mihi: I must goe hence. Juvenal. O random est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano: we must pray that there may be a quiet minde in a sound body. Vigilandum est ei, qui cupit vincere: hee must watch which desireth to overcome.

The boyces of Gerunds are turned into Nounes Adjectives: as, Virgil. Tantus amor florum, & generandi gloria mellis: so great a love of flowers, and glory of making honey. Ad accusandos homines duci pramio, proximum laudis: to be moved by a reward to accuse men, is next unto robbery. Cur adeo delectaris criminibus inferendis? why art thou delighted so greatly in charging men with faults.

Of the Supines.

The first Supine hath his Active signification, and is put after Verbes and Participles that betoken moving to a place: as, Eo cubitum: I goe to lie downe. Spectaculum admittitur teneatis amici: ye my friends, being admitted to behold, keepe your laughter. Ovid. Spectaculum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipse: the women come to see, they come that themselves may be seene. Milites sunt missi speculatum arcem: the souldiers were sent to view the Tower.

But these, Do venum: I give to be sold: Do filiam nuptum: I give my daughter to be married: have a hidden motion. But this Supine in Reuter passives, and with the Infinitive Moods, hath a Passive signification: as, Plaut. Cusum ego non vapulatum, dudum conductus sum: I was lately hired to play the Cooke, not to be whipped. Ter. Postquam audierat non datum iri uxorem filio: after that hee had heard that she should not be given a wife to his sonne. Idem. Vocati sunt: they were called. Vado videre: I goe to see. It is put also absolutely with the Verbe est: as, Ter. Asum est, illicet, peristi: the matter is past cure, you may goe whither you will, you are utterly undone. Ovid. Itum est in viscera terra: he went into the bowels of the earth. Cessatum est satis: you have beene tole long enough.

The later Supine hath his Passive signification, and is put after Nounes Adjectives, as, Dignus, worthy: Indig-

mus, unworthy: Turpis, dishonest: Fœdus, filthy: Proclivis, inclined: Facilis, easie: Odiosus, odious: Mirabilis, marvellous: Optimus, best, and such like: as, Sum extra noxam, Ied non est facile purgari: I am without fault, but it is not an easie thing to be cleared. Quod factu fœdum est, idem est & dictu turpe: that which is filthy to be done, is filthy also to be spoken. Qui pecunia non movetur, hunc dignum spectatu arbitramur: we thinke him worthy to be regarded, which is not moved with money. And the same Supine may also be turned into the Infinitive Moods Passive: as it may be indifferently said in Latine, facile factu, or, facile fieri: easie to be done: turpe dictu, or, turpe dici: dishonest to be spoken. But in these: Surgit cubitu: he riseth from bed: Redit venatu: he returneth from hunting, Cubitu, and venatu, seeme rather to be Nounes, then Supines.

Of Time and Place. Time.

Nounes that betoken part of time be commonly put in the Ablative Case: seldom in the Accusative: as, Nocte vigilas: thou wakest in the night. Luce dormis: thou sleepest in the day. Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit: no mortall man is wise at all times: Nocte latent mendæ: blenishes are not seene by night. Id tempus creatus est consul: about that time he was created Consul. Although here there seemeth to be an eclipsis, or defect of the Preposition, per, by: or sub, under.

But Nounes that betoken continuall tearme of time, without ceasing or intermission, be commonly used in the Accusative Case, and sometimes also in the Ablative: as, Sexaginta annos natus: three score yeeres old. Hiemem totam sternis: thou sleepest all winter long. Hic jam ter centum totos regnabit annos: now in this place Kings shall reigne thrice an hundred yeeres: Virg. Idem. Noctes arque dies patet atri janua Divis: the gate of the black god of riches lieth open nights and dayes. Idem. Hic tamen hac mecum poteris regnare nocte: yet in this place you may rest with mee this night. Suer. Imperavit triennio, & decem mensibus, octoque diebus: he reigned three yeeres, ten moneths, and eight dayes. Cicero say also, In paucis diebus: for a few dayes. De die: for a day. De nocte: for a night. Promitto in diem: I promise against a day. Commodio in mensem: I lend for a moneth. Annos ad quinquaginta natus: about fiftie yeeres old. Per tres annos studui: I studied three yeeres. Puer id ætatis: a boy of that age. Non plus triduum, aut triduo: not above three dayes. Tertio vel ad tertium calendæ, vel calendarum: the third, or about the third before the Calends, or of the Calends.

Space of Place.

Nounes that betoken space betwene place and place, be commonly put in the Accusative Case: and sometimes also in the Ablative: as, Pedem hinc ac discesseris: goe thou not a foot from this place. Virgil.

A

Die

When necessity is signified, they are put without a Preposition; the Verbe (est) being added.

Gerunds are turned into Nounes

Un.

Note.

V.

Part of time,

Continuance of time.

Space of place.

Die quibus in terris (& eris mihi magnus Apollo)

Treis pateat cœli spacium, non amplius ulnas :

Tell me in what part of the earth, the breadth of heaven litch open, not more than three elnes, and I will count thee as great as Apollo. Jam mille passus processeram : now I had gone a mile. Absit bidui : he is distant two dayes journey : here, spacium, or spacio, the space : also, itinere, or iter, the journey : is understood. Absit ab urbe quingentis millibus passuum : hee is distant from the City, five hundred thousand paces.

Nounes Appellatives of Places.

Nounes Appellatives or names of great places be, for the most part, put with a Preposition ; if they follow a Verb, that signifieth moving or action, in a place, to a place, from a place, or by a place : as Vivo in Anglia : I live in England. Veni per Galliam in Italiam : I came by France into Italy. Proficiscor ex urbe : I goe from the City. In foro versatur : he litcheth in the Court. Meruit sub rege in Gallia he had a Souldiers pay under the King in France. Virgilius Ad templum non æquæ Palladis ibant Iliades : the Trojan women went to the Temple of iust Pallas. Salust. Legantes in Hispaniam majores natu nobiles : the elder noble men are sent in embassage into Spaine. B Sicilia decedens, Rhodum veni : departing from Sicillie, I came to the Rhodes. Per mare ibis ad Indos : by sea thou shalt goe to the Indians.

In a place, or at a place, if the place be a proper name, of the first or second Declension, and the singular Number, it shall be put in the Genitive Case : as, Vixit Londini : he lived in London. Studuit Oxonia : he studied at Oxford. Juvenal, Quid Romæ faciam ? mentiri nescio : what should I do at Rome ? I cannot lye. Ter. Samia mihi mater fuit, ea habitabat Rhodi : Samia was mother to me, shee dwelt at the Rhodes.

And these Nounes : Humi, of the ground : Domi, of the house : Militiæ, of warfare : Belli, of warre : be likewise used, as, Procumbit humi bos : the Ox lay downe upon the ground. Militiæ enervitus est : he was trauised up in warfare. Domi belique otiosi vivitis : ye live idle at home, and in warre. Terent. Domi belique simul vivimus : we have lived together at home, and in warre. Cicero. Parva sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi : weapons are small things abroad, unless there be counsell at home. Domi, admitteth no other Genitive Cases with it, then, Meæ, tuæ, suæ, nostræ, vestræ, alienæ : as, Vescor domi meæ, non alienæ : I eat at mine owne house, not at any other mans.

But if the proper name of a place, be of the third Declension, or of the plurall Number onely : it shall be put in the Dative, or in the Ablative Case : as Militavit Carthagini, of Carthagine : he warred at Carthage. Athenis natus est : hee was borne at Athens. Colchus an Assyrius ; Thebis nutritus, an Argis ? an Assian, or a Syrian, brought up at Thebes, or at Argos ?

Every Verb hath a Genitive Case, of the proper name of the place wherein an action is done : so that it be of the first or second Declension, and the singular Number. These Genitives humi, domi, militiæ, belli, doe follow the form of the proper names.

Domi.

Argos ? Suet. Lentulum Gentilius Tyberi genitum scribit : Gentilius writeth that Lentulus was borne at Tybur. Livius. Neglectum Anxuri præsidium : the garrison is neglected at Anxur. Cicero. Cum una sola legione fuit Carthagini : he was at Carthage with one onely band of souldiers. Horat. Romæ Tybur amo ventosus, Tybure Romam : I being unconstant, when I am at Rome, I doe love Tybur, and when I am at Tybur, I doe love Rome. Cicero. Quum tu Narbone mensas hospitium convomeres : when thou didst vomit upon thine hostes table at Narbo. Idem. Commendo tibi domum ejus, quæ est Sycone : I commend unto thee his house, which is at Syco. Likewise we say, Ruri, or rure educatus est : hee was brought up in the Countrey. Ruri fere se continet : he keepeth commonly in the Countrey. Persius. — rure paterno Est tibi far modicum : thou hast a little Come at thy fathers Countrey Farme.

To a place.

To a place, if the place be a proper name, it shall be put in the Accusative Case without a Preposition : as, Eo Romam : I goe to Rome. Concessi Cantabrigiam, ad capiendum ingenii cultum : I went to Cambridge, to get the ornament of wit. Eo Londinum ad merees emendas : I goe to London, to buy wares. Likewise, Domus, & Rus, be used : as, Confero me domum, I goe home. Recipio me rus : I goe into the Countrey. Ego rus ibo : I will goe into the Countrey. Virg. Ite domum satura, venit Hesperus, ite capella : my Goates, now that ye are full, goe yee home, the evening draweth on, hee yee parking.

To a place. To Verbs signifying moving to a place, the proper name of the place is put in the Accusative Case.

From a place, and by a place.

From a place, or by a place, if the place be a proper name, it shall be put in the Ablative Case, without a Preposition : as, Discessit Londino : he departed from London. Profectus est Londino (vel per Londinum) Cantabrigiam : hee went by London to Cambridge. Nisi ante Roma profectus esses, nunc eam relinqueres : but that heretofore thou wentest from Rome, now thou shouldst leave it. Eboraco (or per Eboracum) sum profecturus iter : I am to make my journey by Yorke. Domus and Rus, be likewise used : as, Abiit domo : hee went from home. Rure reversus est : he is returned from the Countrey. Nuper exiit domo : he went of late from home. Ter. Timeo ne pater nre redierit : I feare that my father will returne out of the Countrey.

To Verbs signifying moving from a place, or by a place, the proper name of the place is put in the Ablative Case.

The construction of Impersonals : the Genitive Case.

A Verb Impersonall hath no Dominative Case before him, and this word, It, or There, is commonly his signe : as,

D 2

Decet.

The Genitive Case.

Decet, it becommeth. Oportet aliquem esse: there must be some body. But if it hath neither of these words before him, then the word that seemeth to be the Nominative Case, shall be such Case as the Verb Impersonall will have after him: as, Me oportet: I must. Tibi licet: thou mayest.

These three Impersonals, Interest, it becommeth: Refert, it skillesh: and Est, for Interest, require a Genitive Case, of all casuall words, except these Feminines, mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, and eua: the Ablative Cases of the Pronounes Possessives: as, Interest omnium recte agere: It becommeth all men to doe well: Tua refert te ipsum nosse: it behooveth thee to know thy selfe. Interest magistratus tueri bonos, and mavertere in malos: It concerneth the Magistrate to defend the good, and to punish the wicked: Refert multum Christianas Republica, episcopos doctos & pios esse: it is very profitable for a Christian Common-wealth, that the Bishops bee learned and godly. Prudentis est multa dissimulare: it is the part of a wise man to hide many things. Cicero. Ea cædes criminum potissimum datur ei, cuius intersuit, non ei cuius nihil intersuit: that murder is impured as a crime to him chiefly, whom it concerned, not to him, whom it concerned not at all.

These Genitives are also added: Tanti, for so much: Quanti, for how much: Magni, for much: Parvi, for a little: Quanticunque, how great soever: Tantidem, for so much: as, Magni refert quibuscum vixeris: It is a matter greatly to be regarded, with whom thou ledest thy life. Tanti refert honeste agere: so greatly it concerneth to doe honest things. Vestra parvi interest: it toucheth you but a little. Et, interest ad laudem meam: it availeth to my praise.

The Dative Case.

These Impersonals and such like, require a Dative Case: as, Accidit, it falls out: Certum est, it is sure: Coningit, it chanceth: Constat, it is manifest: Confert, it profiteth: Competit, it agreeth: Conducit, it profiteth: Convenit, it is meet: Placeat, it pleaseeth: Displicet, it displeaseth: Doler, it grieves: Expedi, it is expedient: Evenit, it falls out: Liqueat, it is clear: Libet, it liketh: Licet, it is lawfull: Noceat, it hurteth: Obest, it hindreth: Prodest, it profiteth: Præstat, it is better: Patet, it is open: Stat, it standes: Restat, it remaineth: Benefic, it happens well: Malefic, it happens ill: Sufficit, it is sufficient: Superest, it remaines: Sufficit, it is sufficient: Vacat, for otium est, there is leisure: as, Convenit mihi tecum: there is an agreement for me and thee. Satis, Emori per virtutem mihi præstat, quam per dedecus vivere: it is better for me to die with vertue (or manfully) then to live with disgrace. Ovid. Non vacat exiguis rebus adesse Jovi: Jupiter is not at leisure to be present at small matters. Ten, Doler dictum imprudenti adolescenti, & libero: the saying grieveth the unwary and franke youth. A noverca malefic privignis: it falls out ill to sonnes in law by their step-mother. Virg. Stat mihi casus renovare omnes: that is, statum est: I am resolved to renew all cases. A Deo nobis benefic: it falls out well to us from God.

The Accusative Case.

These Impersonals require an Accusative Case onely, with their Compounds: Juvat, it delighteth: Decet, it becommeth: and Delectat, it delighteth: Oportet, it behooveth: as, Me juvat ire per altum: it delighteth me to goe upon the sea. Uxores ades curare decet: it becommeth a wife to care for the house. Dedecet viros, muliebriter rixari: it becommeth not men to scould as women. Caro. Patremfamilias vendacem, non emacem esse oportet: it becommeth an householder to bee a seller, not a buyer. But to these is added properly the Preposition, ad: Attinet, it belongeth: Pertinet, it pertaineth: Spectat, it belongeth: as, Mene vis dicere quod ad te attinet? wilt thou have me to say that, which belongeth unto thee? Spectat ad omnes bene vivere: it appertaineth to every one to live well. Quintil. Pertinet in utramque partem: it tendeth to both parts.

These Impersonals, will have an Accusative Case, with a Genitive: Pœnitet, it repenteth: Tædet, it irketh: Miseret, it pitieth: Miserebit, it pitieth: Pudet, it shameth: Piget, it grieveeth: as, Nostri nolmet pœnitet: we repent our selves: Mecivitaris tædet: I am weary of the City. Pudet me negligentie: I am ashamed of my negligence. Miseret me tui: I pitié thee. Me illorum miserebit: I pitié them. Cicero. Si ad centesimum vixisset annum, senectutis eum suæ non pœniteret: if he had lived to the hundredth yeare, it would not repent him of his old age. Tædet animam meam vitæ mea: It irketh my soule of my life. Aliorum te miseret: thou art sorry for others. Tui nec miseret, nec pudet: I neither pitié, nor am ashamed of thee. Fratres me quidem piget, pudeque: I am both grieved, and ashamed of my brother.

An Accusative with a Genitive

Some Impersonals doe sometimes become Personals: as, Nemo miserorum commiserescit: none pitteth the miserable. Virg. Non omnes arbuta juvant, humileque myrica: the groves and the low samarites delight not all men. Ovid. Námque decent animos mollia regna tuos: for womanly kingdomes become thy courage. Seneca. Agricola arbor ad frugem producta delectat: a tree growing up to beare fruit delighteth the husbandman. Te non pudet istud? dost not that thing shame thee? Non te hæc pudet? art thou not ashamed of these things?

Impersonals are made Personals.

Cæpit, it begetteth: Incipit, it begetteth: Desinit, it ceaseth: Debet, it ought: Solet, it is wont: and Poteest, it may: being joynted to Impersonals, doe become Impersonals: as, Quint. Ubi primum cæperat non convenire, questio onebatur: as soone as it began that they should not agree, a question did arise. Idem. Tædere solet avaros impendii: it is wont to grieve the covetous of charge. Desinit illum studii tædere: it ceaseth to grieve him of his study. Sacerdotem inficit pudere debet: it ought to shame a Priest of his ignorance. Quint. Perveniri ad summum, nil ex principis, non potest: it is not possible that men should come to the principall, but by the beginnings.

Cæpit, &c.

A Verb Impersonall of the passive voice, hath like Case.

Passive Impersonals.

as Personall Passives have : as, Benefic multis a principe : it is well done to many of the Prince. Caesar. Ab hostibus constanter pugnatur : the enemy fought constantly. Yet many times the Case is not expresse, but understood : as, Mani vi certatur : understand, ab illis : they fought with great force. Virg. — Arato discumbitur ostro : they lit down upon scarlet spread abroad.

Verbs Impersonals of the Passive voyce, being formed of Preterites, doe governe such Case, as the Verbs Preterites which they come of : as, Pareatur sumptui. let cost be spared. Because we say, Pareamus pecunie : let us spare cost.

When a Verb is signified to be done of many, the Verb being a Verb Preterite, we may well change the Verb Preterite, into the Impersonall in, ut, as, In ignem posita est, scilicet : she is put into the fire, they weep.

A Verb Impersonall of the Passive voyce, may be taken indifferently for every one of the Persons of both Numbers : as, Statur, it is stood : that is, scilicet, I stand : stas, thou standest : stat, he standeth : stamus, we stand : statis, yee stand : stant, they stand : by reason of an Ablative Case, with a Proposition, being joyned unto it : as, Statur a me, it is stood of me : that is, I stand. Statur ab illis : it is stood of them : that is, they stand.

The construction of a Participle.

A Participle.

Participles governe such Cases, as the Verbs that they come of : as, Fruiurus amicis : that shall enjoy his friends. Consulens tibi : counselling thee. Diligendus ab omnibus : to be loved of all men. Virg. — duplices tendens ad sidera palmas, Talia voce refert : holding up his two hands towards the skyes, he uttereth such things. Idem. Ubra lacte domum referent discentia capellæ : the young Goates will come home, their dugges full of milke. Though in these the Passive Case is more usuall : as, Ter. Restat Chremes, qui mihi exorandus est : Chremes remaining, who is to be intreated of me.

The Genitive Case.

The Genitive Case.

Participles being changed into Nounes require a Genitive Case : as, Pugilans litium : fleeing strife. Indoctus pile : unskillfull at the ball. Cupientissimus tui : most desirous of thee. Lactis abundans : abounding with milke. Salust. Alieni appetens : greedy of another mans goods. Sui profusus : lavishing his owne. Inexpertus belli : unexperienced in war.

Participles changed into Nounes.

Here note, that Participles may four manner of wayes be changed into Nounes. The first is, when the voyce of a Participle is construed with another Case, then the Verb that it cometh of : as, Appetens vini : greedy of wine. The second, when it is compounded with a Proposition, which the Verb that it cometh of, cannot be compounded withall : as, Indoctus, unlearned : Innocens, innocent. The third, when it cometh all the degrees of comparison : as, Amans, loving : Amantior, more loving : Amantissimus, most loving.

Doctus,

Doctus, learned : Doctior, more learned : Doctissimus, most learned. The fourth, when it hath no respect, nor expresse difference of time : as, Homo laudatus, a man laudable : Puer amandus, that is, amari dignus : a childe worthy to be loved. And all these are properly called Nounes Participials.

The Accusative Case.

These Participiall voyces, Perosus, bearing a deadly hatred : Exolus hating : and Pertasus, weary : have alwayes the Active signification, and doe governe an Accusative Case : as, Exolus scitiam : hating cruelty. Vitam pertasus, weary of life. Immundam seignitiem perosa : utterly detesting foule idleness. Astronomus exolus ad unum mulieres : an Astronomer utterly abhorreth women in generall. Suetonius : Pertasus ignaviam suam : weary of his owne slothfulness. Exolus, and Perosus, are read also with a Dative Case, if they signifie passively : as, Germani Romanis perosi sunt : the Germanes are extremely hated of the Romanes. Exolus Deo, & sanctis : hated of God, and the Saints.

The Accusative Case.

The Ablative Case.

Natus, borne : Prognatus, begotten : Satus, sprung : Creatus, come up : Creatus, created : Ortus, risen : Editus, brought forth : will have an Ablative Case : as, Ter. Bona bonis prognata parentibus : a good daughter, borne of good parents. Virg. — sacre sanguine divum : of thou which art descended of the blood of the Gods. Idem. — quo sanguine creatus : of what blood descended he : Ovid. Venus orta mari, mare præstat cuncti : Venus sprung of the sea, the sea is better for the travel : Ter. Terra editus, brought forth of the earth.

The Ablative Case.

The construction of the Adverb : the

Nominative Case.

EN, and ECCE, Adverbs of shewing, have often a Nominative Case : but seldom an Accusative : as, Virg. En Priamus, sunt hic etiam sua præmia laudi : Lo where is Priamus, even here are his rewards of praise. Cicero. Ecce tibi status noster : Lo, what is our state to thee. Virg.

The Nominative Case.

— En quatuor aras, Ecce duo tibi Daphni, duoque altaria Phæbo : see, four Altars, see two for thee Daphne, and two Altars for Phæbus. En, and Ecce, Adverbs of upbidding, are joyned to the Accusative Case only : as, En animum & mentem : see his courage and his minde. Juvenal. En habitum : see his apparell. Ter. Ecce autem alterum : but see another.

The Genitive Case.

Certaine Adverbs of place, time, and quantity, have a Genitive Case after them. Of Place : as Vbi, where : Undam, in what place : Nusquam, no where : Ed, thither : Longe

The Genitive Case. Place.

Longe, by farre: Quo, whither: ubi, in any place: Hec cine, what hither: as, Ubi gentium? what country? Quo terrarum abiit? into what part of the world is he gone? Nul- quam loci invenitur: he is found in no place. Eo impudencia- ventum est: it is come to that impudencie. Ubique gentium, every where.

Time.

Of Time: as, Nunc, now: Tunc, then: Tum, then: In- terea, in the meane while: Pridie, the day before: Postridie, the day after: as, Nihil tunc temporis amplius quam flere po- teram: I could then doe nothing but weepe. Pridie ejus die- pugnam incierunt: they entered the fight the day before that day. Pridie calendarum, or calendar: on the day before the Ka- lends.

Quantity.

Of quantity: as, Parum, a little: Satis, enough: Abunde, sufficiently, &c. as, Satis eloquentia, sapientia parum: eloquent enough, wisdom little enough. Abunde fabularum audivi- mus: we have heard enough fables. Multum lucri: much gaine.

Instar.

Instar, signifieth equality, measure, or likeness: as, Virg. Instar montis equum divina Palladis arte Edificant: by the di- vine art of Pallas, they build an horse like a mountaine. Mi- citur Philippus solus, in quo instar omnium auxiliorum erat: Phi- lip is sent alone, in whom there was a likeness of all aides. Ovid. Sed scelus hoc meriti pondus & instar habet: but this wickednesse hath the weight and measure of his desert. Sometimes it is put with the Preposition, ad: as, Vallis ad instar castrorum clauditur: the dale is inclosed, even like a campe. Populus Romanus e parva origine, ad tanta magnitudi- nis instar emicuit: the people of Rome from a small beginning is scene, even in the likeness of so great an highnesse. Ter. Ah, minime gentium, non faciam: alas, I will not doe it any wise. Vere the Genitive Case, gentium, is added, in the way of pleasantnesse.

The Genitive Case used, for pleasure, or a grace.

The Dative Case.

A Dative Case.

Certaine Adverbs will have a Dative case, like as the Names that they come of: as, Venit obviam illi: he came to meet him. For, we say; obvius illi: to meet him. Canit similiter huic: the singer like this man. Sibi inutiliter vivit: the liveth unprofitably for himselfe. Propinquus tibi sedet, quam mihi: he sitteth nearer to thee, than to me. These Datives be used adverbially: Tempori, by time: Luci, by day: Vesperi, in the evening: as, Tempori venit, quod omnium rerum est pri- mum: he came in time, which is the chiefest thing of all. Tempori surgendum: we must rise by time. Vespero cubandum: we must go to bed in the evening. Luci laborandum: we must worke by day. Luci occidit hominem: hee slew the man by day. Vidi ad vos afferri vesperi: I saw the child brought to you in the evening.

Adverbiall; Datives.

The Accusative Case.

An Accusative Case.

Certaine Adverbs will have an Accusative case, of the Preposition that they come of: as, Propius urbem: nearer the

the City. Proxime castra: next the tents. Castra propius ur- bem moventur: the camp is moved nearer the City. Salust. Proxime Hispaniam sunt Mauri: the Moores are next Spaine. Ceddo, being an Adverb of one earnestly desiring to be shew- ed, doth governe an Accusative Case: as, Ter. Ceddo quem- vis arbitrum: appoint whom you will arbiter.

Ceddo.

The Ablative Case.

Adverbs of diversity: as, Aliter, otherwise: Secus, otherwise: and these two, Ante, before: Post, after: are often found with an Ablative Case: as, Multo aliter, much otherwise. Paulo secus, a little otherwise. Multo ante, much before: Longe secus, farre otherwise. Virg. — longo post tempore venit: he came long time after. Paulo post: a little after. Antesse these be rather adverbs, then Ablative Cases.

An Ablative Case.

Adverbs of the Comparative and Superlative Degree, doe admit the Cases commonly serving the Comparative and Superlative degree: as is afore said: as, Accessit pro- pius illo: he came nearer him. Optime omnium dixit: hee spake best of all. Cicero. Regimus propius ad Deos, & propius a- teris: we read nearer to the Gods, and nearer from the earth. Livius. Paulo plus trecenta vehicula sunt amissa: some- what more then three hundred Chariots were lost. Idem. Hominum eo die caesi plus duo milia: there were slaine that day more then two thousand men. Plus, is joyned to Noun- native, Genitive, Accusative, and Ablative Cases: as, Livius. Plus quam quinquaginta hominum ceciderunt: more then fiftie men were slaine. Abierat acies paulo plus quingentos passus: the armie had departed more then five hundred paces. Ter. Distringita, aut plus eo, in nave fuit: I have beene in the ship thirty dayes, or more then that.

Note.

Plus.

What Adverbs doe agree to each Moods of the Verbs.

Ubi, when: Postquam, after that, and Cum, when: being Adverbs of time, are put sometimes to Verbes of the Indicative Mood, and sometimes of the Subjunctive Mood: as, Virg. Hac ubi dicta dedit: when he gave these words. Ter. ubi nos laverimus, si vobis lavato: when we have washed, if thou wilt wash thou. Virg. Cum faciam vitula pro frugibus, ipse venito: when I shall offer sacrifice with a Calf, for cozne harvest, come thou. Idem. Cum canerem reges & praelia, Cyn- thius aurem vellit: when I sing in verse of Kings and warres, Apollo twitcheeth me by the care. Were the former seemeth to be an Adverb, and the latter a Conjunction.

Note.

Donec, put for quamdiu, so long as: hath an Indicative Mood: as, Ovid. Donec eram sospes: so long as I was safe. Being put for, quousque, untill; it requirerh sometimes an Indicative Mood, and sometimes a Subjunctive: as, Virg. Cogere donec oves stabulis, numerumque referre iussit: untill hee had me to gather the sheepe to the Shep-folds, and to count the

Donec.

the number of them. Colum. Donec ea aqua quam addeceris, decocta sit : untill the water which thou hast added, bee boyled. Ovid. Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos : whilst that thou shalt be rich, thou shalt number many friends.

Dum.

Dum, noting a thing present, and not perfect : or set for Quamdiu, so long as : requirerh an indicative Mood : as, Ter. Dum apparatur virgo in conclavi : whilst that the maid is made ready in the inner parlour. Idem. Ego te meum dici tantisper volo, dum quod te dignum est facis : I will that thou be called my sonne, so long as thou doest that which is becoming thee. Dum, for dummodo, so that : will have sometimes a Potentiall, and sometimes a Subjunctive Mood : as, Dum prosum tibi : so that I may profit thee. Dumne ab hoc me falli conperiam : so that I finde not that I am deceived by this fellow. Dum, for donec, untill : hath onely a Subjunctive Mood : as, Virg. Tertia dum Latio regnantem viderit ætas : untill the third summer shall see thee reigning in Italy.

Quoad.

Quoad, for quamdiu, how long, or, as long as : is added either to the Indicative, or Subjunctive Moods ; but being used, for donec, untill : to the Subjunctive Mood onely : as, Quoad expectes contubernalem ? how long lookest thou for thy chamber-fellow ? Cicero. Quoad possem, & liceret, ab ejus latere nunquam discederem : as long as I could, and might, I never went from his side. Omnia integra servabo, quoad exieritis huc mitatur : I will keepe all things safe untill the army be sent hither.

Simulac.

Simulac, as soone as, and Simulacq, as soone as : serve to the Indicative, and Subjunctive Mood : as, Simulac belli patiens erat : as soone as he could away with warre. Virg. Simulacque adoleverit ætas : as soone as age grew ripe.

Quemadmodum.

Quemadmodum, even as : Ut, as : Utcunque, howsoever : Sicut, as : doe admit both the Moods : as, Erasmus. Ut saluabis, ita & resalutaberis : as thou saluest, so also thou shalt be resaluted. Horat. Ut sementem feceris, ita & metes : as thou hast sown, so also thou shalt mowe. Ut, for postquam, after that : is joyned to the Indicative Mood : as, Ut ventum est in urbem : after that they came into the City.

Quasi, &c.

Quasi, as : Ceu, as : Tanquam, as : Perinde, acsi, even like as : Haud secus acsi, no other wise then as : when they have a proper Verb, are used with the Subjunctive Mood : as, Tanquam feceris ipse aliquid : as though thy selfe hast done somewhat. Ter. Quasi non norimus nos inter nos : as if we knew not amongst our selves. Otherwise, they couple like Cases : as Novum hominem tanquam te : I knew the man even as thy selfe : Arridet mihi quasi amico : he smiles on me, as on a friend.

Ne.

Ne, not : an Adverbe of forbidding : is set before either the Imperative or Subjunctive Mood : as, Virg. Ne serui magna facerent : I that great sum, or which, be not cruel. Ter. Hic nebulio magnus est, ne metuas : he is a great knave, feare not. Ne, for non, not : serveth unto other Moods.

Adverbs turned into Propositions.

Adverbs having a casuall word to serve unto, are changed into Propositions : as, Juvenal : Cantabit vacuus coram lærone viator : the empty traveller will sing before the thief.

The construction of the Conjunction.

Conjunction copulatives, and disjunctives, and these four,

Conjunctions.

Quam, then : Nisi, except : Præterquam, save that : An, whether : couple like Cases : as, Xenophon & Plato fuerunt æquales : Xenophon and Plato were equall. Socrates docuit Xenophontem & Platonem : Socrates taught Xenophon and Plato. Sciam calidus esses, aut frigidus : I would thou werst cold, or hot. Albus an ater homo sit, nescio : whether the man be white or black, I know not. Est minor natu quam tu : he is younger then thou. Nemini placeat, nisi (vel præterquam) sibi : hee please none, except (or besides) himselfe. And sometimes they are put betweene diverse Cases : as when any private reason of a casuall word is against it : or requirerh it to be otherwise : as, Scidui Roma & Athenis : I studied at Rome, and at Athens. Est liber meus & fratris : it is my booke and my brothers. Emi fundum centum nummis & pluris : I bought the ground for an hundredth pieces of coine and more. Emi librum centum & pluris : I bought a booke for a hundredth shillings, or a noble and more. Vixi Roma & Veneris : I lived at Rome and at Venice. Horat. — in Meti descendant iudicis aures, & patris, & nostras : let them descend into the eares of censuring Meities, and of your fathers, and mine.

Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives, most commonly joyned like Moods and Cases together : as, Petrus & joannes precabantur & docebant : Peter and John prayed and taught. Recto stat corpore, despicitque terras : he stands with his body straight, and lookees downe on the earth. And sometimes like Moods, but diverse Cases : as, Et habetur & referetur tibi a me gratia : I both doe, and will thanke thee. Ter. Nisi me lactasses amantem, & vana spe produceres : but that thou assuredst me being in love, and drewest me on with vain hope, Tibi gratias egi & te aliquando collaudare possum : I have given thee thanks, and sometimes may commend thee.

Et, &c.

Et, although : Tamen, although : Etiam, although : Quamquam, howbeit : require an Indicative Mood, in the beginning of a sentence : but oftner a Subjunctive in the middle : as, Etsi nihil novi afferebatur : though no newes was brought.

Quamvis, although : and Licet, although : have more commonly a Subjunctive Mood : as, Quamquam animus meminisse horret : though my minde abhorre to remember it. Virg. Quamvis Elysiis miretur Græcia Campos : although Greece admires the Elysian fields. Ovid.

Ipse licet venias Musis comitatus Homere;

Nil tamen attuleris, ibis Homere foras :

Albeit thou thy selfe shouldst come. O Homer, accompanied with the Muses : yet if thou hast brought nothing, thou shalt goe Homer, out of the doores.

Ni, but that : Nisi, except : Si, if : Siquidem, for : Quod, because : Quia, because : Quam, then : Postquam, after that : Postquam, after : Ubi, for postquam, after that : Nunquam, never : Priusquam, before that : doe serve both to the Indicative

Ni.

tive and Subjunctive Mood: as, Quod redieris incolumis, gaudeo, I am glad that thou art returned in safety. Castigare, non quod odio habeam, sed quod amem: I chastise thee, not because I hate, but because I love thee. Aliud honestum indicas, quam Philosophi statuunt: thou shewest another manner of honesty than the Philosophers set downe. Plinius. Gravius accusas, quam patitur tua consuetudo: thou accusest more grievously then thy custome doth permit.

Si, if: is joyned to both the Moods: Et si, for Quamvis, although: to the Subjunctive onely: as, Ter. Redeam: non si me obsecret: should I returne? no, although thee doe intreat me. Si quis, if any: to the Indicative Mood onely: as, Si quis adest: if any be present.

Quando, because: Quandoquidem, because: Quoniam, because: are joyned to the Indicative Mood: as, Virg. Dicite (quandoquidem in molli consensimus herba:) say ye (because we sit together in the soft grasse.) Quoniam mihi non credis, ipse facito periculum: seeing thou beleevest not me, make triall thy selfe.

Quippe, forasmuch as: when it hath a proper Verb, will have an Indicative Mood: as, Danda est huic venia, quippe agrotat: leave is to be given to this man, forasmuch as he is sicke. If Qui, which: be added: it admitteth both the Moods: as, Non est huic danda venia, quippe qui jam bis pejeravit, or pejeraverit: leave is not to be given to this man, forasmuch as he is forsworne already twice.

Qui, which: when it hath the force of a reason, requirerh a Subjunctive Mood: as, Stultus es, qui huic credas: thou art a foole, which doest credit this fellow.

Cum, for quamvis, although: for Quandoquidem, because: or for Quoniam, seeing that: serveth alwayes to the Subjunctive Mood: as, Cicero. Nos cum precipi nihil posse dicamus, tamen aliis de rebus disserere solemus: although we say that nothing can be delivered in precepts, yet are we wont to discourse of other matters. Virg. Cum sis officiis Gravidus virilibus aptus: seeing that thou art fit Mars, for manly charges.

Cum, & tum, Cum, and tum: also, tum, doubled, doe couple like Moods: but in Cum, there is lesse contained, and therefore it is placed in the former part of the clause: and in Tum, more, and therefore it is set in the latter part: as, Amplectitur cum enu-ditos omnes, tum imprimis Marcellum: he both loveth all feared men, and especially Marcellus. Odicitur literas, tum virtutem: he hateth both learning, and also vertue.

Ne, an, nun, Ne, what: An, whether: Num, whether or no: being Interrogatives, for the Indicative Mood: as, Virg. —superatne, & vescitur aura Etherea? what, is he alive, and is he fed with the airy breath? But when they are taken doubtfully, or, indefinitely, they require the Subjunctive Mood: as, Vise num redierit: goe see whether he be returned or no. Nihil, esset fecerisne, an persuaseris: it skilltly nothing whether thou hast done it, or perswaded it.

Ut, being a conjunction causall, or perfective; and ut, for ne non, that not: after Verbs of feare, is joyned sometimes to

the Potentiall, and sometimes to the Subjunctive Mood: as, Ter. Filium perduxere illuc secum, ut una esset, meum: they brought my sonne thither, that he might be with them. Idem. Te oro Dave ut redeat jam in viam: I intreat thee Davus that he may now returne into the way. Idem. Metus, ut subter hostes: that is, ne non subter: I feare how mine hoste can abide constant: that is, that he cannot abide constant.

Ut, being a Conjunction of yielding; or put for, quamquam, although: and ut, for utpote, for as much as: serveth to the Subjunctive Mood: as, Ut omnia contingant quae volo, levare non possum: Albeit all things should fall out, which I would, I cannot be eased. Non est tibi fidendum, ut qui torques scelleris: there is not trust to be given to thee, considering thou art one which hast deceived to often. Ut qui solus reliquus fueris: as one which hast beene left alone.

Ut, for, postquam, after that: for, quemadmodum, as: or, sicut, as: and being an Interrogative; is joyned to the Indicative Mood: as, Cicero. Ut ab urbe discessi, nullum intermisi diem, quin scriberem: after that I departed from the City, I passed over no day, but I did write. Ter. Tu tamen has nuptias perge facere, ut facis: notwithstanding, goe thou on in making this marriage, even as thou dost. Idem. Credo ut est dementia: I beleeve that it is his madness. Virg. Ut valeat? Ut meminit nostri? how doth he? how doth he remember us?

Although also we spake of this, a little before, in the construction of the Adverbe.

The construction of the Preposition.

Sometimes the Preposition, In, and some other Prepositions also, are not exprest, but understood: and the call word neverthelesse put in the Ablative Case: as, Habeo te loco parentis, that is, in loco: I have thee instead of a father. Apparuit illi humana specie, that is, sub humana specie: he appeared unto him under the shape of a man. Discessit magistratu: that is, a magistratu: he is departed from his office.

A Verb Compound sometime requirerh the Case of the Preposition that he is compounded withall: as, Exeo domo: I goe out of the house. Praetereo te infalutatum: I passe by thee without saluting thee. Adeo templum: I goe to the Church. Virg. Nec posse Italia Teucrorum avertere regem: and not to be able to turne away the King of the Trojans from Italy. Idem. —emoti procumbunt cardine postes: the posts cast off from the hooks, lie flat on the ground. Idem. Detrudunt naves scopulo: they thrust the ships from the rocks.

Verbs compounded with, a, ab, ad, con, de, e, ex, in, doe oftentimes, and that eloquently, repeat the same Prepositions with their Case, without composition: as, Abstinerunt a viris: they abstained from men. Ter. Amicos advocabo ad hanc rem: I will call my friends to this matter. Cum legibus conferemus: we will compare with the Lawes. Cicero. Detrahere de tua fama, nunquam cogitavi: I never thought to detract from thy fame. Cum ex insidiis evaseris: when thou art

A Preposition.

A Preposition in composition governes often the same Case, which it doth, without composition.

Verbs compounded with, a, ab, &c.

In, for, erga, &c.

art escaped out of the flames. Ter. Postquam excessit ex ophebis : after he passed out from among the young striplings. Idem. Rempublicam cogitatione curaque incumbere : be careful for the Common-wealth, with thy cogitation and care.

In, for, erga, towards : for, contra, against : and for, ad, to : hath an Accusative Case : as, Virg. Accipit in Teucrium animum mentemque benignam : he taketh a kindly and courteous meaning towards the Trojans. Idem. Quid meus Aeneas in te committere tantum ? what so great a matter could my Aeneas commit against thee ? Quid Troës povere ? what could the Trojans ? Idem. Quid te Meri pedes ? aut quid via ducit in urbem ? whither doe thy feet lead thee ? Meris ? whither leads the way into the City ? Alas, In, is joyned unto an Accusative Case, as often as division, mutation, or increase of a thing with time is signified : as, Virg. Estque locus parvis ubi se via findit in ambas : and there is a place where the place divideth itself into two parts. Ovid. Versa est in cineres fospice Troja viro : Troy is turned into ashes, my husband being safe : Amor mihi crescit in horas : love groweth in me every houre.

In requirere an Ablative Case, when an action in a place is signified : as, Ovid. Scilicet ut fulvum spectatur in ignibus aurum : forsooth, as yellow gold is tried in the fire.

Sub, for, ad, to, for, per, through : and for, ante, before : hath an Accusative Case : as, Sub umbram properemus ; let us hasten to the shadow. Livius. Legati ferè sub id tempus, ad res repetendas missi : that is, per id tempus : the Embassadors are sent almost about that time to repeat the matters. Virg. — sub noctem cura recurat : that is, a little before night ; or night being at hand : a little before, or towards night, my care beginneth afresh. Otherwise, it admitteth an Ablative Case : as, Quicquid sub terra est, in apricum proferet ætas : whatsoevers is under the earth, time will bring forth into light. Virg. Sub nocte silenti : that is, in nocte silenti : in the silent night.

Super, for, ultra, beyond : is joyned to the Accusative Case : as, Virg. — Super Garamantas & Indos Proferet imperium ; he will enlarge his Empire beyond the Garamantines and Indians. Super, for, de, of : and in, upon : to the Ablative Case : as, Tacitus. Multus super ea re variusque sermo : much and diverse rumour of, or concerning the matter. Virg. Fronde super viridi : upon greene leaves

Subter, is with authorities in one signification joyned to both cases : as, Livius. Pugnatum est super subterque terras : they fought upon and under the earth. Virg. omnes ferre liber subter densa testudine casus : it pleaseth me to heare all chances under a thick Target.

Tenus, delighteth with an Ablative case, both singular and plurall : as, Pube tenus : up to the twist. Pectoribus tenus : up to the breast : but with a Genitive onely plurall : as, Crurum tenus : up to the legges. Genuum tenus : up to the knees. Aurium tenus : up to the eares.

Prepositions
turned into
Adverbs.

When Prepositions are set alone without a case, or doe forme the degrees of comparison : they are changed into Adverbs : as, Virg. — Longo post tempore venit : he came long after.

Idem. Pone subito conjux, ferimur per opata locorum : the self entreaty after, we are led through dark places. Idem. — coram quem queritis adsum, Troius Aeneas : I Aeneas the Trojans whom ye seek, am present before you. Qui autè non erit, post dolebit : he that bewareth not afore, shall be sorry afterwards. Coram laudare, & clam vituperare inhonestum est : a presence to commend one, and behind the back to dispraise, is an unhonest point.

The construction of the Interjection.

An Interjection

Interjections are often put absolutely, and without a Case : as, Virg. Spem gregis (ah!) silice in nuda connixa reliquit : ah, Silice hath left the hope of the flocke in the bare travell. Ter. Quæ malum dementia ? what madness in the Devils name ?

O, being an Interjection of exclaiming, is joyned to the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases : as, O festus dies hominis ! O joyfull day of man ! Virg. O fortunatos nimium, bona si sua norint, Agricolas ! O husbandmen too fortunate, if they knew their goods. Idem. O formose puer, tantum ne crede colori : O beautifull childe, trust not too much to thy beauty.

Heu, and proh, have sometimes a Nominative, sometimes an Accusative, and sometimes a Vocative Case : as, Heu pius : alas the godliness. Virg. Heu prisca fides : alas the ancient fidelity. Idem. Heu strepem invisam : alas the odious rage. Ter. Pro Jupiter ! tu homo adigeme ad insaniam : O Jupiter ! thou O man wilt drive me to madness. Idem. Pro Deum atque hominum fidem ! ah the truth of God and man ! Plaut. Pro sanctæ Jupiter : O holy Jupiter.

Hei, and veh, have a Dative Case : as, Ovid. Hei mihi, quod nullis amor est medicabilis herbis : ah me, that love is not curable by any herbs. Ter. Veh misero mihi, quanta de spe decidi : woe is me miserable man, from how great hope have I fallen ?

Of the Figures.

A Figure is a forme of speaking by a certaine renewed art. Of which in this place, we will deliver onely two kinds : that is to say, of a word, and of construction.

What a Figure is

The Figures of a word.

Of a word, there are sixe Figures : Próthesis, Aphæresis, Epenthesis, Syncope, Paragoge, and Apócope.

Próthesis, is the apposition of a letter or syllable to the beginning of a word : as, Gnatus, for, natus, a sonne. Tetuli, for, tuli, I have borne or suffered.

Aphæresis, is the taking away of a letter or syllable, from the beginning of a word : as, Ruit, for, eruit, he hath plucked up by the roots ; Temere, for, contemere, to despise.

Epenthesis, is the interposition of a letter or syllable in the midst

Próthesis.

Aphæresis.

Epenthesis.

midst of a word : as, Reliquias, the remaines : Religio, religion : the letter, l, being added. Induperatorem, for, Imperatorem, an Emperor.

Syncope.

Syncope, is the taking away of a letter, or syllable, from the midst of a word : as, Abiit, Perit, Dixi, repositum, &c. for Abiivit, he went away. Petiuit, he desired : Dixisti, thou saidst. Repositum, laid up.

Paragoge.

Paragoge, is the adding of a letter, or a syllable, to the end of a word : as, dicier, for dici, to be spoken.

Apocope.

Apocope, is the taking away of a letter, or syllable from the end of a word : as, Peculi, for peculii, of our owne substance : Dixin, for dixine, hast thou said. Ingeni, for ingenii, of wit.

The Figures of construction.

The Figures of construction are eight. Apposition, Evocation, Syllepsis, Prolepsis, Zeugma, Synthesis, Anastrophe, and Synecdoche.

Apposition.

What Apposition is.

Apposition, is a continued or immediate conjunction of two Substantives of the same Case, by the one whereof, the other is declared : as, Flumen Rhenus : the floyd Rhenus. And Apposition may be of many Substantives : as Marcus Tullius Cicero.

Sometimes Authors doe use these Substantives in diverse Cases, as if they did belong to diverse things : as, Urbs Patavii, the City of Patavium : with Virgil Urbs Antiochia, the City of Antioch : with Cicero.

In Apposition the Substantives are not alwayes of the same Gender or Number. For, as often as one of the Substantives wanteth the singular Number : or is a Poone Collective, they may be of diverse Numbers : as, Urbs Athenae : the City of Athens. Ovid. In me turba ruunt luxuriosa proci : the wooers, a riotous company, doe flocke together unto me. Virg. Ignavam fucos pecus a praesepibus arcent : they drive away from the hydes the drownes an idle cattell.

Apposition is three-fold.

Apposition is made for a three-fold consideration : for the restraining of a generality : as, Urbs Roma : the City Rome. Animal equus : a living creature, an horse. For the removing of equivocation : as, Taurus mons Asia : Taurus an hill of Asia. Lupus piscis : Lupus a fish. And for the attribution of some property : as, Erasmus vir exactissimo judicio : Erasmus a man of a most exact judgement. Nireus adolescens insigni forma : Nireus a stripling of an excellent beauty. Timotheus homo incredibili fortuna : Timotheus a man of an incredible fortune.

Evocation.

Evocation.

When as the first or second Person doth immediately call unto it selfe the third : they doe both become the first or second Person : as, Ego pauper laboro : I a poore man doe labour.

labour : Tu dives ludis, thou a rich man doest play.

Evocation therefore is an immediate reducing of the third Person, either to the first or second.

But it is to be noted, that the Verb doth alwayes agree with the Person calling : as, Ego pauper laboro. Tu dives ludis.

For, in Evocation foure things are to be noted : the Person calling, which is alwayes the first or second : the Person called, which is alwayes the third : the Verb, which is alwayes of the first, or second Person ; and the absence of a conjunction.

In Evocation, the Person calling, and called, are sometimes of diverse Numbers : as when either the Person called wanteth the singular Number : as, Ego tuae deliciae istuc veniam : I thy delight will come thither. Or, when as it is a Poone Collective : as, Magna pars Rusticorum amantates quoniam : a great part of us Students doe seeke pleasures : where, nos we, is understood. Or lastly, when as it is a Poone distributive : as, In magnis laesi rebus uterque sumus : in great matters we are both hurt.

Evocation diverse.

And there is a double Evocation : explicite, when, as well the Person calling, as called, is expressed : and implicite, when the Person calling, is understood : as, Sum pius Aeneas : I am godly Aeneas : where, ego, I, is understood. Populus superamur ab uno : we people are overcome of one : where, nos we, is understood.

Syllepsis.

Syllepsis, or Conception, is a comprehension of the more unworthy, under the more worthy : of *ovv*, *con*, and *νέω* : *sumo*.

Syllepsis.

And there is a double conception : namely, of the Persons ; as oft as a Person is conceived with a Person : and of the Genders ; as often as the more unworthy Gender is conceived with the more worthy. For the declaration whereof thou shalt note these things following.

A coupling by the Conjunction, & *and*, *nec* neither, *neque* neither, *and cum*, *for* & *and*, is the plural Number : and therefore requireth a Verb, Adjective, or Relative plural. Which Verb, Adjective, or Relative, shall agree in Gender and Person, with the more worthy Nominative Case, and Substantive : as, Quid tu & soror facitis ? What doe thou and thy sister make ? Ego & mater miseri perimus : I and my mother being miserable, doe perish. Tu & uxor, qui adfuitis, recedite : thou and thy wife were present, be ye witnesses.

Conception of Persons.

For the first Person is more worthy then the second or third, and the second more worthy then the third : as, Ego & pater sumus in tuto : I and my father are in safety. Tu atque frater es in periculo : thou and thy brother are in danger. Neque ego neque tu sapimus : neither I nor thou are wise. Virg. —divelli.

The more worthy Person.

— divellimur inde Iphitus & Pelias mecum : wee are pulled thence Iphitus and Pelias with me. Idem. — Rhemus cum fra- tre Quirino jura dabant : Rhemus with his brother Quirinus did minister justice. Notwithstanding, cum, doth rather desire a Verb singular : as, Tu quid ego & populus mecum desideret, audi : heare thou what I, and the people with me doe desire.

Conception of Genders.

The more wor-
thy Gender.

Also the Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine or Neuter ; and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter : as, Rex & Regina beati : the King and the Queene are blessed. Chalybs & aurum sunt in fornace probati : Steele and gold are tried in the furnace. Hinc per vim leges & plebiscita coacta : hence by violence lawes and statutes are forced.

An exception.

But when the Substantives doe signifie things without life, the Adjective or Relative is more usually put in the Neuter Gender : as, Virg. — cum Daphnidis arcum

Fregisti & calamos, quæ tu perverte Menalca, Et cum vicisti puero donata, dolebas : seeing that thou, O perverte Menalca, hast broken the Bowe and Arrowes of Daphnis, and which, when thou sawest given to a boy, thou didst reprove. Salust. Ira & agriudo permixta sunt : anger and sorrow are mixed together. Idem. Hinc bella civilia, cades, & discordia civilis, grata fuerunt : to this man, civill warres, slaughters, and civill discord were acceptable. Virga tua & baculus tuus, ipsa me consolata sunt : thy rod and thy staffe, they have comforted me.

Conception
double.

Propter hoc, Conception is either direct : as, when the conceiving, that is, the more worthy, and the conceived, that is, the more unworthy, are coupled by &, atque, or que, and : or indirect, when they are coupled by cum with : as, Ego cum fratre sumus candidi : I with my brother are white. Where both the Conceptions are indirect.

Syllepsis im-
plicitæ.

There is also a certaine implicit conception of Genders : as namely, when neither the Gender conceiving, nor conceived are expressed : but we doe speake of the man and woman both, even as of the man onely : as if I should say : Uterque est formosus : both of them are faire : speaking of the husband and wife both. So Ovid. Impliciti laqueis nudus uterque jacer : they lie both naked fast tied together with coards : speaking of Mars, and Venus, tied with a net together of Vulcanus.

Prolepsis.

Prolepsis.

Prolepsis, or Presumption, is a certaine summary pronun- ciation of things. And it is made, when the congregation or the whole doth aptly agree with the Verb or Adjective : and then the parts of the whole are reduced to the same Verb or Adjective : wherewith notwithstanding, for the most part, they agree not : as, Dux aquila volaverunt : hæc ab oriente illa ab occidente : two Eagles flew, this from the East : that from the West. Where, the congregation, or the whole, two Eagles

Eagles, doe in all things agree with the Verb, Volaverunt, dux : with which the parts, hæc and illa, this and that, be- ing referred to the same Verb, doe not agree in Number.

The congregation or the whole is a word of the plurall Number : as, Dux aquila : two Eagles : or equall therunto : as, Corydon, and Thyrsis. For, a copulation is equivalent to a plurall : as, Virg.

Compulerantque greges Corydon & Thyrsis in unum : Thyrsis oves, Corydon distentas lacte capellas : And Corydon and Thyrsis had d'v'ed the flocks into one : Thyrsis, the Sheepe : Corydon, the little Goates strouting with milke. Or the congregation is a Name Collective : as, Populus vivit, alii in penuria, alii in deliciis : the people live, some in wants, some in delights.

Sulpitius and Aldus affirme five things to be necessary in a Prolepsis. The congregation, as in the former example : dux aquila : the Chief, as, Volaverunt : the parts, as, hæc & illa : the determination of the parts : as, ab oriente, ab occidente : and the order : that is, that the whole goe before, and the parts follow.

And a Prolepsis is double : explicitæ, where all things are expressed, which should be in a Prolepsis : as, Equi concurrunt : hic à dextra, ille à sinistra Hippodromi : the horses runne : this from the right hand, that from the left hand of Hippodromus : and implicitæ, in which, something is hid : as, Ovid :

Alter in alterius jactantes lumina vultus, Querebant taciti nosse ubi esset amor : the one casting the lightes in the face of the other, they secretly sought where our love should be. One of the parts is want- ing with the determination : that is, & alter in alterius. And Alter alterius onera portare : heare ye the one, the burdens of the other : where vos is wanting : and the other part with the determination : that is, & alter alterius. Ter. Curemus æ- quam uterque partem : let us both regard the part alike : here the whole nos is understood, and the parts, alter & alter, are included in the distributive uterque.

Diomedes affirmeth it to be a Prolepsis, as often as we de- scribe before, which was done after : as, Virg. Lavinæque ve- sit litora : and he came to the shores of Lavinium. For, Lavi- nium was not then, when Aeneas came into Italy.

And it is called Prolepsis, of *pro*, that is, before, and of *lepsis*, sumo.

Zeugma.

Zeugma is a reduction of one Verb or Adjective answering the nearest, to divers Nominative Cases, or Substantives : to one, expressly, but to the other, by a Supplement : as, Cicero. Nihil te noxuram præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigilie, nihil timor populi, nihil concursus bonorum omnium, nihil hic muni- cissimus habendi senatus locus, nihil horum ora vultusque move- runt : hath the night garrison of the court, the watches of City, the feare of the people, the concourse of all good men, the most fenced place of the Senate, the faces and counte- nances

Note.

Five things ne-
cessary in a Pro-
lepsis.

A Prolepsis
double.

Zeugma.

nances of these, nothing moved thee? The Verb is here reduced expressly, to, ora, vultusque; but to the other Nominative Cases, by a Supplement. For, we must understand, praesidium movit; vigilia moverunt: timor populi movit: bonorum concursus movit: habendi senatus locus movit. But when there is a comparison, or similitude, the Verb or Adjective agree with the further Nominative Case or Substantive: as, Ego melius quam tu scribo: I write better than thou. Ego sicut fenum arui: I have become dried as hay. Hoc ille ita prudenter atque ego fecisse: he would have done this thing as wisely as I.

Likewise if there be nisi, but, or except: as, Ter. Talem filium nulla, nisi tu pareretur: such a son none but thou could bring forth. Though Poets are sometimes wont to speak otherwise: as, Ovid. Qui nisi secreta lacerant Phillida sive? who but the solitary woods have hurt Phillida? Of which we have spoken before in the concordance of the Verb and Nominative case: as, Cicero. Quare ut arbitror, pridie hie nos quam istic tu nos videbis: wherefore, as I guess, wilt thou see thee here, before thou shalt see us there.

Zeugma is made three ways. In person: as, Ego & tu stodes: I and thou dost stand. In Gender: as, Marius & uxor est irata: the husband and the wife is angry. In Number: as, — hic illius arma, hic currus fuit: here his weapons, here his Chariot was.

The Verb or Adjective is sometimes put in the beginning, and then it is called Protozeugma: as, Dormio ego & tu: I sleepe and thou. Sometimes in the midst, and it is called Mezozeugma: as, Ego dormio & tu: I sleep and thou. And sometimes in the end, and it is called Hypozeugma: as, Ego & tu dormis: I and thou sleepest.

In a Zeugma there are four things required: two Substantives: as, Rex & Regina: the King and the Queen. A Conjunction, which may be either Copulative, Disjunctive, or Expletive: as, & and, vel either, &c. A Verb, or Adjective: as, Irata est: she is angry. And that the Verb, or Adjective, doe answer the nearer Nominative Case or Substantive. There is a certaine kinde of Zeugma also, made by Adverbs: as, Cubas ubi ego: thou liest where I doe. Cuius quando nos: thou sleepest when we doe.

When a Verb is reduced to two Nominative Cases, and agreeeth with both, it is as they say a Zeugma of locution, not of construction: as Joannes fuit Piscator & Petrus: John was a fisher and Peter. And it is called Zeugma, as it were, copulatum: a thing coupled: of the Greek, ζευγνυμαι, or, ζευγνυμαι, which is, copulo, I couple.

Synthesis.

Synthesis, is a speech congruous in sense, not in voice: as, Virg. Pars in frustra secant: part doe cut in pieces. Geni armati: a nation or people armed.

And Synthesis is made sometimes in Gender onely, and that either for discerning the sex: as, Anser facta: a Goose. Elephas gravida: an Elephant great with young: or, for

Supplement

Zeugma is
threefold.

Synthesis.

Supplement sake; as, Præstet sub ipsa: Præstet before same: where the word City is understood. Centauro in magna: Centaurus in that great: where the word ship is understood. Sometimes in Number onely: as, Turba ruunt: the multitude doe fall. Aperite aliquis ostium: open the dore some body. And sometimes in Gender and Number both: as, Pars meri tenuere ratem: part being drowned, held the oare. Virg. Hæc manus ob patriam pugnando vulnera passi: this hand in fighting for my country indured wounds.

And it is called Synthesis of *ov*, that is, con, and *σιν*, that is, posicio: because it is a composition, that is, a construction made for signification sake.

Antiptosis.

Antiptosis, of *αντι*, that is, for, and *πῶς*, that is, Casus, sometimes with a very good grace: as, Virg. urbem quam statuo, vestra est: the City which I meane, is yours. Ter. Populo ut placerent, quas fecisset tabulas: that the fables which he had made, might please the people. Sermonem quem audistis, non est meus: the talke which ye have heard, is not mine. Ejus non venit in mentem: for, id: that came not into my minde. Although here, venit, came, is rather used Imperpersonally: Aristotelis libri sunt omne genus elegantia repleti: the bookes of Aristotle are stuffed with all kinde of elegancie: where is, omne genus, for omnis generis. Sed, id genus, quod genus, &c. for, cujus generis, of which kinde: ejus generis, of that kinde, &c. Idne estis authores mihi? for, ejus: art ye of that thing authours unto me? But sometimes is made as harder Antiptosis: as, Salve primus omnium parens patriæ appellare: for, prime: God save thee O thou chiefe of all, the father called of country. Habet duos gladios, quibus altero te occisurum minatur: altero villicum: for, quorum altero: he had two swords, with the one whereof hee threatneth to slay thee; with the other, the Bailife.

Synecdoche.

Synecdoche, is when that which is part is attributed to the whole: as, Aethiops albus dentes: an Ethiopian white in the teeth. Here, white agreeing to the teeth onely, is attributed to the whole Ethiopian.

By a Synecdoche, all Names Adjectives signifying any property: also, Verbs Passives and Pasters, signifying any passion: may governe an Accusative or Ablative Case, signifying the place, wherein the property or passion is: as, Aeger pedes, or, pedibus: diseased in the feet. Saucius frontem, or, fronte: wounded in the forehead. Doleo caput, or, capite: I am pained in my head. Redimitus tempora lauro: crowned on the head with Laurell. Truncatus membra bipenni: cut in the limmes with an axe, or twibill. Effusus laniata comas, contusaque pedus: rent in the scattered locks of haire, and bruised in the breast.

for

Antiptosis.

Synecdoche.

Note.

For these are Greek phrases: Excepto quod non similes: except that thou wait not together with them. Cetera laus glad of other things. Cetera similes, uno differunt: like in other things, in one thing they differ.

And it is called Synecdoche, of *συν*, which is, con, and *ἐκ*, *ἐκ* *συν*, suscipio, I take: because the whole is taken with his part.

If any desire to know perfectly the elegancies of figurative construction, let him read Thomas Linacer, discoursing learnedly, plainly, and plentifully, of Eclipsis, Pleonasmus, Enallage, and other figures.



OF PROSODIA.

What Prosodia is,



PROSODIA is that which teacheth the right pronunciation of words: called in Latin, Accentus: that is, a time, or the rising and falling of the voice.

And Prosodia is divided into Tonus, that is, tone, note, or accent: Spiritus, that is, breath: and Tempus, that is, time.

Tonus, is a rule or note, whereby a syllable in a word, is lifted up, or pressed downe. And it is threefold: Acutus, acute, or long: Gravis, heave, or short: and Circumflexus, circumflect, or betweene both.

An acute or long note is a thwart line, ascending towards the right hand thus: *^*. An heave or short note, is a thwart line descending towards the right hand thus: *˘*. A circumflect note, is a certaine thing made of both, by this figure: *ˆ*. Whereunto may be added an Apostrophus, which is a certaine piece of a circle, put to the top of a letter: in this manner: which sheweth the want of the last vowel of a word: as, Tanto me crimine dignum dixisti: for Tantone.

There are two spirits, or breaths: Sharpe and Light. Sharpe, whereby a syllable is pronounced sharpe: as, Homo, Honor. Light, whereby a syllable is pronounced without an aspiration: as, Amo, onus.

The first rule of tones, or notes.

Monosyllables.

A word of one syllable being short, or long by position, hath the long note: as, Mel, sel, pars, pax: being long by nature, it hath the circumflect note: as, Spes, Ros, sol, thus, rus.

The

The second Rule.

A word of two syllables, if the former be long by nature, and the latter short: the former is circumflect: as, Luna, mula; otherwise it hath the long note: as, Citus, latus, solers, situr.

The third Rule.

A word of more then two syllables, if the last but one be long, it hath the long note: as, Libertas, penates; but if it be short, the long note is put upon the last but two: as, Dominus, pontifex. Except the compounds of Facio: as, Beneficis, malefacis, calefacit, frige facit. But if the last syllable but one be long by nature, and the last of all short, the last but one is circumflect: as, Romanus, amator. The compounds fit, fit, have the long note in the last syllable: as, Malessit, calefit, beneficit, fansit.

An Appendix.

Because that now through mens ignorance, the circumflect note is scarcely by pronunciation discerned from the acute or long note; Grammarians doe confound the circumflect, with the acute.

Note. Confusion of accents.

The fourth Rule.

There are five things which doe trouble the rules of tones or notes.

What troubleth tones.

Difference.

Difference transposeth the note: as, Uná, being an Adverbe hath the long note in the last syllable. Iest it should seeme to be a Noun. So, eó, alió, aliquó, continuo, sedulo, potro, torté, quá, siquá, aliqú, nequá, illó, falso, citó, teré, plané, and other such like: putá for sicut, poné for post, coram, circum, aliás, palam, ergó, being a Conjunction: but, ergó for causa, is circumflect: as, Virg. — illius ergó venimus. All these therefore, even as the Greek acutiflones are in the end of sentences acuated, or marked with the long note: but in the consequent, gravated, or marked with the short note.

Difference.

So, for difference sake, the last syllable but two, hath the long note in these: Deinde, proinde, perinde, aliquando, siquando, nequando, hujusque, á longé, de longé, deinceps, duntaxat, deorsum, quá propier, quinimo, enimvero, propemodum, áhmodum, áffabré, interea loci, nihilominus, paulominus, when they are not diverse words, as are pube-tenus, crurum-tenus: for they are not compounds, as hactenus, quatenus, and such like.

Trans.

PROSODIA.

Transposition.

Transposition. 2 **T**ransposition inverteth the note, as it falleth out naturally in Prepositions: which being set after are gravated, or marked with the spot note: as, Virg. Trans tra per & remos: Te penes imperium.

Attraction.

Attraction. 3 **A**traction changeth the note, when as after any word followeth a conjunction inclitive: as, que, ne, ve. For these particles doe draw the accent to the syllable precedent, and doe acute it, or marke it with the long note: as, Luminæque, laurique Dei. Likewise, Dum, sis, nam, par elca. But where there is a manifest composition, the note is not varied: as, Denique, utique, itaque, undique, hic cine, and the like. Notwithstanding ubique doth keepe the note of his time, and ubivis.

Ubique, & ubi-
vis.

Concision.

Concision. 4 **C**oncision doth transference the note, when the words are curtailed by Syncope or Apocope. For then they retaineth the note of the whole word: as, Virgili, Valeri, Mercuri; for, Virgiliu, Valeriu, Mercuriu. So certaine Nounes and Pronounes syncopated, doe circumflect the last syllable: as, Arpinâs, Ravennâs, nostrâs, vestrâs, cuiâs; of Arpinâtis, Ravennâtis, nostrâs, &c. So, donec, of donecum. So, huc, illuc, istuc, adhuc, &c. for hucce, illucce, &c. And the compounds of dic, duc, fac: as, benedic, reduc, calefac.

Nounes and Pro-
nounes Synco-
pated.

Idioma.

Idioma. 5 **I**dioma, that is, the property of the tongue, varieth the note: so as that, if Greek words doe come whole into us, they keepe their note: as, Simois, periphas, doe acute the last syllable but one, or affect it with the long note: but being made Latine words, they have the last but two long, because they doe shorten the last but one.

Idioma.

But they which doe become altogether Latine, doe also keepe the Latine note: as, Georgica, Bucolica, the last but two having the long note: though with the Grecians, they have the note in the last syllable. So also comœpia, tragœdia, sôphia, symphônia, have the note in the last syllable but two, though in their own language they have it in the last but one.

Note.

Moreover, if the proper note of a strange word bee unknowne, it shall be the safest way to pronounce it after the Latine accent.

Common syllables. Common syllables are alwayes short in prose: as, Cèlebris, Cathedra, Mediocris.

Of the order of Verses.

Hitherto of notes and breaths: now we adde a few things concerning the time of syllables, and the manner of a verse

Time

PROSODIA.

Time is the measure of the pronouncing of a syllable. A short syllable is of one time, and a long one of two. A short time is noted thus, ˘; and a long one thus, - : as, -o terra.

Time.
A syllable.

Of syllables in just order disposed, are made feet. And a foot is the constitution of two or more syllables, by a certaine observation of times.

A foot.

Of feet, some are dissyllables; that is, consisting of two syllables: and some trissyllables: that is, standing of three syllables.

Division of feet

But concerning tetrasyllables; that is, words of foure syllables: it doth not much appertaine to our purpose, to discourse.

Dissyllables are, { Spondeeus } as { -- Virtus
Pyrrichius } --o Deus
Trocheus } --o Panis
Jambus } --o Amans

Trissyllables are eight, { Molossus } as { --- Magnates
Tribrachus } --- Dominus
Daqylus } --- Scribere
Anapestus } --- Pictas
Bacchius } --- Honestas
Antibacchius } --- Audire
Amphimacer } --- Charitas
Amphibrachus } o-o Venire

Moreover, feet in just number and order fitted, doe make a Verse. For a Verse is a speech consisting of a just and lawfull number of feet.

A verse.

He that will make a Verse, must first of all learne rightly to measure it by the feet, which is called scanning.

Scanning.

And scanning is a lawfull commensuration of a Verse upon every one of his feet.

What belongeth to scanning.

To scanning these things doe appertaine, Synalœpha, Eclipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, and Cæsuræ. Synalœpha is a certaine elision of a vowel before another in diverse words: as, Sera nimis vir' est crastina, viv' hodie.

Synalœpha.

And it is made sometimes in these words: as, Dii, diis, iidem, iidem, deinde, deinceps, semianimis, semihomo, semivultus, deest, deero, deerit, and such like. But heu, and ô, bee never put out.

Eclipsis is as often as m, with his vowel is taken away; the next word beginning with a vowel: as, Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, cui lumen ademptum: for monstrum, horrendum, informe, &c.

Eclipsis.

Synæresis, is the contraction of two syllables into one: as, Virg. Seu lento fuerint alvaria vimine texta: for alvearia.

Synæresis.

Diæresis, is, when as of one syllable divided are made two: as, Ovid.

Diæresis.

De

Debuérant

PROSODIA.

Cesura.

Dehūerant fūfos evolūisse fūfos. for evolūisse.
Cesura, is, When as after a perfect foote, a short syllable
is in the end of a word made long.

The kinds of Cesura.

Triemimeris.

Triemimeris, of a foote, and a syllable : as, Virg.

Penthemimeris.

Penthemimeris, of two feet, and a syllable : as, Virg.

Hepthemimeris.

Hepthemimeris, of three feet, and a syllable : as, Idem.

Enncemimeris.

Ostentans arcem pariter arcumque sonantem.
Enncemimeris, of four feet, and a syllable : as, Idem.

Illē lātus nivēum mollī fultus hūc cintho.

Of the kinds of Verses.

The kinds of Verses, whereof in this place we purpose
chiefely to treat : are Heroicum, Elegiacum, Asclepiadum,
Sapphicum, Phaleucium, Jambicum.

The Verse Heroicum.

Hexametrum.

The Verse Heroicum, which is also called Hexametrum, hath
in number six feet, being of two kinds : Dactylus and
Spondeus. The fifth place challengeth to it selfe Dactylus pe-
culiarly, the sixth Spondeus : the rest, either this, or that
as we will : as, Virg.

Ticrē tū patula recubans sub regmine fagi. Sometimes Spon-
deus is found also in the fifth place : as, Idem.

Note.

Charā Dēam scōbōlēs, magnūm jōvis incēmētūm. The last
syllable of every Verse is counted common.

The Verse Elegiacum.

Pentametrum.

The Verse Elegiacum, called also Pentametrum, consisteth
of a double Penthemimeris : the first whereof comprehendeth
two feet, Dactylicall, Spondaicall, or either, with a long syl-
lable also : and the other also two feet, but altogether dactyli-
cally with a long syllable : as, Ovid.

Res est solliciti plēnā timōris amor.

The Verse Asclepiadum.

Asclepiadum.

The Verse Asclepiadum consisteth of a Penthemimeris, that
is, of a Spondeus and Dactylus, and a long syllable, and then
two Dactyluses : as, Horatius.

Mēcēnās atavis editē rēgibūs.

The Sapphicum Verse.

The verse Sapphicum.

The Verse Sapphicum consisteth of a Trocheus, Spondeus,
Dactylus, and then two Trocheuses : as, Hor.

Jam

PROSODIA.

Jam satis terris nivis atque dirē. Notwithstanding, in this
kind of Verse, is added after three Verses, the Verse Ado-
nicum : which standeth of a Dactylus, and Spondeus : as,
Horat.

Adonicum.

Intēgēr vitæ, scēlēriscquē pūrus,
Nōn ēgēt Māuri iaculis nec arcū,
Nēc vēmētis grāvīdā sūgittis,
Fuscē, phārētrā.

The Verse Phaleucium, or, Endecasyllabum.

The Verse Phaleucium, or Endecasyllabum, consisteth of a
Spondeus, Dactylus, and then three Trocheuses : as,

Phaleucium.

Quōquō diffūgias pavēns Māb, li,
Nostrum non poteris latere vāstūm.

The Verse Jambicum Archilochium.

A Right Jambicall Verse consisteth of Jambuses onely : as,
Suis et ipsa Rōmā viribūs rūt. Notwithstanding, some-
times in places unequal for an Jambus it receiveth a Tribra-
chus, Spondeus, Dactylus, Anapestus : and in places equal a
Tribrachus, a Spondeus more seldome.

The verse Jam-
bicum.

This Verse is of two kinds, Dimetrum, and Trimetrum, or
Senarium.

The Verse Dimetrum.

The Verse Dimetrum hath four feet : as,

Dimetrum.

O cārminūm dūlcēs nōtæ,
Quās orē pulchrā mēllēs
Fūdis, lyraqū succinīs.

Trimetrum, or Senarium.

The Verse Trimetrum consisteth of six feet : as,

Trimetrum.

Quī nōs dāmnanē, sūnt hīstrīonēs māximī.
Juvenal. Nām Cūcōs simūlanē, vivūnt Bācchānālīā.

Of the quantity of the first Syllables.

The quantity of the first syllables is knowne eight wayes.
By Position, by a Vowel before a Vowel, by a Dip-
thong, by Derivation, Composition, Preposition, Rule,
Example, or Authority.

The quantity of
syllables.

Position. Rule. 1.

A Vowel before two Consonants, or before a double Con-
sonant in the same word, is every where by Position long :

1.

E 2

as,

PROSODIA.

2.

as, Ventus, axis, patrio.

If a Consonant end the former word, the word following beginning also with a Consonant: the Vowel going before is likewise by Position long: as, Major sum, quam cui possit fortuna nocere. The syllables, for, sum, quam, and sit, are by Position long.

But if the former word end in a short Vowel, the word following beginning with two Consonants, it is sometimes, though seldom, pronounced long: as, Virg.

Occultā spoliā, et plūrēs de pacē triumphōs.

A short Vowel before a Mute, a Liquid following; is common: as, Patriis, volucris. But a long Vowel is not changed: as, Aratrum, simulachrum.

A Vowel before a Vowel.

One Vowel before another.

1.

A Vowel before another in the same word, is always short: as, Dēus, mēus, tūus, pius, except the Genitive Cases in ius, having the second form of the Pronoun: as, unius, illius, &c. where i, is common: though in alterius, it be ever short: and in alius, ever long. Except also the Genitive and Dative Cases of the fifth Declension, where e, between a double i, is long: as, faciēi, otherwise not: as, Rēi, spēi, fidēi.

Fi, in Fio.

Fi, also in fio, is long, except there doe follow an e, and an r, together: as, Fierem, fieri: as, Juvenal.

Sic fiunt Gēsō mārītī.

Idem. Quōd fieri nōn possē pītēs. The Interjection, ohe, hath the first syllable doubtful.

The second Rule.

2.

A Vowel before another in Greeke words is oftentimes long: as, Dicte Pierides. Respice Læten; and in the Possessives: as, Aenēia nutrix. Rhodopēus. Orphēa.

A Diphthong. *Regula. 3.*

A Diphthong.

Every Diphthong with the Latines is long: as, Aurum, nēter, mulx, except a Vowel follows: as, Praire, prauultus, praeamplius.

Derivation. Rule. 4.

Derivation.

Derivatives have the same quantity with their Primittives: as, amator, amicus, amabilis, the first being short of amo. A few notwithstanding are excepted, which coming of short syllables, have their first syllable long: of which sort are these:

Vox,

PROSODIA.

Vox, vocis, of vōco
Lex, legis, of lēgo
Rex, regis, of rēgo
Sēdes, & sēdile, of sēdeo
Iumentum, of iūvo
Fōmes, & fōmentum, of fōveo

Jūcundus, of jūvo
Jūnior, of jūvenis
Mōbilis, of mōveo
Hūmanus, of hōmo
Vōmer, of vōmo
Pēdor, of pēde

And there are of the contrary side, which coming of long syllables, are pronounced short: of which sort are these.

Dux, dūcis, of dūco
Dīcax, maledīcus
And many such of dīco
Fīdes, of fīo
ārena } of āreo
ārista }
Pōsui, of pōno

Gēnuī, of gīno
Frāgor } of frāngo
Frāgilis }
Nōto, as, of nōtu
Nāto, as, of nātu
Dīsertus, of dīsero
Sōpor, of sōpio

And many others of both kinds, which are left to the Students, in reading to be observed.

Composition. Rule. 5.

The Compounds follow the quantity of their simples: as, Pētens, impētens, solor, consolor, lēgo, is, perlēgo, lēgo, as, allego. Except notwithstanding these short syllables, coming of long ones: as,

Ināuba } of aūbo. Deīero } of jūro
Pronūba }

Præposition. Rule. 6.

Of the Præpositions, these are always long: a, de, præ, se, e: except a Vowel doe follow: as, Virgill. Unda dehiscens. — Sudibūve prauultis.

Pro, also is long, except in these: Præcella, præsugus, præs, teruus, prænepos, propago, for a kindred, prœfanus, prœtor, prœfundus, prœfiscor, prœfari, prœpero, prœfugio, prœfeco. These, Procuro, profundo, propello, propulso, propago, as, have the first syllable doubtful. Prœpheta, and Prœpino, with a little o, are Greeke, and therefore they have the first syllable short.

Di, is also long, except in Dirimo, and disertus.

The rest of the Præpositions, if Position will suffer it, are short: as, ad, ob, ab, sub, re, in, &c.

Rule. Canon. 1.

Every Preterperfect Tense of two syllables, hath the former long: as, Lēgi, emi; except yet, Fidi, of fido, bibi, dedi, scidi, steti, cūi.

Canon.

Canon. 2.

Such as double the first syllable of the Imperfect tense, have the first likewise short : as,

Pēpendi	Pēpedi	Pēpugi
Tētendi	Tēpedi	Didici
Tōtendi	Tēfelli	Cēcidi, of Cado
Mōmordi	Tētigi	Cēcidi, of Cado

Moreover, a Supine of two syllables, hath the former also long : as, Mōtum, lātum, lōtum, crētum : except, Qūtum, sūtum, litum, itum, rūtum, rātum, dātum, sātum : and cītum, of cicio, es ; for cītum, of cicio, cis, being the fourth Conjugation, hath the first syllable long.

Example, or authority.

Be the quantity of those syllables, which falleth not under the former instructions, is to be learned by use, example, and authority of Poets, as by the most certaine rule. Let children learne therefore out of Poets to observe the common quantities of first syllables : of which sort are these. Britannus, bithynus, cacus, colyra, crathis, pachians, palatium, pelion, criticus, curetes, Diana, fidene, gradivus, hyaulus, pyrene, rubigo, ruilius, Hymen, Italus, liquor, liquidus, lycas, orion, rudo, Sycheus, Sycanius, and such like.

Of the middle syllables.

Middle syllables may be knowne, partly by the names, whereby the first are : and partly also by the increase of the Genitive Case : and by the analogie of the Conjugation.

Of the increase of the Genitive Case of Nomes of more then two syllables, we have spoken abundantly before in the Sunders of Nomes: whither thou maist resort in all doubts touching this matter. The rest may easily be supplied by much reading, and observation of the best Poets.

The analogie of the Conjugation, children have learned, by learning the rudiments: that is, that a .the figure of the first Conjugation, is long by nature : except in do, and his Compounds, when they are of this Conjugation : as, Dāmus, circundāmus, dābis, circundābis, dāre, circundāre.

Furthermore, let them marke, that the syllables, rimus, and riis, in the Imperfect tense of the Subjunctive Mood, are alwayes short : but in the future tense, in prole, long : yet in verse indifferent, according to Aldus : as, Imperfect tense, Amavērimus, amavēritis ; future tense, Amavērimus, amavēritis.

Sometimes the middle syllables do varie with the Poets; as in these following : Connubium, Ficedula, Malca, Pharsalia, Baravus, Sidonus, and the like.

Latine Adjectives in inus, have the last syllable but one, long :

What words have the first syllable common

The analogie of the Conjugat.

The variation of the middle syllables: Adjectives in inus.

ing : as, Clandestinus, mediastinus, parietinus, matutinus, vespertinus, repentinus : except these following : Diurnus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus, hornorinus, serotinus, oleaginus, faginus, cedrinus, carbasinus. And other Adjectives materiall, or formed in inus, of the names of metals : as are very many comming of Greeke Words in inus : as, Crystallinus, myrrinus, hyacinthinus, adamantinus, &c.

The rest, use, with the observation of Poets will teach better then any Grammar rules : which without any measure of end, are prescribed of Grammarians, concerning the quantity of middle syllables. Therefore, passing over these, let us now come to the laying open of the quantities of the last syllables.

Of the last syllables.

Although the last syllables doe either equal, or even exceed the very number of letters : yet we will orderly summe through them also.

First, words ending in a, are long : as, Amā, contrā, erga : except, Putā, itā, quā. Likewise Dominatives, and all Cases in a, of what Gender, Number, or Declension soever they bee : except the Vocatives in a, comming of Greeke words in as : as, o Aeneā, o Thomā : and the Ablative Case of the first Declension : as, ab hac musā : Numerals in ginta, have the finall letter, a, common, but oftner, long : as, Triginta, quadraginta.

Words ending in b, d, t, are short : as, ab, ad, caput. Such as end in c, are long : as, ac, sic, and hic, an Adverbe. But three in c, are ever short : Lac, nec, donec. Two are common : Fac, and the Pronome hic, and the Reater hoc, so that it be not the Ablative Case.

Words ending in e, are short : Marē, penē, legē, scribē. Except all words of the fifth Declension in e : as, Diē, fidē, with the Adverbes comming thereof : as, Hodie, quotidie, pridie, postridie, quare, qua dere, and the like : and the second Persons singular also of the Imperative Mood Active, of the second Conjugation : as, Docē, movē, manē, cavē.

Words of no more then one syllable ending in e, are long : as, Mē, rē, sē : except quē, nē, vē, Conjunctions encliticall. Also, Adverbes in e, comming of Adjectives, have their e, long : as, Pulchrē, doctē, valdē, for valide : wherunto adde, Fermē, ferē. But benē and malē, are altogether short. Lastly, words written of the Greekes with η, are by nature long : of what Case, Gender, or Number soever they be : as, Leikē, Anchisē, cetē, tempe.

Words ending in i, are Long : as, Domini, magistrī, amari, doceri : except mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, which are common : but nisi, and quasi, are short. Of which sort are also the Datives and Vocatives of the Greekes, whose Genitive singular endeth in i, short : as,

Huic	{ Palladi	{ Vocat. o	{ Amarylli
	{ Philidi		{ Alexi
	{ Minoidi		{ Daphni

Words

The last syllables.

A.

B, d, t, C.

E.

Monosyllables in e.

Adverbes.

I.

- L.** Words ending in *l*, are short : as, Anim^l, Annib^l, m^l, pugil, sal, confil : except Nil, contracted of nihil : and certaine Hebrew words in *l*, as, Michael, Gabriel, Raphael, Daniel.
- N.** Words ending in *n*, are long : as, Pzⁿ, Hymⁿ, quⁿ, Xenophon, non, demon : except forsan, forsitⁿ, an, tamen, at tamen, veruntamen.
- In.** Also, in, with his Compounds is short : as, Exin, subin, dein, proin. Adde hereunto those words which are curtailed by Apocope : as, Men ? Vidē ? Audin ? Nemōn ?
- En.** Nounes also ending in *en*, whose Genitive hath inis, short, as, Carmēn, crimēn, peccēn, tibicēn, cinis.
- On.** Also Greeke words in *on*, with the little *o*, of what Case soever : as, Nominat. Iliōn, peliōn. Accusat. Caucasōn, pylōn. And certaine also in *on*, as, Alexin : in *yn* : as, Ityn. In *an*, also, of Nominatives in *a* : as, Nominativo, Iphigenia, Aegina, Accusativo, Iphigeniān, Aeginān. For Nounes in *an*, of Nominatives in *as*, are long : as, Nominativo, Aeneas, Mariyas, Accusativo, Aeneān, Mariyān.
- O.** Words ending in *o*, are common : as, Amo, virgo, porro, docendo, legendo, eundo, and other voices of Gerunds in *do*. Except the oblique Cases in *o*, which are ever long : as, huius Domini, servō, ab hoc templo, damno : and Adverbs derived of Adjectives : as, Tanto, quanto, liquido, falso, primo, manifesto, &c. Except sedulo, modo, crebro, sero, which are common. But modo, and quomodo, are alwayes short. Also, Cito, with Ambo, duo, ego, and homo, are scant read long. Words notwithstanding of no more then one syllable in *o*, are long : as, Do, Ro : as also, Ergo, for caus. In like manner Greeke words in *o*, of what Case soever they be : as, Hec Sapphō, Didō : huius Androgeō, Apollo : hunc Aitho, Apollo.
- R.** Words ending in *r*, are short : as, Caesar, torcular, per, vir, uxor, turtur. Cor, is once in Ovidius found long : as, Mollē mēum levibus cor est violabile telis.
- Also, Fār, lār, vēr, fūr, cūr, are long : and Pār, with his Compounds : as, Compar, impar, dispar. Also certaine Greeke words in *er*, ending with them in *er* : as, Aer, crater, character, ether, soter : except pater, and mater, which with the Latines have the last syllable short.
- S.** Words ending in *s*, have terminations equall with the number of the Vowels : as, As, es, is, os, us.
- As.** First, such as end in *as*, are long : as, Amās, musās, majestās, bonitās : except the Greeke Nounes, whose Genitive Case singular endeth in *dos* : as, Archās, Pallās, Genitivo, Archadōs, Palladōs : and the Accusative Cases plurall of Nounes increasing : as, Heros, Heroos, Phyllis, Phyllidos, Accusativo plurali, Heroās, Phyllidās.
- Es.** Such as end in *es*, are long : as, Anchisēs, sedēs, patrēs : except Nounes in *es*, of the third Declension, which have the last but one of the Genitive Case increasing, short : as, Miles, segēs, divēs. But Ariēs, abis, paries, Cerēs, and Pēs, with his Compounds, as, Prepēs, bipēs, tripēs, quadrupēs, are long. Also, es, of sum, with his Compounds, is short : as, Potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs. To which may be added penēs : with Nounes of the

the Denter Gender, and the Dominative Cases plurall of the Greekes : as, Hyppomanēs, Cacoethēs, Cyclopēs, Naiades.

Words ending in *is*, are short : as, Paris, panis, tristis, hilaris. Except the oblique Cases plurall in *is*, which are long : as, Mēis, mēsis, of mēsa, dominis, templis. Also quēis, for quibus : with such as have the last syllable but one of the Genitive Case increasing long : as, Samnis, Salamis, Genitivo, Samnitis, Salamitis. Adde hereunto such as end in the Diphthong, eis, whether Greeke or Latine, of what Number or Case soever they be : as, Symoeis, parteis, omneis. And also all monosyllables : as, Vis, lie, except is, and quis, Nominatives, and bis, with Ovidius. Wherunto adde the second Persons singular of Verbes in *is*, whose second Persons plurall end in *is*, the last but one being long : with the future Tenses of the Subjunctive Mood in *is* : as, Audis, velis, dederis : Pluraliter, Auditis, velitis, dederitis.

Words ending in *os*, are long : as, Honor, nepos, dominos, servos : except, Compōs, impōs, and os, ossis : and Greeke Nounes with the little *o* : as, Delos, Chaos, Pallados, Philidos.

Words ending in *us*, are short : as, Famulus, regius, tempus, amantus. Such as have the last syllable but one of the Genitive Case increasing long, are excepted : as, Salus, tellus, Genitivo, salutis, telluris. Also, all words of the fourth Declension in *us*, are long, except the Dominative and Accusative Cases singular : as, huius manus, ha manus, has manus, & manus. Adde hereunto also monosyllables : as, Cris, thus, mus, sus, &c. And in like manner Greeke Nounes ending in the Diphthong *ou*, of what Case soever they be : as, Hic Panthus, Melampus, huius Sapphus, Clus : and the name of Jesus, to be honored of all the godly :

Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Iesus.

Lastly, all words ending in *u*, are long : as, Manu, genu, amant, diu.

The end of Grammer.

To God be all glory for evermore.

V



THE SUMME OF CHRISTIAN DOCTRINE OUT OF NOWELL.



Ex divina decem explicata præceptis, perfectam mihi ante oculos pietatis vivendi regulam promittit; ad quam vitam meam dirigere atque formare debeo, constituta, si uspiam aberrem, æternæ in me damnationis poena. Per legem igitur peccata mea, Deumque ob ea ira in me incensum, & sempiternam mortem divina mihi iustitia debitam esse agnosco: quæ cogitatio horribili formidine timoreque, ex peccatorum conscientia animum meum percellit; unde quum neque prudentia, neque viribus aut potestate mea, neque ulla humana Angelicave ope aut auxilio, neque ullo alio modo aut ratione, posse me omnino liberari intelligam; Evangelium me edocet, Christum Dei Filium, hominem sine peccato factum, morte sua meritas debitasque peccatis meis penas perolvissè, Dei Patris sui in me iram suo sanguine restinxissè, & me rursùm in gratiam ipsius reconciliassè, suæque iustitiæ fecissè participem, & æternæ secum vitæ (ô amorem, impersecurabilem!) hæredem instituisse. Quæ omnia Christi beneficia, mihi per fidem communicantur; quam fidem, Spiritus sanctus in animo meo per prædicationem Evangelii, iniecit; eamque per sacra mysteria sua, asperabilia, certissimaque indicia, & pignora divinæ erga me per Christum bonitatis, confirmavit. Quæ etiam fides, ut viva quædam atque ferax arbor, pietatis, iustitiæ, aliorumque bonorum operum fructus in me per omnem vitam procreare deberet: ad gloriam Dei, qui tot, & tantis beneficiis affecit, & ad utilitatem etiam, atque exemplum salutis proximi. Cujus fidei incrementum, facultatemque placendi Deo, & ista omnia præstandi, me, qui ex meipso maximè sum infirmus, atque imbecillus, continuis utque ardentissimis precibus, à Deo Patre bonorum omnium auctore, in nomine filii sui Jesu Christi servatoris nostri, efflagitare; gratiasque illi maximas, pro universis ab eo acceptis beneficiis assidue agere oportet. Quæ omnia necessaria sunt cognita atque observata, etiam ad salutem.

In turning Latine into English, or construing, the same order is to be observed, which the Grammar prescribeth for the turning English into Latine: as, to consider the Words, and their agreement: to seeke out in every sentence also, the principall Verbe, the Dominative Case, the word

next

next following; and what Case it must be, and so forth: as shall appeare also afterwards in a like example to this; the English whereof is as followeth, according to this rule.

Gods Law declared in the ten Commandments, doth set forth unto me before mine eyes, a perfect rule of living godly; according to which, I ought to direct and frame my life; the punishment of eternall condemnation being appointed for me, if in any thing I doe swaich from it. By the Law therefore I know my finnes, and God for the same inflamed with wrath against me, and everlasting death by Gods justice, to be due unto me. Which consideration doth strike my minde, from the conscience of my sins, with horrible feare and dread. From which, when as I understand my selfe to be able in any wise to be delivered, neither by my wisdom, nor strength, or power, neither by any humane, or angelicall help or aide, neither by any other way or meane; the Gospel doth teach me, Christ the Sonne of God made man, without sin, by his death to have paid the punishments deserved, and due to my finnes: by his blood to have quenched the wrath of God his Father against me: and to have reconciled me againe into the favour of him, and to have made me partaker of his righteousness, and to have ordained me (O the love unsearchable!) an heire with himselfe of eternall life. All which benefits of Christ, are imparted unto mee by faith. Which faith the holy Ghost hath instilled in my minde, by the preaching of the Gospel: and hath confirmed the same by his holy Spiritues, the visible and most assured signes and pledges of Gods goodnesse towards me, through Christ. Which faith also, as a certaine lively and fruitfull tree, ought to bring forth in me, throughout my whole life, the fruits of godliness, righteousness, and other good works: to the glory of God, who hath affected me with so many, and so great benefits, and to the profit also, and whole some example of my neighbour. The increase of which faith and ability also of pleasing God, and of performing all these things, it behooveth me, who of my selfe am most weak and unable, to aske by continuall and most earnest prayers, of God the Father, the author of all good things, in the name of his Sonne Jesus Christ our Saviour: and daily to doe unto him the greatest thanks for all the benefits received from him. All which things are necessary to be knowne and observed, even unto salvation.

After Construing, followeth Parsing: the large way whereof being opened in every part of speech; all the rest shall be passed over most briefly. Every day one part of speech would be parsed at large: setting the large parsing of the four parts undeclined, at one dayes taske: and then for the rest of the Lecture, the shortest parsing may serve, as followeth.

What part of speech is lex, the law? A Nounne. Why? A Nounne is the name of a thing that may be seene, felt, heard, or understood. What kinde of Nounne is it? A Nounne Substantive. Why? A Nounne Substantive is that which standeth by himselfe, and requireth not another word to be joyned with

it

Lex.
A Nounne Substantive, parsed at large.

OF PARSING.

him, to declare his signification. What kinde of Noun Substantive is it? A Noun Substantive common. Why? Because it is common to more. What Number is it? The singular. Why? The singular Number speaketh but of one. What Case is it? The Nominative Case. How know you? The Nominative Case cometh before the Verbe, and answereth to the question who, or what. What Verbe cometh this before? Before proponit, doth set forth. Aske the question. What doth set forth? Lex, the Law. Why is it the Nominative Case? When ye have found the Verbe, aske the question, who, or what, and the word that answereth the question, shall be the Nominative Case to the Verbe, except it be a Verbe Impersonall, which will have no Nominative Case. Why is it set before the Verbe? Because that neither any question is asked, neither is the Verbe of the imperative Mood, nor hath before his English, this signe, it, or there. What Article is it declined withall? With this Article hæc: as, hæc lex legis. What Gender then is it? The feminine. How know you? The feminine Gender is declined with this Article, hæc. Why is it the feminine Gender? Nomen crescentis, penultima si Genitivi syllaba acuta sonat, Genus est muliebre. What Declension of Nounes is it of? Of the third. Why? The third is when the Genitive Case singular endeth in i, the Dative in i, the Accusative most commonly in em, sometimes in im, and sometimes in om, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in e, sometimes in i, and sometimes both in e, and i: the Nominative plurall in es, the Genitive sometimes in um, and sometimes in ium, the Dative in bus, the Accusative in es, the Vocative like the Nominative, and the Ablative in bus. Doth this end so in every Case? Yea. Decline it. Singulariter Nominativo hæc lex, Genitivo huius legis, Dativo huic legi, Accusativo hanc legem, Vocativo, ô lex, Ablativo ab hac lege: Pluraliter, Nominativo hæc leges, Genitivo harum legum, Dativo his legibus, Accusativo hæc leges, Vocativo ô leges, Ablativo ab his legibus. Now if it be a Noun of the Neuter Gender, the answer to this question: Doth it end so in every Case? is negative, that is, no: of what Declension soever the Noun be. Then aske, Why doth it not end so in every Case? The answer whereunto is by this rule: Note, that all Nounes of the Neuter Gender, of what Declension soever they be, have the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Vocative like in both Numbers; and in the plurall Number, they end all in o; except ambo, and duo, which have the Neuter Gender in a. And so for the parsing at large, of all Nounes Substantives. Wherein, the rules as they lie in order, doe minister both the question and answer: as also in the large parsing of all the other parts of Speech is to be scene in that which followeth. Which helpeth the memory of all such as have the rules without the booke, and doe understand them through diligent examination; with all questions that are necessary to be asked, and considered in any word: and furnisheth the minde also, with answers thereunto. Now to proceed.

What

OF PARSING.

What part of Speech is divina, Gods, or divine? A Noun. Why? A Noun is the name of a thing that may be seene, felt, heard, or understood. What kinde of Noun is it? A Noun Adjective. Why? A Noun Adjective is that which cannot stand by himselfe, but requirerh another word to be joyned with him to declare his signification. What Number is it? The singular. What Case? The Nominative. What Gender? The feminine. Why is it the singular Number, the Nominative Case, and the feminine Gender? Because his Substantive is so. Why? The Adjective agreeth with his Substantive, in Number, Case, and Gender. Which is his Substantive? Lex, the Law. Why? When ye have an Adjective aske the question, who, or what: and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the Substantive to it. Aske the question, Divine, what? Divine Law. Is it an Adjective of three terminations, or of three Articles? Of three terminations. Of what Gender are the terminations? The first is the Masculine, the second the feminine, and the third the Neuter. Why? At tres variant voces, vox prima est mas, altera femina, tertia Neutrum. Is it declined like bonus, or like unus, like bonus. Why? A Noun Adjective of three terminations is thus declined. What Declension then doth it follow in declining? The first and the second. What Gender of it doth follow the first? The feminine. What Gender of it doth follow the second? The Masculine and the Neuter. Decline it then. Singulariter, Nominativo, divinus, a, m, Genitivo, divini, a, i, Dativo, divino, a, o, Accusativo, divinum, am, um, Vocativo, divine, a, m, Ablativo, divino, a, o; Pluraliter, Nominativo, divini, a, a, Genitivo, divinorum, arum, orum, Dativo, divinis, Accusativo, divinos, as, a, Vocativo, divini, a, a, Ablativo, divinis. Why doe you say divine, in the Vocative Case singular, and in the Masculine Gender? When the Nominative endeth in us, the Vocative shall end in e; except Deus, that maketh ô Deus. For these Adjectives in the Masculine Gender, doe follow the second Declension. Why doe you make the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Vocative alike in both Numbers, and in a, in the Plurall, in the Neuter Gender? Note that all Nounes of the Neuter Gender, of what Declension soever they be, have the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Vocative Cases alike in both Numbers, and in the plurall Number, they end all in o; except ambo, and duo, which make the Neuter Gender in a. For that rule concerneth the Neuter Gender also of Adjectives.

The questions and answers in all Adjectives of three terminations, are all one, untill you come to this question: Is it declined like bonus, or like unus? For then if it be not declined like bonus, the answer must be, it is declined like unus. And then goe on thus. Now doth it differ in declining from bonus? It maketh the Genitive Case singular in ius, & the Dative in i. Why? There are besides these, certaine Nounes Adjectives of another manner of declining, which make the Genitive Case singular in ius, and the Dative in i: which be these that follow with their Compounds. If it be totus,

33

solus

Divina.
A Noun Adjective parsed at large.

solus, ullus, alius, alter, uter, neuter, or any of these compounds, the next question is; *Why is it declined like unus?* *Whereunto the answer is:* In like manner be declined totus, solus, and alio ullus, alius, alter, uter, and neuter; saving that these five last rehearsed doe lacke the Vocative Case. Then come to this question: *What Declension doth it follow in declining?* and so forth, as before in divinus, to the end.

The questions and answers in all Adjectives of three Articles, are all one also with the former, untill you come to this question: *Is it an Adjective of three terminations, or of three Articles?* For if it be not an Adjective of three terminations, the answer must be; that it is an adjective of three articles. And then goe on thus. *Is it declined like solus, or like tristis?* If like solus: then aske: *What Gender is it?* *Whereunto answer:* the common of three. *Why?* Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia vocem, retinent genus omne sub una. If it be answered, that it is declined like tristis: then aske: *What Gender is the first voice?* *Whereunto answer:* the commune of two. *What Gender is the other voice?* The neuter. *Why?* Sub gemina si voce cadunt, vox commune duum prior est, vox altera neutrum. *What Declension doth it follow in declining?* The third. Then come to the declining of it. Afterwards aske: *Why doe you make the Nominative, the Accusative, and the Vocative alike, as before.* After which you are to come to the comparisons, as now we will goe on with divinus.

Whether doth divinus forme the degrees of comparison, or no? It doth. *Why?* Adjectives whose signification may increase, or be diminished, may forme comparison. *What degree of comparison is divinus, divine?* The Positive. *Why?* The Positive becometh the thing absolutely without excess: as, divinus, divine. *How doth the comparative exceed the Positive?* Somewhat in signification. Give it me in English in this word. *More divine.* *How doth the Superlative exceed the Positive?* In the highest degree. Give it me in English, in this word. *Most divine.* *Whether is this word compared according to the generall rules or no?* It is. *How is the comparative then formed?* Of the first Case of the Positive, that endeth in i. *How?* By putting to, or, and us. *Of what Gender is the termination in us?* Of the neuter. *How is the comparative declined?* Like tristis. *Which is the first Case in this word, of the Positive, that endeth in i?* The Genitive. Give it me. *Divini.* *Put or, and us to it: and so give me the comparative degree of this word in Latine.* *Divinior, & divinius.* Decline it. Singulariter Nominativo hic & haec divinior, & hoc divinius; Genitivo huius divinatoris, &c. *How is the Superlative degree in this word formed?* Of the first Case of the Positive that endeth in i. *How?* By putting thereto, s, and simus. *How is it declined?* Like bonus. *Put s, and simus, then to this word divini, and so give me the Superlative degree in Latine.* *Divinissimus.* Decline it. Singulariter, Nominativo, divinissimus, a, m, Genitivo, divinissimi, a, i: &c. Give me the accusative Case singular, and all the three Genders throughout every degree of this word.

word. *Divinum, divinior, divinissimum: divinam, divinior, divinissimam: divinum, divinius, divinissimum.* If the adjective be not compared, the first question touching comparisons, is answered negatively: for the reason rendered to the second question. If it be not compared according to the generall rules, the reason must be from one of the exceptions. And so for the large parsing of all Nounes, both Substantives, and adjectives.

Decline Decem, in the ten. Hi, ha, & haec decem: undeclin. *Why is it undeclined?* Omnes a tribus ad centum numeros, Aprōta vocabis. *Which is the Substantive to it?* Praeceptus, commandements.

Decem.

What part of Speech is, explicata, declared? A Participle. *Why?* A Participle is a part of Speech derived of a Verbe, and taketh part of a Noun, as Gender, Case, and Declension: and part of a Verbe, as Tense, and signification: and part of both, as Number and Figure. *Of what Verbe is this derived?* Of explicor: as, explicor, aris, vel, arc, aus sum vel fui, ari, aris, andus, to be declared. *What Gender is explicata?* The feminine. *What Case is it?* The Nominative. *How is it declined?* Like a Noun adjective of three diverse endings. *Why?* Participles of other Sentes, be declined like Nounes adjectives of three diverse endings. Like bonus, or unus: Like bonus. Decline it. Singulariter, Nominativo, explicatus, a, m; Genitivo, explicati, a, i; Dativo, o, a, o; Accusativo, um, am, um: Vocativo, e, a, um; Ablativo, o, a, o: Pluraliter, Nominativo, explicati, a, a. Genitivo, orum, arum, orum: Dativo, eis: Accusativo, os, as, as. Vocativo, ti, ta, ta: Ablativo, tis. *Of what Tense is it a Participle?* Of the Pretertense. *Why?* A Participle of the Pretertense, hath his English ending in d, t, or n, as, declared: and his Latine in tus, sus, xus, as, explicatus: and one tuius, as mortuus: and it is formed of the latter Supine, by putting to s, as explicatu, explicatus: except mortuus. *What signification hath it?* The Passive. For it becometh suffering. *What number is it?* The singular. *Why is it the singular number, the nominative Case, and feminine Gender?* Because his Substantive is so. *Why?* An adjective whether it be Noun, Pronome, or Participle, agreeth with his Substantive, in Case, Gender, and Number. *Which is his Substantive?* Lex, the Law. *Why?* When ye have an adjective, aske the question, who, or what; and the word that answereth to the question, shall be the Substantive to it. *Aske the question.* *What declared?* The Law. *Whether is it here turned into a Noun, or no?* It is not. *Why?* Because it is not construed with any other Case, then the Verbe that it cometh of, may be construed withall: nor compounded with any other Preposition, then the Verbe that it cometh of, may be compounded withall: neither doth forme the degrees of comparison: nor is without respect, or expresse difference of time. If a Participle doe forme comparison, the same questions are to be asked here, and so also answered, as before, in the comparisons of Nounes. Is explicata, a Participle simple, or compound? Compound.

Explicata.
A Participle
parsed at large.

Why

Præceptis.

With what? With ex. What is the simple of it? Plicatus, folded. And so of other Participles at large.

Decline præceptis, commandments. Hoc præceptum, i. &c. Why is it the ablative Case? Sometimes the Preposition, in, is not expressed, but understood, and the casual word ne, vertheless put in the ablative Case. Why hoc præceptum? Neutrum nomen in e, si gignit is; & quot in on, vel in um, sunt.

Perfectionem.

Decline perfectionem, perfect. Perfectus, a, m, i, z, i. Why is it so declined? At si tres variant voces, vox prima est mas, altera femina, tertia neutrum. Which is the Substantive to it? Regulam, rule. Compare it. Perfectus, a, m, i, z, i; hic & hæc perfectior, & hoc, perfectius, tioris; perfectissimus, a, m, i, z, i.

Mihi.

A Pronoun
parsed at large.
I say a Pronoun
Substantive.

What part of speech is mihi, to me? A Pronoun. Why? A Pronoun is a part of speech, much like a Noun, which is used in shewing or in rehearsing. Wherein is this like a Noun? It hath number, Case, and Gender, as are in a Noun. Is it used in shewing, or in rehearsing? In shewing. Is it reckoned up amongst the fifteen Pronouns? Yea. Rehearse them. There be fifteen Pronouns; Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras. Here is not mihi. It cometh of Ego. Whether hath it the Locative Case or no? It hath not. Why? Whereof four have the Accusative Case, tu, meus, noster, & nostras, and all other want the Locative Case: or, Quinto hæc sapere careat casus; & Pronomina præter quatuor hæc infra, noster, nostras, meus, & tu. What kinde of Pronoun is it? A Pronoun Primitive and Demonstrative. Why? These eight, Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, iste, hic, and is, be Primitives, so called, because they be not derived of others: and they be also called Demonstratives, because they shew a thing not spoken of before. What number is it? The singular. What Case? The Dative. Why? Verbes that betoken to command, or shew, will have a Dative Case. What Gender is it? It is referred to all the three Genders, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter. What declension of Pronouns is it of? Of the first. Why? These three, Ego, tu, sui, be of the first Declension. Decline it. Singulariter, Nominativo, ego, Genitivo, mihi, Dativo, mihi, Accusativo, me, Vocativo caret, Ablativo, à me: Pluraliter Nominativo, nos, Genitivo, nostrum vel nostri, Dativo, nobis, Accusativo, nos, Vocativo caret, Ablativo, à nobis. What Person is it? The first. Why? The first Person speaketh of himselfe: as, ego, I, nos, we. And so at large, of a Pronoun Substantive.

Ante.

A Preposition
parsed at large.

What part of speech is ante, before? A Preposition. Why? A Preposition is a part of speech, most commonly set before other parts, either in apposition or in composition. What part is ante, set before? Before oculos, eyes. Is it set in apposition or in composition? In apposition. Why? Because it remaineth still a word by it selfe. What kinde of Preposition is it? A Preposition serving to the accusative Case. Why? These Prepositions following serve to the accusative Case: Ad to, apud at, ante before, &c. Whether

is it turned into an Adverbe or no? It is not. Why? Because it is neither set alone without a Case: nor doth forme the degrees of comparison. And so of other Prepositions at large.

What part of speech is oculus, eyes? A Noun. Decline it. Hic oculus, i. Why hic oculus? Macula in er, ceu venter, in os, vel us, ut logos, annus. Why is it the Accusative Case? Ante, is a Preposition serving to the Accusative Case.

What part of speech is, piè, goddily? An Adverbe. Why? An Adverbe is a part of speech joynd to the Verbes, to declare their signification. What Verbe is this joynd unto? To Vivendi, of living, which is a certaine voice of a Verbe. To what end is it joynd to it? To declare his signification: as, of living: how? Goddily. What kinde of Adverbe is it? Of quality: as, bene, male, doctè, fortiter. Is it compared? Yea. Why? Certaine Adverbs be compared: as, piè, piissimè. Whether is it changed into a Preposition or no? It is not. Why? Because it hath not a casual word to serve unto. And so of other Adverbs at large.

What part of speech is Vivendi, of living, or to live? A certaine voice of a Verbe. Of what Verbe? Of Vivo: as, Vivo, is, xi, ere, endi, do, dum, sum, am, vens, auris, to live. To what Mood doth it belong? To the Infinitive Mood. What is it called? A Gerund. What Gerund? A Gerund in di. Why is it used here? When the English of the Infinitive Mood cometh after any of these Nounes Substantives, studium, causa, tempus, gratia, &c. If the Verbe should be of the Active voice, it shall be made by the Gerund in di. And so at large of Gerunds.

Decline regulam, a rule. Hæc regula, z. Why, hæc regula? Nomen non crescens Genitivo, Genus est muliebre. Why is it the Accusative Case? Verbes Transitives are all such as have after them an Accusative Case, of the doer or sufferer: whether they be Active, Commune, or Dependent. Which is the Verbe? Proponit, doth set forth.

What part of speech is Proponit, doth set forth? A Verb. Why? A Verbe is a part of speech declined with Mood and Tense, and betokeneth doing, suffering, or being. Hath this Mood, and Tense? Yea. Whether doth it betoken doing, suffering, or being? Doing. What kinde of Verbe is it? A Verbe Personall. Why? Of Verbes, such as have Persons, be called Personals. What kinde of Verbe Personall is it? A Verbe Active. Why? A Verbe Active endeth in o, and betokeneth to doe; and by putting to r, it is made a Passive. Give me the Indicative Mood, the Present Tense, the singular Number, and the first and second Persons of it. Propono, is. Make it a Passive. Proponor. Give me the Indicative Mood, the Preterperfect Tense, the singular Number, and the first Person of it. Proposui. Why proposui? Præteritum dat idem simplex, & compositivum, sed syllaba semper quam simplex geminat, composito non geminatur, præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo: atq; a do, disco, sto, posco, rice creatis. Give me the Infinitive Mood, the Present Tense, and the Preterperfect Tense of it. Proponere.

Oculos.

Piè.

An Adverbe
parsed at large.

Vivendi.

A Gerund
parsed at large.

Regulam.

Proponit.

A Verbe personall
parsed at large.

here. Is it a Verbe simple or compound? Compound. *Quid* what? *Quid* with pro. *Quid* is the simple Verbe? *Pono*. *Quid* what? *Quid* is propositio, doth set forth? The Indicative. *Quid* what? The Indicative Mode sheweth a reason true or false, or else asketh a question. Doth this shew a reason, or aske a question? It sheweth a reason. *Quid* what be the Gerunds of it? *Proponendi*, do, dum *Quid* what be the Supines of it? *Propositum*, tu. *Quid* what be the Participles of it? *Proponens*, *propositurus*. *Quid* hath it these two Participles? Of a Verb Active, and of a Verbe Passive, which have the Supines, come two Participles; one of the Present Tense, and another of the future in *rus*. *Quid* what Tense is *Proponit*, doth set forth? The Present Tense. *Quid* what Tense is *Proposet*, speaketh of the time that now is. *Quid* what Number is it? The singular. *Quid* what Person? The third. *Quid* what is the singular Number, and the third Person? Because his Nominative Case is so. *Quid* what? A Verbe Personal agreeeth with his Nominative Case, in Number and Person. *Quid* what is his Nominative Case? *Lex*, the Law. *Quid* what? When you have found the Verbe, aske the question who, or what, and the word that answereth the question, shall be the Nominative Case to the Verbe. Aske the question. *Quid* what doth set forth? The Law doth set forth. Of what Conjugation of Verbes in *o*, is it? Of the third. *Quid* what? The third Conjugation hath *e*, short before *re*, and *ris*: as, *proponere*, *proponeris*. After what example of Verbes in *o*, is it declined? After *lego*. Decline it. *Propono*, *is*, *fui*, *ere*, *endi*, *do*, *dum*, *stum*, *tu*, *nens*, *sturus*: to set forth. *Clar* it in the Indicative Mode, and Present Tense. Indicative Mode Present Tense singular, *Propono*, *is*, *it*: pluraliter, *proponimus*, *itis*, *nunt*. And so at large of all Verbes Personals.

Quid what part of speech is *ad*, to, or according to. A Preposition, serving to the Accusative Case.

Quid what part of speech is *quam*, which? A Pronoun. Is it used in shewing, or rehearsing? In rehearsing. Is it reckoned up amongst the fixtene Pronouns? No. *Quid* what then doe you call it a Pronoun? To these may be added these Compounds: *Ego*, *me*, *idem*; and also *qui*, *quae*, *quod*. *Quid* what kind of Pronoun is it? A Pronoun Relative. *Quid* what? These seven, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, and *qui*, be Relatives, because they rehearse a thing that was spoken of before. *Quid* what number is it? The singular. *Quid* what Case? The accusative. *Quid* what? Sometimes the Relative is governed of the Preposition set before him; as here of *ad*, according to. *Quid* what Gender is it? The feminine. *Quid* what declension of Pronouns is it of? Of the second. *Quid* what? These five, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *qui*, be of the second Declension, and are thus declined. Decline it. Singulariter, Nominativo, *Qui*, *a*, *d*, Genitivo, *cujus*, Dativo, *cui*, Accusativo, *quem*, *quam*, *quod*, Vocativo, *care*, Ablativo, *quo*, *a*, *o*, *vel*, *i*; Pluraliter, Nominativo, *qui*, *a*, *z*, Genitivo, *quorum*, *arum*, *orum*, Dativo, *quibus*, *vel*, *queis*, Accusativo, *quos*, *as*, *a*, *z*, Vocativo, *car*, *et*,

Ad.

Quam.

A Pronoun Relative parted at large.

ret, Ablativo, *quibus* *vel* *queis*. *Quid* what Person is it? The third. *Quid* what? The third person is spoken of, and therefore all nouns, pronouns, and participles, be of the third person. *Quid* what is the singular number, the feminine Gender, and the third person? Because his antecedent is so. *Quid* what? The Relative agreeeth with his antecedent, in gender, number, and person. *Quid* what is his antecedent? *Regulam*, rule. *Quid* what? When ye have a Relative, aske the question, who, or what, and the word that answereth the question, shall be the antecedent to it. Aske the question. According to what? According to which rule. The questions and answers here omitted, may be supplied out of the words, *mibi*, before: and so also, concerning the word *meus*, following. And so at large of other Relatives.

Decline *viam*, life. *Hac* *vita*, *a*. *Quid* what, *hac* *vita*? *Nomen* non crecens, &c. *Quid* what is it the accusative case? Verbes transitives, &c. For it followeth *formare*, to frame.

Quid what part of speech is *meam*, my? A pronoun. Hath it the vocative case? *Pea*. *Quid* what kind of pronoun is it? A pronoun derivative. *Quid* what? These seven, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *nostr*, *vester*, *nostras*, *vestras*, be derivatives. For, they be derived of their primitives: *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, and *vestri*. *Quid* what is his primitive? *Mei*: the genitive case singular of *Ego*. *Quid* what number is it? The singular. *Quid* what case? The accusative. *Quid* what gender? The feminine. *Quid* what is it the singular number, the accusative case, and the feminine gender? Because his substantive is so. *Quid* what? The adjective, whether it be noun, pronoun, or participle, agreeeth with his substantive, in number, case, and gender. *Quid* what is his substantive? *Viam*, life. *Quid* what? When ye have an adjective, aske the question, who, or what, and the word that answereth the question shall be the substantive to it. Aske the question. *Quid* what? *My* life. *Quid* what declension of pronouns is it of? Of the third. *Quid* what? These five, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *nostr*, and *vester*, be of the third declension, and be declined as nouns adjectives of three terminations. Decline it. Singulariter, Nominativo, *meus*, *a*, *m*, Genitivo, *mei*, *a*, *i*, Dativo, *meo*, *a*, *o*, Accusativo, *meum*, *am*, *um*, Vocativo, *mi*, *a*, *m*, Ablativo, *meo*, *a*, *o*: Pluraliter, Nominativo, *mei*, *a*, *a*, Genitivo, *meorum*, *arum*, *orum*, Dativo, *meis*, *Accusativo*, *meos*, *as*, *a*, Ablativo, *meis*. And so for any pronoun adjective at large.

Decline *dirigere*, to direct. *Dirigo*, *is*, *exi*, *igere*, *endi*, *do*, *dum*, *edum*, *tu*, *gens*, *edurus*, to direct. *Quid* what? *Præteritum* dat *idem* simplex, & compositum, &c. *Quid* what? *Dirigo*, and not *dirigo*? *Hac* si componas, *ago*, *emo*, *sedeo*, *rego*, &c. semper vocalem primam presentis in *i* sibi mutant, præteriti nunquam. *Quid* what? *Dirigere* compositum ut simplex, formatur quodque Supinum. *Quid* what is it the infinitive Mode? When two Verbs come together without any nominative case between them, the latter shall be the infinitive mood: as here *debeo*, & *dirigere*.

Quid what part of speech is *atque*, and? A conjunction. *Quid* what? A conjunction is a part of speech that joyneth words and sentences together. Doth it here joyn words or sentences? Words, as *dirigere* and *formare*. *Quid* what kind of conjunction

Vitam.

Meam.

A Pronoun Adjective parted at large.

Dirigere.

Atque.

A Conjunction parted at large.

OF PARSING.

function is it? A conjunction copulative: as, et, que, quod, que, ac, atque, nec, neque. And so at large of a conjunction.

Formare.

Decline formare, to frame. Formo, as, avi, are, ndi, do, dum, atum, tu, ans, aturus, to frame. Why formavi? As, in present, perfectum format in avi. Why formatum? Vi, sit, tum. Why is it the infinitive mood, and present tense? Conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives, most commonly joyned like moods and tenses together: as, here dirigere and formare are coupled by atque.

Debeo.

Decline Debeo, I ought: Debeo, es, ui, ere, ndi, do, dum, itum, tu, ens, iurus, to owe, or ought. Why debui? Es, in present perfectum format, ui, dans. Why debitum? Quod dat ui, dat, itum. Which is his nominative case? Ego, I, understood.

Constituta.

Decline Constituta, being appointed? Constitutus, a, m, i, a, i. Why is it so declined? Participles of other tenses be declined like nouns adjectives of three divers endings. Which is his substantive? Poena, the punishment.

Si, uspiam.

Si, if, is a conjunction conditional. Uspiam, in any thing, or any where, is an adverb of place.

Aberrem.

Decline aberrem, I do swerve from it. Aberro, as, avi, are, andi, do, dum, atum, tu, ans, aturus, to swerve from. Why aberravi? Prateritum dat idem simplex, & compositivum. Why aberratum? Compositum ut simplex formatur quodque Supinum. Which is his nominative case? Ego, understood. Why is it the subjunctive mood? Si, is joyned to both the moods, indicative and subjunctive.

Aeterna.

Decline aeterna, of eternal: Aeternus, a, m, i, a, i. Why is it so declined? A noun adjective of three terminations is thus declined. Why are the terminations of such genders? At si tres variant voces, vox prima est mas, altera femina, tertia neutrum. Which is the substantive to it? Damnationis, of damnation.

In.

In, for, or against; is a preposition, serving to the accusative case. Why? In, for erga, towards: for contra, against: for ad, to; hath an accusative case.

Me.

Decline me, mee: Ego, mei. Why is it the accusative case? In, is a preposition serving to the accusative case.

Damnationis.

Decline damnationis, of condemnation. Hec damnatio, onis. Why hac damnatio? Nomen crescentis penultima si genitivi: si laba acuta sonat, genus est muliebre. Why is it the genitive case? When two substantives come together, and betoken diverse things, the latter shall be the genitive case. Which is the other substantive here? Poena.

Poena.

Decline poena, punishment. Hac poena, a. Why hac poena? Nomen non crescentis genitivo, genus est muliebre. Why is it the ablative case? A noun, or a pronoun substantive joyned with a participle, expressed or understood, and having no other word whereof it may be governed, it shall be put in the ablative case absolute. Which is the participle here? Constituta, being appointed.

Per.

Legem.

Per, by, is a preposition serving to the accusative case. Legem, the Law; hac lex, legis. Why hac lex? Nomen crescentis

OF PARSING.

crescentis, &c. Why is it the accusative case? Per, is a preposition serving to the accusative case.

Igitur, therefore, is a conjunction illative.

Decline peccata, sinnes. Hoc peccatum, i. Why hoc peccatum? Neutrum nomen in e, si gignit is: & quot in on, vel in um sunt. Why is it the accusative case? Verbes transitives, &c. Which is the verbe? Agnosco, I know.

Igitur.
Peccata.

Decline mea, my. Meus, a, m, i, a, i. Why is it so declined? These five, meus, tuus, suus, noster, and vester, be of the third declension, and be declined like nouns adjectives of three terminations. Which is his substantive? Peccata, sinnes.

Mea.

Que, is a conjunction copulative. Decline, Deus, God. Hic Deus, i. Why hic Deus? Mascula in er, os, & us. Why is it the accusative case? Verbes of the Infinitive mood will have before them an accusative case for a nominative. Which is the Verbe? Incensum esse, to have been inflamed. For esse, to be, is here understood.

Deumque.

Ob, for, is a preposition, serving to the accusative case.

Decline ea, the same. Is, ea, id, ejus. Why is? These five, ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, and qui, be of the second declension, and be thus declined. Why is it the accusative case? Sometimes the relative is governed of the preposition set before him. Which is his antecedent? Peccata, sinnes.

Ob.
Ea.

Decline ira, with wrath. Hec ira, a. Why? Nomen non crescentis, &c. Why is it the ablative case? The other cases do remain in the passives, which were of the actives. Which is this passive verbe? Incensum esse, to have been inflamed.

Ira.

In, against, is a preposition, serving here to the accusative case. Why? In, for erga, contra, or ad; hath an accusative case.

In.

Me, mee, Ego, mei. Me, is the accusative case, because In, is a preposition serving to the accusative case.

Me.

Decline incensum, inflamed. Incensus, a, m, i, a, i. Why is it so declined? Participles of other tenses be declined like nouns adjectives of three divers endings. Which is his substantive? Deum.

Incensum.

Et, and, is a conjunction copulative. Decline sempiternam, everlasting. Sempiternus, a, m, i, a, i. Why? Adjectives of three terminations are thus declined. Why are the terminations all three genders? At si tres variant voces, &c. Which is his substantive? Mortem, death: which is the accusative case. Verbes of the Infinitive, &c. huc mors, tis.

Et, sempiternam.

Decline divina, divine, or Gods. Divinus, a, m, i, a, i. Why? Nouns adjectives of three terminations are thus declined. Why are the three terminations, the commune of three genders? At si tres, &c. Compare it. Divinus, a, m, i, a, i: hic & hac divinator, & hoc divinus, oris, divinitissimus, a, m, i, a, i. Which is his substantive? Justitia, by justice.

Mortem.

Divina.

Mihi, to me; It is the dative case, because participles (as, debitam, here) do govern such cases, as the verbes that they come of.

Mihi.

Decline justitia, by justice. Hec justitia, a. Why? Nomen non crescentis, &c. Why is it the ablative case? Participles governing, &c.

Justitia.

Debitam.

Esse.

Agnosco.

Que.

Cogitatio.

Horribili.

Formidine.

Timorque.

Ex.

Peccatorum.

Conscientia.

Animum.

Decline debitam, due. Debitus, a, m, i, z, i. Why? Participles of other tenses, &c. Which is his substantive? Mortem, death.

Decline esse, to be. Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus, to be. Why? Quodam præteritū verba accipiunt aliunde, & à suo fui. Why doth it want the supines? Hæc raro aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum? Lambos, &c. Et quæcunque in ūi, tormanantur neutra secunda; exceptis oleo, &c. Why is it the infinitive mood? Conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives most commonly joyn like moods and tenses together. Which is the other infinitive mood? Esse understood (as before) to incensum.

Decline agnosco, I know. Agnosco, cis, novi, scere, noscendi, do, dum, agnitus, tu, scens, agnitus, to know. Why agnovi? Præteritum dat idem simplex, & compositum, &c. agnitus? A nosco tantum duo cognitus, & agnitus habentur, cætera dant notum, &c. Which is his nominative case? Ego I, understood.

Decline quæ, which. Qui, z, d, cujus? Why? These five ille, ipse, iste, &c. Why is it the nominative case? Sometime the relative is governed of the substantive, that he doth accord with: as here, of cogitatio, consideration.

Hæc cogitatio, onis. Why so? Nomen crescentis, &c. Why is it the nominative case? When you have found the verb, aske the question, why, or what, and the word that answereth the question, shall be the nominative case to the verb.

Decline horribili, with horrible. Hic & hæc horribilis, & hoc le: his. Why? A nomine adjective of three articles is thus declined. Why is the first voice the commune of two, and the other, the neuter gender? Sub gemina si voce cadant, vox commune duum prior est, vox altera neutrum. Which is his substantive? Formidine, fear. Hæc formido, dinis. Why is formidine the ablative case? All verbs require an ablative case of the instrument, put with this sign, with, before it, or of the cause, or of the manner of doing. Which is the verb? Percellit, doth strike. Why hæc formido? Fæminæ generis sit hyperdissyllabon in do, quod dinis; atque in go, quod dat ginis in genitivo. Que, and, is a conjunction copulative.

Decline timor, dread. Hic timor, onis. Why? Mascula in er, or, & os. Why is it the ablative case? Que is a conjunction coupling together, formidine, and timore. Why? Conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives, and these four, quam, nisi, præterquam, an, couple like cases. Ex, from, is a preposition, serving to the ablative case.

Decline peccatorum, of sinnes. Hoc peccatum, i. Why? Neutrum nomen in e, si gignit is: & quot in on, vel in um, sunt. Why is it the genitive case? When two substantives come together, and betoken divers things, &c. Which is the other? Conscientia, conscience.

Hæc conscientia, z. Why? Nomen non crescentis, &c. Why is it the ablative case? Ex, is a preposition serving to the ablative case.

Why hic animus, i, munde? Mascula in er, os, and us. Why is animus, the accusative case? Verbes transitives are all such, &c.

Why

Why meus, a, m, i, z, i, my? These five meus, tuus, suus, noster, and vester, be of the third declension, &c. Which is his substantive? Animum.

Decline percellit doth strike. Percello, is, culi, ere, endi, do, dum, culsum, u, cellens, culsurus, to strike. Why perculi? Præteritum dat idem, &c. Why perculsum? compositum ut simplex, &c. Which is his nominative case? Cogitatio. Unde, from which, is an adverb of place. Quam, when as, is an adverb of time. Neque, neither, is a conjunction copulative.

Why hæc prudentia, z, wisdom? Nomen non crescentis, &c. Why is prudentia, the ablative case? All verbs require an ablative case, of the instrument, &c. Neque, not, is a conjunction copulative.

Decline viribus, by strength: Hæc vis, vis, vim, ab hac vi: hæ, vires, ium, ibus. Why?

Integra vox vis est, nisi desit fortè Dativus:

Omnibus his mutilis numerus prior, integer alter.

Why hæc vis? Nomen non crescentis, &c. Why is it the ablative case? Conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives, &c. as here, neque, couples prudentia, and viribus. Aut, or, is a conjunction disjunctive.

Potestare, by power: Why hæc potestas, aris? Nomen crescentis, &c. Why is it the ablative case? Aut couples it with viribus, by this rule: conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives, &c. Mea, my, what is the substantive to it? Potestas. Neque, neither, is a conjunction copulative.

Decline ulla, by any. Ullus, a, m, ius. Why? In like manner be declined, totus, solus, and also ullus, alius, alter, uter, and neuter: saving that these five last rehearsed, lack the vocative case. Which is his substantive? Ope, helpe. Humana, humane: which is his substantive? Ope. Why humanus, a, m, i, z, i? A nomine adjective of three terminations is thus declined. Why are the three terminations the commune of three genders? At sitres variant voces, &c. Compare it. Humanus, a, m, i, z, i; hic & hæc humanior, & hoc, nius, oris, more humane: humanissimus, a, m, i, z, i, most humane. Ve, or, is a conjunction disjunctive. Angelicus, a, m, i, z, i; angelicall: which is his substantive? Ope.

Decline ope, helpe. Hujus opis, opem, ope: hæ opes, um, ibus. Why?

Tres quibus inflexa est Casus Tryprōta vocantur:

Omnibus his mutilis, &c.

Why is it the ablative case? Conjunctions copulatives, &c. as here, ve, couples ope, and potestate together. Aut, or, is a conjunction disjunctive.

Auxilio, by alde: Why hoc auxilium, ii? Neutrum nomen in e, &c. Why is it the ablative case? Conjunctions copulatives, &c. For it is coupled with ope, by aut, Neque neither, is a conjunction copulative.

How is ullo, by any, declined? Like Unus. Why? In like manner be declined totus, solus, and also ullus, &c. Which is his substantive? Modo. Alio, other: how is it declined? Like unus also. Why? In like manner be declined, &c. Decline

Meum.

Percellit.

Unde.

Quam.

Neque.

Prudentia.

Neque.

Viribus.

Aut.

Potestare.

Mea.

Neque.

Ulla.

Humana.

Angelicave.

Ope.

Aut.

Auxilio.

Neque.

Uilo.

Alio.

Modo.

Aut.
Ratione.

Poffe.

Me.

Omnino.
Liberari.

Intelligam.

Evangelium.
Me.
Edocet.

Christum.

Dei.

cline it. Alius, a, m, ius. Which is the substantive to it? Modo, by way. Modo, why hic modus, i? Mascula, in er, os, and us. Why is it the ablative case? Neque is a conjunction coupling together modo, and auxilio. Conjunctions copulatives, &c. Aut, or, is a conjunction disjunctive. Ratione, by means: Hæc ratio, onis; Nomen crescentis, &c. It is the ablative case: because it is coupled with modo, by aut. Conjunctions copulatives, &c.

Decline poffe, to be able. Possum, potes, potui, poffe, potens, to be able. Why potui? Es, in præfenti, &c. Why wanteth it the supines? Hæc raro, &c. & quæcunque in iii, &c. Why is it the infinitive mood? When two verbs come together, &c. Which is the other? Intelligam, I understand.

Me, my selfe: Ego, mei; Why is me the accusative case? The infinitive mood will have before him an accusative case in stead of a nominative. Which is the infinitive mood? Poffe. Seeing we would say in English; when I understand, that I am not able, or that I cannot be delivered: Why do you put away the word (that) and turne the nominative case into the accusative, and the verbe into the infinitive mood? When this English, that, may be turned into this English, which, it is a relative, otherwise it is a conjunction, which in Latine is called quod, or ut; and in Latine making, it may elegantly be put away, by turning the nominative case into the accusative, and the verbe into the infinitive mood. Whereas then it is said here: quum neque prudentia, &c. poffe me liberari intelligam; how must it goe, if the word, that, be kept? This: quum intelligam, quod neque prudentia, &c. liberari possum. And this is often here used, and most frequent in Latine making. Omnino, in any wise, is an adverb.

Decline liberari, to be delivered. Liberor, aris, vel, are, a, tus sum vel fui, ari, atus, andus, to be delivered. Why libera- atus sum vel fui? Verba in or, admittunt ex posteriore Supino præteritum, verso, u, per, us, & sum confociato, vel fui. Why is it the infinitive mood? When two verbs come together, &c. Which is the other? Poffe.

Decline intelligam, I understand. Intelligo, is, exi, ere, ndi, do, dum, edum, u, gens, edurus, to understand. Why intellexi? A lego nata, re, se, per, præ, sub, trans, præunte, præfentis fervant vocalem, in, i, cætera mutant: de quibus hæc intelligo, diligo, negligo, tantum præteritum lexi faciunt, reliqua omnia legi. Why intelledum? Compositum ut simplex, formatur quodque Supinum. Which is the nominative case to it? Ego, I, under- stood.

Evangelium, the Gospel; hæc evangelium, ii; it is the nominative case to edocet. Ego, mei; me, mee, is the accusative case, following edocet: verbes transitive, &c. Edocen, es, cui, ere, cendi, do, dum, edum, u, cens, catus, to teach. Evangelium, is the nominative case to it. Why edocui? Præteritum dat, &c. Why edocui? Compositum ut simplex, &c.

Hic Christus, i; Propria quæ maribus, &c. Christum, Christ, is the accusative, coming before persolvissè, to have paid: the infinitive mood will have before him an accusative, &c. Hic Deus, i; Mascula in er, os, & us. Dei, of God, is the genitive

genitive case. When two substantives, &c. the other is, Fili- um. Hic filius, ii; Mascula in er, os, us. Filium, the sonne, is the accusative case. If they belong both to one thing, &c. as here, Christum, and filium. Hic & hæc homo, inis; Commu- nis Generis, &c. Hominem, man, is the accusative case. Par- ticiples governe such case, &c. as here, factum, made. Sine, without, is a preposition serving to the ablative case. Hoc peccatum, i; Neutrum nomen in e, &c. Peccato, mine, is the ablative case, governed of sine.

Factus, a, m, i, a, i; Participles of other tenses, &c. His substantivè is Christum. Hæc mors, tis; Nomen crescentis, &c. Morte, by death, is the ablative case. All verbes require, &c. as here, persolvissè, to have paid.

Suus, a, m, i, a, i; So is noster declined, &c. Sua, his; the substantive to it, is morte. Meritus, a, m, i, a, i; Participles of other tenses, &c. The substantive to meritis, deserved, is, penas, punishments. Que, and, is a conjunction copulative. Debitus, a, m, i, a, i; participles of other, &c. The substantive to debitas, due, is, penas, Peccatis, to finnes, & the dative case Participles (as here, debitas) governe such case, &c. Hoc peccatum, i; Neutrum nomen in e, &c. Meus, a, m, i, a, i; These five, meus, tuus, suus, &c. The substantive to meis, my, is, peccatis. Hæc pœna, a; Nomen non crescentis, &c. Pœnas, punishments, is the accusative case. Verbes transitive, &c. as here, persolvissè, to have paid. Persolvo, is, vi, ere, endido, dum, solutum, u, solvens, soluturus, to pay. Why Persolvi? Præteritum dat idem, &c. Why persolutum? Compositum ut simplex, &c. Why is it the infinitive mood? When two verbes, &c. as here, edocet, and persolvissè.

Hic Deus, i; Mascula in er, os, us. Dei of God, is the genitive case: when two substantives come together, and betoken divers, &c. as here, ira, and Dei. Hic pater, is; mascula in er, os, us. Patris, of the father: But if they belong both, &c. as here, Dei, and Patris. Suus, a, m, i, a, i; So is noster declined, &c. Sui, his, the substantive to it, is Patris. In, against, is a preposition serving to both cases, but here, to the accusative: In, for, erga, contra, or ad, hath an accusative case: as here, me, mee. Ego, mei, me, is the accusative case, governed of in. Hæc ira, a; Nomen non crescentis, &c. Iram, wrath: is the accusative case. Verbes transitive, &c. as here, restinxissè.

Suus, a, m, i, a, i; So is noster, &c. The substantive to, suo, with his, is sanguine, blood. Hic sanguis, guinis; Nomen crescentis, &c. Sanguine, is the ablative case: All verbes (as here, restinxissè) require an ablative, &c. Restinguo, is, res- tinxi, guere, guendi, do, dum, restinctum, u, guens, tincturus, to quench. Why restinxi? Præteritum dat, &c. Why restin- xum? Compositum ut simplex, &c. Why is it the infinitive mood? Conjunctions copulatives, &c. For, here, et under- stood, complex, persolvissè, and restinxissè.

Et, and, is a conjunction copulative. Ego, mei, me, mee; is the accusative case. Verbes transitive, &c. as here, reconciliat. Rursum, againe, is an adverb. In, into: is a pre- position, serving to both cases: but here, to the accusative: because it is with this signe to. Hæc gratia, a; Nomen non crescentis,

Fili- um.
Hominem.
Sine.

Peccato.

Factum.
Morte.Sua.
Meritis.Debitaque.
Peccatis.

Meis.

Pœnas,

Persolvissè.

Dei.

Patris.
Sui.
In.Me.
Iram.

Suo.

Sanguine.
Restinxissè.

Et. Me.

Rursum. In.

Gratiam.
Iphus.

Reconciliasse.

Suzque.

Justicie.

Fecisse.

Participem.

Et, Eternæ.

Secum.

Vita.
(o.)

An interjection
parsed at large.

Amorem.
Impercrutabilem.)

Haredem.

Instituiffe.

erescens, &c. Gratiam, favour, is the accusative case, governed of in. Ipse, a, m, ius : Ille, is declined like iste, and also ipse, &c. Iphus, of him, is the genitive case. Sometimes the relative is put into the genitive case, by reason of a noun substantive coming next after him : as here, gratiam. His antecedent is, Dei, Reconcilio, as, avi (Præteritum dat idem, &c.) are, andi, do, dum, atum, (Compositum ut simplex) u, ens, a, turus, to reconcile. It is the infinitive mood, being coupled with reconciliasse, by et : Conjunctions copulatives, &c.

Que, is a conjunction copulative. Suus, a, m, i, s, i ; So is not declined, &c. Suz, of his : the substantive to it, is justitia, of justice. Hæc justitia, a : Nomen non crescens, &c. Justitia, is the genitive case. Adjectives that signify, desire, knowledge, &c. as here, participem. Facio, is, feci, (fi, cio, ci) ere, ciendi, do, dum, factum (ci, fi, sum) u, ciens, &urus, to make. Fecisse, to have made, is the infinitive mood, being coupled with reconciliasse, by que : Conjunctions copulatives, &c. Hic, hæc, & hoc, participes, cipis : Adjectives of three articles, be thus declined. Adjectiva unam duntaxat, &c. Where, by it is the commune of three genders. Me, mee, is the substantive to it.

Et, and, is a conjunction copulative, Eternus, a, m, i, s, i. A noun adjective of three terminations is thus declined. The three terminations are the commune of three genders. At si tres variant, &c. The substantive to æternæ, of everlasting, is vita, sui, sibi. These three, ego, tu, sui, be of the first declension, and be thus declined. Sc, himself, is the ablative case, governed of cum with. Cum, is a preposition, serving to the ablative case. Hæc vita, a : Nomen non crescens, &c. Vita, of life, is the genitive case. When two substantives come together, &c. as here, haredem, and vita.

What part of speech is O, O ? An interjection. Why ? An interjection is a part of speech, which betokeneth a sudden passion of the mind, under an imperfect voice. What kinde of interjection is it ? Of exclamation with marvelling, as Papæ, and Proh. Is it put here with a case, or without ? With a case. With what case ? With an accusative. Why ? O, being an interjection of exclamation, is joined to the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases. And so at large, of other interjections.

Hic amoris : Mascula, in er, or, & os. Amorem, love is the accusative case, the interjection, o, requiring it. Hic & hæc, impercrutabilis, & hoc le, lis. An adjective of three articles, &c. The first voice is the commune of two, and the second, the neuter gender, Sub gemina si voce cadant, &c. The substantive to impercrutabilem, unsearchable, is, amorem. Hic & hæc hæres, edis ; Sunt commune parens, &c. Haredem, an heire, is the accusative case ; Verbs transitives, &c. as here, instituiffe, to have ordained or appointed. Instito, is, ui : (Præteritum dat idem, &c. ere, endi, do, dum, tutum (Compositum ut simplex) u, ens, raturus, to appoint. It is not insta, but instituo. is, ui : Hæc habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, &c. Instituiffe, is the infinitive mood, the preterperfect tense, and the preterpluperfect tense being coupled with fecisse, by &. Conjunctions copulatives, &c.

Qui,

Qui, a, od, ejus ; These five, ille ipse, iste, &c. Quæ, which is the the nominative case. Sometimes the relative is governed of the substantive that he doth accord withall ; which here is beneficia. Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc ne, nis : An adjective of three articles is thus declined. The first voice is the commune of two, and the other, the neuter gender : Sub gemina si voce, &c. Omnia, all, the substantive to it, is beneficia. Hic Christus, i. Propria quæ maribus, &c. Christi of Christ, is the genitive case. When two substantives come together, &c. as here, Christi, and beneficia. Hoc beneficium, ii ; Neutrum nomen in e, &c. Beneficia, benefits, is the nominative case. When ye have found the verbs, &c. which here is, communicantur. Ego, mei ; These three, ego, tu, sui, &c. Mihi, to me, is the dative case. Verbs that betoken to give or restore, &c. as communicantur. Per, by, is a preposition, serving to the accusative case. Hæc fides, fidei. All nouns of the fifth declension are of the feminine gender, &c. and, Adice virgo, grando, fides, &c. It wanteth the plurall number : Istis multa solent muliebria necesse, &c. Fidem, faith, is the accusative case, being governed of per. Communicor, aris, vel are, atus sum vel fui (Verba in or, admittunt, &c.) ari, atus, andus, to impart. The nominative case to communicantur, are imparted, is beneficia.

Qui, a, od, ejus ; These five, &c. Quam, which is the accusative case : But when three cometh a nominative, &c. as Spiritus, betweene quam, and in sevit. Fidem, faith : See, next before communicantur. Hic Spiritus, is ; Mascul. in er, os, us. It is the nominative case. When you have found the verbs, &c. which here is, in sevit. Sanctus, a, m, i, s, i. A noun adjective of three terminations, &c. The terminations are the commune of three genders : At si tres, &c. It is thus compared. Sanctus, a, m, i, s, i, holy ; hic & hæc sanctior, & hoc ius, oris, holier ; sanctissimus, a, m, i, s, i, holiest. The substantive to sanctus, holy, is Spiritus. In, in, is a preposition, serving to both cases ; but to the ablative here : because it is without this sign, to. Hic animus, i ; Mascula, in er, os, us. Animo, minde, is the ablative case, being governed of in. Meus, a, m, i, s, i ; these five, meus, tuus, &c. The substantive to meo, my, is animo. Per, by, is a preposition, serving to the accusative case. Hæc prædicatio, onis ; Nomen crescentis, &c. Prædicationem, preaching, is the accusative case : being governed of per. Hoc Evangelium, ii ; Neutrum nomen, &c. Evangelii, of the Gospel, is the genitive case ; when two substantives, &c. as here, prædicatione, and Evangelii. Infero, is, evi : (Præteritum dat, &c.) ere, endi, do, dum, institum, (A fero quando fatum, &c.) u, ens, siturus, to instill. The nominative case to in sevit, hath instilled, is Spiritus.

Que, is a conjunction copulative. Is, ea, id, ejus. These five, &c. Eam, the same, is the accusative case : When there cometh a nominative, &c. as here, ille, he, understood, betweene eam, and confirmavit. Per, by, is a preposition serving to the accusative case. Sacer, a, m, i, s, i. An adjective of three, &c. The terminations are all three genders : At si tres, &c. It is thus compared : sacer, a, m, i, s, i, holy ; hic & hæc

P 2

facior,

Quæ.

Omnia.
Christi.

Beneficia.

Mihi.

Per.

Fidem.

Communicantur.

Quam.

Fidem.

Spiritus.

Sanctus.

In.

Animo.

Meo.

Per.

Prædicationem.

Evangelii.

Insevit.

Eamque.

Per.

Sacra.

Myſteria.
Sua.

Aſpectabilia.

Certiſſimæque.

Indicia.

Et. Pignora.

Divinæ.

Erga.

Mei.

Per.

Chriſtum.

Bonitatis.

Confirmavit.

Quæ.

Fides.

Etiā.

Ue.

Viva.

Quadam.

Atque. Ferax.

Arbor.

Pietatis,

ſacrior, & hoc ſacrius, oris, holier: ſacerrimus, a, m, i, æ, i, ho-
lieſt: It the poſitive end in er, &c. The ſubſtantive to ſacra,
holy, is, myſteria. Hoc myſterium, ii: Neutrum nomen, &c.
Myſteria, myſteries, is the accuſative caſe, governed of per,
Suus, a, m, i, æ, i: So is Nolter, &c. The ſubſtantive to ſua,
his, is myſteria. Hic & hæc aſpectabilis, & hoc le, lis: An ad-
jective of three articles, &c. The ſiſt voyce is the commune
of two, and the other the neuter gender: Sub gemina ſi voce,
&c. It is thus compar'd: Hic & hæc aſpectabilis, & hoc
aſpectabile, lis, viſible: hic & hæc aſpectabilior, & hoc lius,
oris, more viſible: aſpectabiliſſimus, a, ni, i, æ, i, moſt viſible.
The ſubſtantive to aſpectabilia, viſible, is, indicia, ſignes.
Que, and, is a conjunction copulative. Certiſſimus, a, m, i, æ, i:
An adjective of three terminations, &c. The three termina-
tions are the commune of three genders. At ſi tres, &c. It is
thus compar'd. Certus, a, m, i, æ, i: aſſured: hic & hæc cer-
rior, & hoc certius, oris, more aſſured: certiſſimus, moſt aſſured.
The ſubſtantive to certiſſima, moſt aſſured, is, indicia. Hoc
indicium, ii: Neutrum nomen, &c. Indicia, ſignes, is the ac-
cuſative caſe. But if they belong both, &c. as, here, myſteria,
and indicia, doc. Et, and, is a conjunction copulative. Hoc
pignus, oris, oi, eris: Eit neutrale genus, &c. It is the accuſa-
tive caſe: being coupled with indicia, by et. Conjunctions
copulatives and diſjunctives, and theſe four, &c. Divinus,
a, m, i, æ, i: Adjectives of three terminations, &c. The ter-
minations are the commune of three genders: At ſi tres, &c.
It is thus compar'd. Divinus, a, m, i, æ, i: divine: hic &
hæc diviniſ, & hoc divinius, oris, diviner: diviniſſimus, a, m, i,
æ, i: divineſt. The ſubſtantive to divinæ, of Gods, is, boni-
tatis. Erga, towards, is a prepoſition ſerving to the accuſa-
tive caſe. Mei, me, is the accuſative caſe, being governed of
erga. Ego, mei: Theſe three, ego, tu, ſui, &c. Per, by, is a
prepoſition ſerving to the accuſative caſe. Hic Chriſtus, i:
Propria qua, &c. Chriſtum, Chriſt, is the accuſative caſe:
being governed of per. Hæc bonitas, atis: Nomen creſcentis,
&c. Bonitatis, of goodneſſe, is the genitive caſe: When two
ſubſtantives, &c. as here, pignora, and bonitatis. Confirmo,
as, avi, (Præſentum dat, &c.) are, andi do, dum, atum, (Com-
poſitum ſimplex) u, ans, aturus, to conſirme. The nomi-
native caſe to confirmavit, hath confirmed, is, ille, hæc, unde-
ſtood.

Que, which, is the nominative caſe: Sometimes the re-
lative is governed of the ſubſtantive that hee doth accord
withall: as here, of fides, faith. Fides is the nominative caſe to
deberet. Etiam, alſo, is a conjunction copulative. Ue, as, is a
conjunction cauſall. Vivus, a, m, i, æ, i: the ſubſtantive to viva, live-
ly, is, arbor. Quidam, ædam, oddam, cujuſdam: the ſubſtan-
tive to quædam, certaine, is arbor. Atque, and, is a conjunc-
tion copulative. Hic, hæc, & hoc, ferax, acis: the ſubſtantive
to ferax, fruitful, is, arbor, a tree. Hæc arbor, oris: it is
the nominative caſe: But if they belong both, &c. as, arbor
and fides. Hæc pietas, acis: pietatis, is the genitive caſe: When
two ſubſtantives, as, fructus, and pietatis, come together, &c.
Juſtitia, of juſtice: it is the genitive caſe, coupled by et, un-
derſtood.

derſtood, with pietatis: hæc juſtitia, æ. Que, is a conjuncti-
on copulative, Aliorum, of other, the ſubſtantive to it, is ope-
rum: Alius, a, m, ius: Bonorum, of goods, his ſubſtantive is
operum: bonus, a, m, i, æ, i. Hoc opus, eris: Operum, of works;
it is the genitive caſe, coupled with juſtitia, by que. Hic fru-
ctus, us: Fructus, fruits, is the accuſative caſe; verbes tran-
ſitives, &c. for it follows procreare. In, in, is a prepoſition
ſerving to the ablative caſe. Mei, me, is the ablative caſe,
govern'd of in. Per, by, is a prepoſition ſerving to the accu-
ſative caſe. Vitam, life, is the accuſative caſe, governed of
per. Omnem, whole, it is governed of his ſubſtantive, vitam,
life: Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc ne, nis. Procreo, as, avi, are, an-
di, do, dum, atum, u, ans, aturus, to bring forth: it is the in-
ſinitive mood: When two verbes come together, &c. as, de-
beret, ought, and procreare. Debeo, es, iis, ere, endi, do, dum,
irum, u, ens, iturus, to owe, or ought: the nominative caſe to
it, is, fides, faith. Ad, to, is a prepoſition governing an ac-
cuſative caſe. Hæc gloria, e, gloriam, glory, is the accuſa-
tive caſe, governed of ad. Hic Deus, i: Dei, of Gods, is the
genitive caſe; when two ſubſtantives, &c. as, gloriam, and
Dei. Qui, æ, oi, ejus; qui, who, is the nominative caſe to
affect: whole antecedent, is; Dei. Hi, hæ, & hæc, tot, un-
derſtood: tot, ſo many, is governed of his ſubſtantive, bene-
ficiis. Et, and, is a conjunction copulative. Tantiſ, a, m, i,
æ, i: tantiſ, ſo great, is governed of his ſubſtantive, benefi-
ciis. Mei, me, is the accuſative caſe, governed of affect. Afficio,
eis, eci, ere, ciendi, do, dum, edum, a, ciens, eſurus, to affect:
affect, hath affected, his nominative caſe is qui. Et, and, is
a conjunction copulative. Ad, to, is a prepoſition, ſerving
to the accuſative caſe. Hæc utilitas, atis: utilitatem, profit, is
the accuſative caſe, governed of ad. Etiam, alſo, is a con-
junction copulative. Atque, and, is a conjunction copula-
tive. Hoc exemplum, i; exemplum, example, is the accuſa-
tive caſe, coupled with utilitatem by atque. Hic & hæc ſaluta-
ris, & hoc re, ris: ſalutare, whoſome, is governed of his ſub-
ſtantive, exemplum. Proximus, a, m, i, æ, i: proximi, of my
neareſt, that is, neighbour, is governed of his ſubſtantive,
hominis, man, underſtood: propè, hic & hæc propior, & hoc
pius, prioris, proximus.

Qui, æ, oi, ejus, of which, this relative is governed of ſi-
dei, the ſubſtantive that hee doth accord with. Hæc fides, ei:
ſdei, of faith, is the genitive caſe: when two ſubſtantives,
&c. the other is incrementum. Hoc incrementum, i: incremen-
tum, the increaſe, is the accuſative caſe, governed of effagi-
tare. Hæc facultas, atis: facultatem, ability, is the accuſative
caſe, coupled with incrementum; by que, and, a conjunction
copulative. Placendi, of pleaſing, is a gerund in di, of placeo:
When the Engliſh of the infinite mood, cometh after any
of theſe nouns ſubſtantives, &c. Hic Deus, i; Deo, God, is
the active caſe: Gerunds and ſupines will have ſuch caſes,
&c. Et, and, is a conjunction copulative. Iſte, a, d, ius: iſta,
theſe things, is the accuſative caſe, governed of the gerund
præſtandi: the antecedent thereunto, is the clauses going be-
fore: But if the relative be referred to two clauses, or more,
et.

Juſtitia.
Aliorumque.
Bonorum.
Operum.
Fructus.

In.
Me.
Per.
Vitam.
Omnem.
Procreare.

Deberet.

Ad.
Gloriam.
Dei.

Qui.

Tot.
Et. Tantiſ.
Me. Beneficiis.
Affect. Et. Ad.

Utilitatem.
Etiam.
Atque.
Exemplum.
Salutare.

Proximi.

Cujus.

Fidei.
Incrementum.

Facultatemque.
Placendi.

Deo.

Et. Iſta.

Omnia.

Præstandi.

Me.

Qui.

Ex.

Meipso.

Maximè. Sum.

Infirmus.

Atque.

Imbecillus.

Continuis.

Atque. Arden-
tissimis.

Precibus.

A. Deo.

Patre.

Bonorum.

Omnium.

Auctore.

In.

Nominè.

Filii.

Sui.

Jesu.

Christi.

Servatoris.

Et. Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc ne, nis, omnia, all, is governed of his substantive ista: As the relative may be the nominative, &c. Præstandi, of performing, is a gerund in di, of præsto: When the English, &c. for facultatem, is understood before it. Ego, mei; me, meæ, is the accusative case: governed of oportet: some impersonals will have an accusative case only, &c. Qui, æ, od, cuius; qui, who, is the nominative case, governed of ego, the nominative case to sum, being the substantive that he doth accord withall: and is made the first person, by Evocation. Ex, of, is a preposition serving to the ablative case. Egoipse, meipsum; meipso, myself, is the ablative case, governed of ex. Maximè, most, is an adverb of comparison. Sum, es, tui, esse, futurus, to be: the nominative case to sum, am, is ego, I, understood: The nominative case of the first or second person is very seldom expressed, &c. Infirmus, a, m, i, æ, i: Infirmus, weaker, is governed of his substantive, ego. I: And generally, when the word that goeth before the verbs, &c. Infirmus, weaker: hic & hæc infirmior, & hoc infirmioris, weaker: infirmissimus, a, m, i, æ, i, weakest. Atque, and, is a conjunction copulative. Imbecillus, a, m, i, æ, i: imbecillus, unable, is governed also of ego. Continuis, a, m, i, æ, i: continuis, with continual, is governed of his substantive, precibus. Atque, and, is a conjunction copulative. Ardentissimis, a, m, i, æ, i: ardentissimis, most earnest, his substantive is, precibus: Hic, hæc & hoc ardens, ntis, earnest: hic & hæc ardentior, & hoc ardentioris, oris, earnestest: ardentissimus, a, m, i, æ, i, most earnest: ardentissimis, most earnest, is governed of his substantive, precibus. Hujus precis, precem, ce, hæc preces, cum, cibis, ces, ces, cibis: precibus, with, or by prayers, is the ablative case: All verbs require an ablative, &c. as here, efflagitare. A, of, is a preposition serving to the ablative case. Hic Deus, i: Deo, God, is the ablative case, governed of a. Hic Pater tris: patre, is the ablative case: But if they belong both to one thing, &c. as Deo, and Patre. Bonus, a, m, i, æ, i, good: hic & hæc melior, & hoc ius, ior, better: optimus, a, m, i, æ, i, best: bonorum, of good, is put substantively. When ye have the English of this word res, &c. It is the genitive case: When two substantives come together, &c. as, auctore, and bonorum: for an adjective so put, standeth for a substantive, &c. Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc ne, nis: omnium, of all, is governed of his substantive, bonorum: And being so put, it may be the substantive to the adjective, &c. Hic auctor, oris: auctore, the author, is the ablative case. But if they belong both, &c. as Patre and auctore. In, in, is a preposition serving to both cases, but to the ablative here; because it is without the signè to. Hoc nomen, inis: nomine, the name, is the ablative case, governed of in. Hic filius, ii: filii, of the sonne, is the genitive case: when two substantives, &c. as nomen, and filii. Sui, a, m, i, æ, i: sui, his, is governed of his substantive, filii. Hic Jesus, u, u, um, u, u: Jesu, is the genitive case: But if they belong both, &c. as filii, and Jesu. Hic Christus, i: Christi, Christi, is the genitive case: belonging to one thing with Jesu. Hic servator, oris: Servatoris, Saviour, is the genitive case: But if they belong both, &c.

Et. as, Christi, and Servatoris. Noster, a, m, i, æ, i: nostri, our, is governed of his substantive, Servatoris. Efflagito, as, ayi, are, andi, do, dum, atum, tu, ans, atum, to aske: efflagitare, to aske, is the infinitive mood: When two verbs, &c. as oportet, and flagitare.

Que, and, is a conjunction copulative. Hæc gratias, arum: gratias, thanks, is the accusative case: Verbs transitive, &c. as agere. Ille, a, ud, ius: illi, to him, is the dative case; All manner of verbs put acquittively, &c. as agere. Magnus, a, m, i, æ, i, great: hic & hæc major, & hoc majoris, greater: maximus, a, m, i, æ, i, greatest: maximas, is governed of his substantive, gratias. Pro, for, is a preposition serving to the ablative case. Univerfus, a, m, i, æ, i: universis, is governed of his substantive, beneficiis. Ab, from, is a preposition requiring an ablative case. Is, ea, id, ejus: eo, him, is governed of ab: his antecedent is Servatore. Acceptus, a, m, i, æ, i: acceptus, received, is governed of his substantive, beneficiis. Hoc beneficium, ii: beneficiis, benefits, is governed of pro. Assidue, daily, is an adverb of time. Ago, is, egi, ere, endi, do, dum, actum, u, ens, acturus, to doe: agere, to doe, is the infinitive mood, coupled with efflagitare by que: Conjunctions copulative, &c.

What part of speech is oportet, it behooveth? A verb. Why? A verbe is a part of speech declined with mood and tense. What kind of verbe is it? A verbe impersonall. Why? Of verbs, such as have no persons, be called impersonals. How know you that it is an impersonal? A verbe impersonal hath no nominative case before him, and this word it, or there, is commonly his signe. Is it impersonal of the active, or of the passive voice? Of the active. What mood is it? The indicative. Why? The indicative mood sheweth a reason true or false: or else asketh a question. Doth this shew a reason, or aske a question? It sheweth a reason. What tense is it? The present tense. Why? The present tense speaketh of the time that now is. After what conjugation is it declined? After the second. How is it declined? Throughout all moods and tenses, in the voice of the third person singular only. Decline it. Indicative mood: Oportet, oportebat, oportuit, oportuerat, oportebit. Imperative mood: Oportet, oportero. Optative mood: Utinam oporteat, utinam oporteret, utinam oportuerit, utinam oportuisset, utinam oportuerit. Potential mood: Oportet, oporterer, oportuerit, oportuisset, oportuerit. Subjunctive mood: Cum oporteat, cum oporteret, cum oportuerit, cum oportuisset, cum oportuerit. Infinitive mood: oportere, oportuisse. And so of all other impersonals at large.

Qui, æ, od, cuius: Quæ, which, is the nominative case to sunt: when there cometh no nominative, &c. the antecedent to it, is the clauses afore going: sometimes the relative is referred to two clauses, or more, &c. Hic & hæc omnis, & hoc ne, nis: Omnia, all, is governed of the substantive quæ: as the relative may be the nominative case to the verbe, so it may be the substantive, &c. Necessarius, a, m, i, æ, i: necessarius, necessary, is governed of quæ, as of his substantive: as the

Nostri.

Efflagitare.

Gratiasque.

Illi.

Maximas.

Pro.

Univerfis.

Ab.

Eo.

Acceptis.

Beneficiis.

Assidue.

Agere.

Oportet.

A Verbe impersonal perfect large.

Quæ.

Omnia.

Necessaria.

OF PARSING.

Sunt.

Cognitu.

A Supine parsed
at large.Atque, Obser-
vato.
Etiam.
Ad.
Salutem.

the relative, &c. Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus, to be: the nominative case to sunt, are, is quæ.

What part of speech is cognitu, to bee knowne? It is a certain voice of a verbe. Of what verbe? Of Cognosco; as, cognosco, cis, novi, scere, scendi, do, dum, cognitum, u, scens, cogniturus, to know. Unto what moode doth it belong? To the infinitive. What is it called? A supine. What supine is it? The latter which endeth in u. Why is it called the latter supine? Because it hath for the most part the signification passive. Why is it put after necessaria? The latter supine is put after nouns adjectives. And so of a supine at large.

Atque, and, is a conjunction copulative. Observato, to bee observed, is the latter supine, of observo. Etiam, even, is a conjunction copulative. Ad, unto, is a preposition, requiring an accusative case. Hæc salus, utis; salutem, salvation, is the accusative case governed of ad.

What is now further to be considered in this example? The Epithets, Adjuncts, Synonymes, Contraries, the Grammaticall, and Rhetoricall figures, and the phrases with the varying thereof: What is an Epithet? A substantive and an adjective joyned together. What is an Adjunct? An adverb, and a verbe joyned together. What is a Synonyma? Words of one signification. What is a Contrary? Words of contrary signification. What is a Grammaticall figure? A forme of speaking by a renewed art; consisting, either in word, or construction. What is a Rhetoricall figure? The fineness of speech differing from the propriety, plain, and simple kinde of speaking. What is a phrase? A kinde of speech proper to any language; as, the Latine phrase, to the Latine tongue: wherof especially we doe here speake.

What Epithets then be there here? These following. Lex, justitia, bonitas, divina. Regula perfecta. Pœna æterna. Sem-piterna mors. Formido, timor horribilis. Humanum, Angelicum auxilium. Amor imperiscurabilis. Mysterium sacrum. Indici-um, pignus, aspeçabile, certissimum. Arbor, viva, ferax. Exemplum salutare. Homo infirmus, imbecillus. Preces continuæ, ardentes. Gratia maxima.

What Adjuncts be there here? These following. Pie vi-vere. Gratiæ assidue agere.

What Synonymes be here? These. Aeternus, sempiter-nus. Formido, timor. Opi, auxilium. Vis, potestas. Omnis, universus. Infirmitas, imbecillus.

What Contraries be here? These. Vita, mors.

What Grammaticall figures be here? These. Syncope, in reconciliasse, for reconciliavisse. Apposition, in, Filii, Jesu, Christi, Servatoris.

What Rhetoricall figures be here? These. A Metaphor, in these words: Dei iram suo sanguine restinxisse. Also in these words: fides, ut viva quædam atque terax arbor, pietatis, justit-ia, &c. fructus, procreare deberet. An exclamation, in these words: O amorem imperiscurabilem.

What phrases be here? These. Aliquid alicui ante oculos proponere. Formidique aliquem timoreque percellere. Alicuius iram

Of giving and making Vulgars.

iram restinguere. Gratiæ alicui maximas agere. Ad legem Dei viam dirigere atque formare. Ira in aliquem incendi. Aliquem ir alicujus gratiam reconciliare. Fidem in alicujus animo insere-re. Beneficiis aliquem afficere. Continuis atque ardentissimis precibus, a Deo aliquid efflagitare. Now these, or any other phrases may be many wayes varied: as, for example, in one or two of these. We ought alwayes to have the feare of God before our eyes; which according to the first phrase may bee thus uttered in Latine, Timor Dei semper nobis ante oculos proponi debet. Againe; Legis minas promissaque Evangelii, continue mihi ante oculos propono: the threatenings of the Law, and the promises of the Gospel, are alwayes in my sight. Now, for the second phrase. Hæc tebris magno me cruciatu percellunt: his ague doth torment me exceedingly. Homines ab injustitia maxima percelluntur infamia: unrighteous dealing maketh men most infamous. And of the rest, or of any other phrases whatsoever. Here also may be noted the sentences, which are many as, lex perfecta pie vivendi regula proponit, &c.

An English to be turned into Latine, may thus be given, and examined according to the direction in the Concord, before it be made.

By per, the divine, divinus, a, m, i, z, i, law, hæc lex, gis, or by Gods law) containing hic hæc & hoc continens, cis, per-fect, perfectus, a, m, i, z, i, rule, hæc reguli, z of righteou-ness, hæc justitia, z, we doe know, agnosco, cis, novi, icere, scendi, agnitem, noscens, niturus, our sinne, hoc peccatum, i, and que, our nosster, a, m, i, z, i, misery, hæc miseria, z, from thence inde, (or thereby:) but verò, by per, the Gospel, hoc Evangelium, i, our nosster, a, m, i, z, i, Deliverance, hæc libe-ratio, onis, through per, the merits hoc meritum, i, of Christ, hic Christus, i, God hic Deus, i, and er, man hic & homo, inis. By per, faith hæc fides, ei, which qui, z, od, cujus, the holy sanctus, a, m, i, z, i, Ghost hic Spiritus, us, worketh operor, aris, atus, ari, in in, our nosster, a, m, i, z, i, hearts hoc cor, dis, by per, the preaching, hæc prædicatio, onis, of the Gospel hoc Evange-lium, ii, and ee, confirmeth confirmo, as, avi, are, atum, by per, the same idem, eadem, idem, ejusdem, and que, by per, the Sa-craments hoc Sacramentum, i, we doe apprehend apprehendo, dis, di, ere, sum, in in, Christ hic Christus, i, remission hæc re-missio onis, of sinnes hoc peccatum, i, righteousness hæc justitia, z, and atque, life hæc vita, z, everlasting sempiternus, a, m, i, z, i. Which qui, z, od, cujus, faith hæc fides, ei, doth bring forth procreo, as, avi, are, atum, in in, as ego mei, the fruits hic fructus us, of godliness hæc pietas, atis, and que, righte-ousness hæc justitia, z, to ad, the glory hæc gloria, z, of God hic Deus, i, our nosster, a, m, i, z, i, comfort hæc consolatio, onis, of our selves ipse, a, m, ius, (or, our-owne comfort) and que, the edification hæc edificatio, onis, of others, alius, a, m, ius.

Now many Concordes bee there in the first of these three sentences, ending at these words, By faith: Two, which? One,

One betwene the Nominative case and the Verbe, and the other betwene the Substantive and the Adjective. How many Verbes be there herein? Divers. Which is the principall Verbe? The first. Why? because it is not the Substantive Goode, neither hath before it a Relative, or a Conjunction. Which is it? Doe know. Which is the Nominative case to it? Me. Why? Because it answereth the question, who, or what, made by the Verbe. Aske the question, Who doe know? Me. Is this Nominative Case to be expressed? No. Why? The Nominative Case of the first or second Person is very seldom expressed; except it be for distinction sake, or for emphasis. Where is it to be set, if it should be expressed? Before the Verbe. Why? because a question is not asked, neither is it the Imperative Goode, neither is this signe it or there, before the English of the Verbe. What Number and person is the Nominative Case? The Plurall Number and the first Person. Why? Because it speaketh of more then one, and of himselfe. What Number and Person then must the Verbe be? The Plurall Number, and the first Person. Why? A Verbe personall agreeth with his Nominative Case, in Number and Person. What Goode is the Verbe? The Indicative. Why? The Indicative Goode sheweth a reason true or false, or else asketh a question. Doth this shew a reason, or aske a question? It sheweth a reason. What Tense is it? The Present Tense. Why? The Present Tense speaketh of the time that now is. The Nominative Case then is the Plurall Number, and the first Person: the Verbe is the Indicative Goode, the Present Tense, the Plurall Number, and the first Person. Psa. Make this then in Latine, aright, by ego, and agnosco; We know. Nos agnoscimus.

Hath this Verbe any casuall word after it, to be construed withall, answering the question whom or what, made by the Verbe? Psa. Which is it? Sinne. Aske the question, whom, or what? We doe know; what? Our sinne. What Case must the word sinne be? The Accusative; because the Verbe doth not properly governe any other Case after him to be construed withall. Why must it be the Accusative Case? Verbes Transitives are all such as will have after them an Accusative of the doer or sufferer, whether they be Active, Commune, or deponent. Put this word sinne, or peccatum, then into the Accusative Case, and adde it to the former aright. Nos agnoscimus peccatum.

Which is the next Verbe in this first sentence? Do know; which is understood, before the word deliverance, in the second part of this sentence. Which is the Nominative Case to it? Wee, &c. as before. What Number and Person is it? The Plurall Number, and the first Person. What Number and Person then must the Verbe be? The Plurall Number, and the first Person. What Goode and Tense is the Verbe? The Indicative Goode, and the present Tense. Give me this then in Latine; we know. Nos agnoscimus; as before. Put it be twice expressed in this sentence? Once will serve. Where? In the end, after the Rhetoricall or-

der of placing. Hath this Verbe any casuall word after it to be construed withall? Psa. Which is it? Deliverance. What Case must it be? The Accusative, because the Verbe doth not properly governe any other. Why? Verbes Transitives, &c. Put this word then into the Accusative Case, and adde it to the former, aright. Nos agnoscimus liberationem.

Now, for the second Concord: How many times is it here? Many times. Which is the first Adjective? Divine. Which is the Substantive to it? Law. Why? When ye have an Adjective, aske the question, who, or what; and the word that answereth the question shall be the Substantive to it. Aske the question here. Divine, what? Divine Law. What Number, Case, and Gender, is the Substantive? The Singular Number, the Accusative case, and the Feminine Gender. What Number, Case, and Gender then must the Adjective be? The same Case, Gender, and Number. Why? The Adjective, whether it be Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, agreeth with his Substantive, in Case, Gender, and Number. Joyn then this Substantive and Adjective rightly together, in the Accusative Case. Legem divinam, the divine law. Why must the Substantive be the Accusative Case? Per, by, is a Preposition serving to the Accusative Case. Which is the next Adjective? Containing, a Participle. Which is the Substantive to it? The Law, Legem. Set them rightly then together. Legem continentem, the Law containing. Give me the next Adjective. A perfect. Which is the Substantive to it? Rule. What Number, Case, and Gender is Rule here? The singular Number, the Accusative, and the Feminine Gender. What Number, Case, and Gender then must the Adjective be? The same Number, Case, and Gender. Set them then rightly together in the Accusative Case. Perfectam regulam, a perfect rule. Why must Rule be the Accusative Case? It is governed of continentem: Participles governe such Cases, as the Verbes that they come of. What Case is, of righteousness? The Genitive. Why? When two Substantives come together, and betoken divers things, the latter shall be the Genitive Case. Which is the other Substantive here? Rule, regulam. Set these two Substantives then rightly together. Regulam justitiae, a Rule of righteousness. Which is the next Adjective? Our. Which is the Substantive to it? Misery. What Number, Case, and Gender is misery? The singular Number, the Accusative Case, and the Feminine Gender. What Number, Case, and Gender then must the Adjective be? The same. Set them then rightly together in the Accusative Case. Nostram miseriam, our misery. Why must misery be the Accusative Case? It is coupled by que, and which sinne, or peccatum: Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives, and these foure, quam, nisi, praequam, an, couple like Cases. What Case must Souel be? The Accusative. Why? Per, by, is a Preposition serving to the Accusative Case. Which is the next Adjective? Our. Which is the Substantive to it? Deliverance, or liberationem.

Of giving and making Vulgars.

onem. Put them rightly together. *Nostam liberationem, ut deliverance.* Be there any more Adjectives in this sentence? No. What Case must *meritis* be? The Accusative. Why? Per. by. is a Preposition serving to the Accusative Case. Make this then in Latine, by the merits: *per merita.* What Case must of *Christ*, be? The Genitive. Why? When two Substantives, &c. Which is the other? *Merita, merits.* Make this then in Latine, merits of Christ. *Merita Christi.* What Case must *God* be? The Genitive. Why? But if they belong both to one thing, they shall be put both in one Case: as here, Christ and God. Put these two so. *Christi Dei: of Christ God.* What Case must *God* be here? The Genitive. Why? Et, and, is a Conjunction coupling it with *Dei*: Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives, &c. Make this then in Latine. *God and man. Dei & hominis.* And this, for the first sentence.

How many Concordes be there in the second sentence: ending with these words: and life everlasting? Three. Which? Betwene the Nominative Case and the Verbe; the Substantive and the Adjective: and the Antecedent and Relative. Which is the principall Verbe here? Doe apprehend. Why is not the first, that is, *worketh*, the principall Verbe? Because it ha h before it a Relative, as, *which.* What is the Nominative Case to this principal Verbe? Doe apprehend? *What Good, Tense, Number, and Person is the Verbe?* The Indicative Good, Present Tense, Singular Number, and first Person. Make this then in true Latine: *Allee doe apprehend.* Nos apprehendimus. Which is the casuall word following it? Remission. What Case must it be? The Accusative. Why? Verbes Transitives, &c. Adde it rightly to the Verbe. Nos apprehendimus remissionem: we doe apprehend remission. The other questions and answers may be supplied out of the former examination; both for this Verbe, and the rest following, both in this, and the third sentence: and so likewise concerning the second Concord. Which is the next Verbe? *Worketh.* Which is his Nominative Case? *Ghost.* What Good, Tense, Number, and Person, is the Verbe? The Indicative Good, Present tense, Singular Number, and the third Person. Make this then in true Latine: the Ghost, or Spirit *worketh.* Spiritus operatur. What casuall word doth follow it? *Done.* Which is the next Verbe? *Confirmeth.* Which is the Nominative Case to it? *Ghost also, or Spirit.* What Good, Tense, Number, and Person is it? The same with the former. Make this then in true Latine: the Ghost, or Spirit *confirmeth.* Spiritus confirmat. Why must this Verbe be the same Good and Tense with the former? They are coupled together by, and. Why? Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives most commonly joyn the Goodes and tenses together. Hath it any casuall word following it? No. Is there any other Verbe here? No.

Now then, to the second Concord: How many times is it here? Divers times. Which is the first Adjective? *Holy.* Which is his Substantive? *Ghost, or Spirit.* What Num-

ber?

Of giving and making Vulgars.

ber, Case, and Gender is *Ghost*? The singular Number, the Nominative case, and the Masculine Gender. Make the Adjective agree with it in all these. *Spiritus Sanctus, the holy Ghost.* Which is the next Adjective? *Our.* Which is his Substantive? *Hearts.* What Number, case, and Gender is it? The Plurall Number, the Ablative case, and the neuter Gender. Make the Adjective then agree with it in all these. *Cordibus nostris, in our hearts.* Why must the Substantive be the Ablative case? In, without this signe to, to the Ablative case. Which is the next Adjective? *Everlasting.* Which is the Substantive to it? *Life.* What case, Gender, and Number, must life here be? The singular Number, the Accusative case, and the Feminine Gender. Set the Adjective and it rightly together in these three. *Vitam sempiternam, life everlasting.* Why must the Substantive be the Accusative case? It is coupled with rightnessesse, by and. Why? Conjunctions copulatives and disjunctives, and these four, &c. Set them then together. *Justitiam aequè vitam, righteousness and life.* But why must rightnessesse be the Accusative case? It is coupled also by, and understood, with remission. Set them then together in Latine. *Remissionem justitiam.* But what case is, of *sinnes*? The Genitive. Why must it be so? When two Substantives, &c. Which is the other? *Remissionem.* Set these two then rightly together in Latine. *Remissionem peccatorum, remission of sinnes.* What case must *Christ* be here: in *Christ*? The Ablative. Why? In, without this signe to, to the Ablative case. Make it in Latine. In *Christo.* By the preaching of the Gospel: what case must preaching be here? The Accusative. Why? Per, by, is a Preposition serving to the Accusative case. What case must, of the Gospel be? The Genitive. Why? When two Substantives, &c. Which is the other? *Preaching.* Make it in Latine. *Per prædicationem Evangelii.* By faith? What case must faith be here? The Accusative. Why? Per, by, is a Preposition serving to the Accusative case. Make it then in Latine, *Per fidem.*

Now of the third Concord: How oft is it here? Twice. Which is the first Relative? Which is the Antecedent to it? *Faith.* Why? When ye have a Relative, ask the question who, or what, and the word that answereth the question shall bee the Antecedent to it. Aske the question, *which, what?* Which faith. What Number, Gender, and Person is the Antecedent? The singular Number, the Feminine Gender, and the third Person. What Number, Gender, and Person then must the Relative be? The same, that the Antecedent is. Why? The Relative agreeth with his Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person. Make this Relative then agree in Latine, with his Antecedent, *faith, or fidem, Quam, which.* But why doe you put it into the Accusative case seeing the Relative and Antecedent agreenot alwayes in case; but in Gender, Number and Person only? When there cometh a Nominative case betwene the Relative and the Verbe; the Relative shall be such case as the Verbe will have after him. Which is the Verbe here, that hath a No-

mina the

Of giving and making Vulgars.

minative case betweene himsele, and this Relative? *Ope-
ratur, worketh.* Which is the Dominative case comming be-
tweene them? *Spiritus, the Spirit.* Quill this Verbe then
have an Accusative case after him? *Pea.* Why? Verbes
transitives, &c. Which is the other Relative here? *By the
same.* Which is his Antecedent? *Preaching, or predica-
tionem.* Make this Relative agree with it, in Gender, Num-
ber, and Person. *Bandem.* But why must it be the Accu-
sative case? Sometimes the Relative is governed of the Pre-
position set before him. Which is that here? *Per, by.* The
other questions and answers both here, and in the next sen-
tence touching the third Concord, may be supplied out of the
former examination of the first Relative. What case must
Sacraments be here? *The Accusative.* Why? *Per, by,* is
a Preposition serving to the Accusative case. Make these
words then in Latine; by the Sacraments. *Per Sacramenta.*
Now, to the third sentence. How many Concordes be in
it? All the three. Which is the principall Verbe here?
There is but one. Which is it? Doth bring forth. Which
is his Dominative case? *Faith.* What Moode and tense is
the Verbe? *The Indicative Moode, and the Present tense.*
Make the Verbe and the Dominative case agree in Num-
ber and Person, in the Indicative Moode and Present tense.
Fides procreat; Faith doth bring forth. Concerning the se-
cond concord. Which is the first Adjective here? *Our.*
Which is his Substantive? *Comfort.* Make them agree
in Number, case, and Gender. *Nostram consolationem, our
comfort.* Why doe you say consolationem, in the Accusative
case? It is coupled with glory by, and understood. Why?
Conjunctions copulatives, &c. What case must, of our selves
be? *The Genitive.* Why? These Possessives, *meus, tuus,
suus, noster, and vester,* doe receive after them these Geni-
tives, *ipsum, solius, unius, &c.* Put this Genitive then to this
Possessive. *Nostram consolationem ipsorum; our comfort of
our selves, that is, our owne comfort.* Which is the next
Adjective? *Of others.* Which is his Substantive? *Men,*
understood. Make them agree in Number, case, and Gen-
der. *Aliorum hominum, of other men, that is, of others.* Why
must the Substantive be the Genitive case? When two
Substantives, &c. Which is the other? *The edification.*
What case must that be? *The Accusative.* Why? It is coupled
with comfort, by, and. Why? Conjunctions copulatives,
&c. Make this then in Latine; and the edification of others;
understanding, *hominum of men. Que edificationem aliorum.*
To the glory of God: What case must glory be? *The Accu-
sative.* Why? *Ad, to,* is a Preposition serving to the Accu-
sative case. Make this then in Latine; to the glory. *Ad glo-
riam.* What case must, of God, be? *The Genitive.* Why?
When two Substantives, &c. Which is the other? *Glory.*
Set them together. *Ad gloriam Dei; to the glory of God.*
What case must, of holiness, be? *The Genitive.* Why? When
two Substantives, &c. Which is the other? *The fruits.* Set
them together. *Fructus pietatis; the fruits of holiness.* What
case must, of righteousness, be? *The Genitive.* Why? It
is

Of giving and making Vulgars.

is coupled with holiness, by and. Why? Conjunctions co-
pulatives, &c. Couple them. *Pietatis que iustitiae; of holi-
ness and righteousness.* In us, what case must us be? *The
Ablative.* Why? In, without this figure, to, to the Ablative
case. Give it me in Latine. *In nobis, in us.* Place this fol-
lowing touching fructus, fruits; next the examination of pro-
creat, where it should have come in; and then goe on as there
followeth to this place. What casuall word followeth this
Verbe? *Fruits.* What case must it be? *The Accusative.*
Why? Verbes transitives, &c. Adde it to the Verbe, and
the Dominative case. *Fides procreat fructus; faith doth
bring forth the fruits.* Concerning the third Concord here:
which is the Relative? *Which.* Which is his Antecedent?
Faith, here expressed. Make them agree. *Qua fides; which
faith.* What case is the Relative here? *The Dominative.*
Why? Sometimes the Relative is governed of the Substan-
tive, that he doth accord withall. Which is that here? *Fides,
faith.*

Give me this whole English now in Latine, placed after
the Grammaticall, and naturall order.

*Per divinam legem continentem perfectam regulam iustitiae,
agnoscimus peccatum que nostram miseriam inde; verò per E-
vangelium, nostram liberationem, per merita Christi, Dei & ho-
minis. Per fidem, quam sanctus Spiritus operatur in nostris cordi-
bus, per prædicationem Evangelii, & confirmat per eandem, que
per Sacramenta, apprehendimus in Christo, remissionem peccato-
rum, iustitiam, atque vitam sempiternam. Quia fides procreat in
nobis, fructus pietatis, que iustitiae, ad gloriam Dei, nostram con-
solationem ipsorum, que edificationem aliorum.*

Give it now, placed after the artificiall, and rhetoricall
order.

*Per legem divinam, perfectam iustitiae regulam continentem,
peccatum nostramque inde miseriam: per Evangelium vero, no-
stram per Christi Dei & hominis merita liberationem, agnoscimus.
Per fidem, quam Spiritus sanctus in cordibus nostris, per
Evangelii prædicationem operatur, & per eandem, perque Sa-
cramenta confirmat, peccatorum remissionem, iustitiam, atque
vitam in Christo sempiternam, apprehendimus. Quia fides pie-
tatis, iustitiaeque fructus in nobis, ad Dei gloriam, nostram ipso-
rum consolationem, aliorumque edificationem, procreat.*

This order may be observed in any English.

FINIS.

Imprimatur.

Thomas Wykes.



We whose names are subscribed, doe signifie
that this Translation of Grammer, is a very ea-
sie, usefull, and profitable direction for young
schollers and others, that are desirous to learne
the Latine Tongue, and is worthy to be printed.

Alexander Gil.

R. Brooke. S.S.M.

*Thomas Walters, Master
of the Free-Schoole
in CHRISTES
Hospitall.*

William Rowland,

